
Hampton Inn & Suites

Monroe, Louisiana
12-111

Contract Documents

September 16, 2013



Mishra Architecture PLLC

6800 South Creek Road
Charlotte, NC 28277-3885
Phone: (704) 625-6554
Fax: (704) 919-5822
Email: ashish@mishraarch.com

INDEX

<u>SECTION NUMBER</u>	<u>SECTION TITLE</u>
------------------------------	-----------------------------

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 003132	GEOTECHNICAL DATA
----------------	-------------------

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 011000	SUMMARY
SECTION 012100	ALLOWANCES
SECTION 012500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES
SECTION 012600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES
SECTION 012900	PAYMENT PROCEDURES
SECTION 013100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
SECTION 013200	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
SECTION 013233	PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION
SECTION 013300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
SECTION 014000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
SECTION 014200	REFERENCES
SECTION 015000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
SECTION 017300	EXECUTION
SECTION 017700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
SECTION 017823	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
SECTION 017839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS – NOT USED

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

SECTION 033000	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
----------------	------------------------

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

SECTION 042200	CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY
SECTION 044313.13	ANCHORED STONE MASONRY VENEER

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION 051200	STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING
SECTION 055000	METAL FABRICATIONS
SECTION 055113	METAL PAN STAIRS

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

SECTION 061000	ROUGH CARPENTRY
SECTION 061516	WOOD ROOF DECKING
SECTION 061600	SHEATHING

SECTION 061753	SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES
SECTION 062023	INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION 072100	THERMAL INSULATION
SECTION 072419	WATER- DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION
SECTION 074233	PLASTIC (PHENOLIC) WALL PANELS
SECTION 075423	THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING
SECTION 076200	SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM
SECTION 077200	ROOF ACCESSORIES
SECTION 078413	PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING
SECTION 079200	JOINT SEALANTS
SECTION 079500	EXPANSION CONTROL

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION 081113	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES
SECTION 081416	FLUSH WOOD DOORS
SECTION 083113	ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES
SECTION 084113	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS
SECTION 084229.23	SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES
SECTION 085113	ALUMINUM WINDOWS
SECTION 087100	DOOR HARDWARE
SECTION 088000	GLAZING
SECTION 089119	FIXED LOUVERS
SECTION 089516	WALL VENTS

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

SECTION 092116.23	GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES
SECTION 092900	GYPSUM BOARD
SECTION 093013	CERAMIC TILING
SECTION 095123	ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS
SECTION 096816	SHEET CARPETING
SECTION 097200	WALL COVERINGS
SECTION 097523	STONE WINDOW STOOLS
SECTION 099113	EXTERIOR PAINTING
SECTION 099123	INTERIOR PAINTING

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

SECTION 101400	SIGNAGE
SECTION 102819	TUB AND SHOWER DOORS
SECTION 104413	FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS
SECTION 104416	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS
SECTION 105113	METAL LOCKERS
SECTION 107516	GROUND-SET FLAGPOLES

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

SECTION 115213 PROJECTION SCREENS

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

SECTION 122200 CURTAINS AND DRAPES

SECTION 123640 STONE COUNTERTOPS

DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

SECTION 131100 SWIMMING POOLS

DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

SECTION 142400 HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

SECTION 149133 LAUNDRY AND LINEN CHUTES

DIVISION 16 – ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

DIVISION 21 – FIRE PROTECTION

SECTION 210500 FIRE PROTECTION GENERAL

SECTION 211316 DRY PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

SECTION 213113 ELECTRIC-DRIVE, CENTRIFUGAL FIRE PUMPS

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

SECTION 220503 PLUMBING PIPE, TUBE AND FITTINGS

SECTION 220513 COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING
EQUIPMENT

SECTION 220529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND
EQUIPMENT

SECTION 220553 IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND
EQUIPMENT

SECTION 220719 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

SECTION 221123 DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

SECTION 221123.13 DOMESTIC-WATER PACKAGED BOOSTER PUMPS

DIVISION 23 – HEATING VENTILATING AND AIRCONDITIONING

SECTION 230503 TAB

SECTION 230513 MOTORS

SECTION 230553 IDENTIFICATION

SECTION 230713 DUCT INSULATION

SECTION 230716 EQUIPMENT INSULATION

SECTION 232300 REFRIGERANT PIPING

SECTION 233113 METAL DUCTS

SECTION 233300 DUCT ACCESSORIES

SECTION 233423 POWER VENTILATORS

SECTION 233600 AIR TERMINAL UNITS

SECTION 233713 AIR DISTRIBUTION

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

SECTION 321713

PARKING BUMPERS

SECTION 321726

TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

APPENDIX

1. GEOTECHNICAL REPORT
2. REQUEST FOR INFORMATION FORM
3. REQUEST FOR SUBSTITUTION FORM

END OF INDEX

DOCUMENT 003132 - GEOTECHNICAL DATA

1.1 GEOTECHNICAL DATA

- A. This Document with its referenced attachments is part of the Procurement and Contracting Requirements for Project. They provide Owner's information for Bidders' convenience and are intended to supplement rather than serve in lieu of Bidders' own investigations. They are made available for Bidders' convenience and information, but are not a warranty of existing conditions. This Document and its attachments are not part of the Contract Documents.
- B. Soil-boring data for Project, obtained by Ardaman and Associates, Inc., dated March 12, 2012, is available for viewing as appended to this Document.
- C. A geotechnical investigation report for Project, prepared by Ardaman and Associates, Inc., dated March 12, 2012, is available for viewing as appended to this Document.
- D. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Document 002113 "Instructions to Bidders" for the Bidder's responsibilities for examination of Project site and existing conditions.
 - 2. Document 003119 "Existing Condition Information" for information about existing conditions that is made available to bidders.
 - 3. Document 003126 "Existing Hazardous Material Information" for hazardous materials reports that are made available to bidders.

END OF DOCUMENT 003132

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY OF WORK

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SCOPE OF THE WORK

- A. The Project consists of construction of the Hampton Inn and Suites, Monroe, LA as per the Contract Documents prepared by Mishra Architecture PLLC, dated September 16, 2013.
- B. The Work consists of construction of the Hampton Inn and Suites, Monroe, LA on Parcel of land located south of Sam's Club on Interstate 20 Frontage Road as shown on the site plan #A-001
- C. It is the responsibility of the bidder to visit the site and verify the conditions on the site.
 - 1. The earthwork is completed around the building pad and the parking areas and rough graded according to the civil drawings.

1.3 CONTRACTOR USE OF PREMISES

- A. General: Limit use of the premises to construction activities in areas indicated; allow for Owner occupancy and use by the public.
 - 1. Confine operations to areas within Contract limits indicated. Portions of the site beyond areas in which construction operations are indicated are not to be disturbed.
 - 2. Burial of Waste Materials: Do not dispose waste material on site, either by burial or by burning.

1.4 WORK BY OTHERS

- A. General: Responsibility for the Work shall be as listed below. Items not listed below shall be included in the Contract.

<u>Item</u>	<u>Furnished By</u>	<u>Installed By</u>
Wall Coverings	Owner	Contractor
Vanity Mirrors	Owner	Contractor
Furniture-Public areas	Owner	Contractor

<u>Item</u>	<u>Furnished By</u>	<u>Installed By</u>
Granite vanity tops/countertops, aprons, splash block	Contractor	Contractor
Shower curtains and hooks	Owner	Owner
Shower curtain rods	Contractor	Contractor
Lamps	Owner	Contractor
All blocking for furniture	Contractor	Contractor
Guest room coat racks with hangers	Owner	Contractor
Wall mounted light fixtures	Contractor	Contractor
Vanity lights	Contractor	Contractor
Draperies and tracks	Owner	Contractor
Carpet, carpet pad, base and binder	Contractor	Contractor
Bathroom accessories	Contractor	Contractor
Television conduit system with pull	Contractor	Contractor
Fire alarm system conduit	Contractor	Contractor
Fire alarm wiring	Contractor	Contractor
Telephone conduit system with pull	Contractor	Contractor
Door Hardware and keys	Contractor	Contractor
Doors	Contractor	Contractor
Painting and Staining	Contractor	Contractor
Room Number Signs	Owner	Contractor
Lockers	Owner	Contractor
Safety Deposit Boxes	Owner	Contractor
Suite Cabinetry	Contractor	Contractor
Plumbing and Electrical for Counters	Contractor	Contractor

<u>Item</u>	<u>Furnished By</u>	<u>Installed By</u>
Freezer/Refrigerators in Pantry	Owner	Contractor
Microwave in Guestrooms	Owner	Contractor
Refrigerator in Guestrooms	Owner	Contractor
Ice machines	Owner	Contractor
All rough-in and hook-ups	Contractor	Contractor
Wood Shelves in storage areas	Contractor	Contractor
Registration desk	Contractor	Contractor
Front desk equipment	Owner	Owner
Fire extinguishers and cabinets	Contractor	Contractor
Vending machines	Owner	Owner
Irrigation sleeves	Contractor	Contractor
Landscaping and irrigation	Contractor	Contractor
Area signs	Owner	Owner
Washers / Dryers	Owner	Contractor
Handicap Parking signs	Contractor	Contractor
Wood base in public areas	Contractor	Contractor
Wall corner guards	Contractor	Contractor
Thru wall HVAC units	Contractor	Contractor
Guestroom locks and accessories	Contractor	Contractor
Site and pool signage	Contractor	Contractor
Flag pole	Contractor	Contractor
Security system / cameras	Owner	Contractor

<u>Item</u>	<u>Furnished By</u>	<u>Installed By</u>
Flooring at porte cochere	Contractor	Contractor
Tile in lobby	Contractor	Contractor
Flooring in guest toilet	Contractor	Contractor
Cultured marble window sills	Contractor	Contractor
Cultured marble on room dividers	Contractor	Contractor
Tub surrounds and marble in showers	Contractor	Contractor
Building Permits	Contractor	Contractor
Testing fees	Contractor	Contractor
All millwork in the drawings	Contractor	Contractor
Gypsum Board in the guestroom and public areas	Contractor	Contractor

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not applicable).

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not applicable).

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
 - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
 - 2. Unit-cost allowances.
 - 3. Quantity allowances.
 - 4. Contingency allowances.
 - 5. Testing and inspecting allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices.
 - 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for testing and inspecting.

1.2 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.

- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required to coordinate installation.

1.6 LUMP-SUM UNIT-COST AND QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner/selected by Architect] under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.7 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit margins.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.8 TESTING AND INSPECTING ALLOWANCES

- A. Testing and inspecting allowances include the cost of engaging testing agencies, actual tests and inspections, and reporting results.

- B. The allowance does not include incidental labor required to assist the testing agency or costs for retesting if previous tests and inspections result in failure. The cost for incidental labor to assist the testing agency shall be included in the Contract Sum.
- C. Costs of services not required by the Contract Documents are not included in the allowance.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the testing and inspecting allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.9 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
 - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
 - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
 - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
 - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
 - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
 - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance: Contingency Allowance in the amount of \$800,000.00 (Eight Hundred Thousand Dollars only)
- B. Allowance for tile in the public areas to be \$5.00 per square foot.
 - 1. This allowance includes material cost, receiving, handling, and installation and Contractor overhead and profit.
 - 2. Coordinate quantity allowance adjustment with corresponding unit-price requirements in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
- C. Allowance for tiles for all showers, floor and walls, to be \$5.00 per square foot.
 - 1. This allowance includes material cost, receiving, handling, and installation and Contractor overhead and profit.
 - 2. Coordinate quantity allowance adjustment with corresponding unit-price requirements in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."
- D. Allowance for carpet for all public areas to be \$25.00 per square yard with double padding.
 - 1. This allowance includes material cost, receiving, handling, and installation and Contractor overhead and profit.
 - 2. Coordinate quantity allowance adjustment with corresponding unit-price requirements in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided in Project Manual.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.

- h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from International Building Code or local ordinance as applicable.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
 - a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.

- b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided for achieving LEED prerequisites and credits, as required.
 - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after commencement of the Work, the Notice to Proceed, or the Notice of Award which happens earliest as applicable to the project.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied:
 - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - h. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - i. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
 - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Work Change Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
 - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.

2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Work Change Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714 form. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

Hampton Inn and Suites, Monroe, LA
Project No.: 12-111

September 16, 2013

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative requirements governing the use of unit prices.
 - 3. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
 - 4. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 5. Section 018113.13 "Sustainable Design Requirements - LEED for New Construction and Major Renovations" for administrative requirements governing submittal of cost breakdown information required for LEED documentation.
 - 6. Section 018113.16 "Sustainable Design Requirements - LEED for Commercial Interiors" for administrative requirements governing submittal of cost breakdown information required for LEED documentation.
 - 7. Section 018113.19 "Sustainable Design Requirements - LEED for Core and Shell Development" for administrative requirements governing submittal of cost breakdown information required for LEED documentation.
 - 8. Section 018113.23 "Sustainable Design Requirements - LEED for Schools" for administrative requirements governing submittal of cost breakdown information required for LEED documentation.

1.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
 - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
 - b. Submittal schedule.
 - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.

3. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.
 - b. Name of Architect.
 - c. Architect's project number.
 - d. Contractor's name and address.
 - e. Date of submittal.
 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
 4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
 5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 6. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
 7. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
 8. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
 - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
 9. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.

- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the 25th of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 - 2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
 - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
 - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
 - 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
 - 4. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
 - 1. List of subcontractors.
 - 2. Schedule of values.
 - 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
 - 4. Schedule of unit prices.
 - 5. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
 - 6. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
 - 7. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
 - 8. Copies of building permits.

9. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
 10. Initial progress report.
 11. Report of preconstruction conference.
 12. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 2. This application shall reflect Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 4. AIA Document G706-1994, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
 5. AIA Document G706A-1994, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
 6. AIA Document G707-1994, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
 7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
 8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
 9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Coordination drawings.
 - 2. Requests for Information (RFIs).
 - 3. Project Web site.
 - 4. Project meetings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for a description of the division of work among separate contracts and responsibility for coordination activities not in this Section.
 - 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 5. Progress meetings.
 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 7. Project closeout activities.
 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - b. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:

1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid.
2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings.
3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
6. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility.

1.6 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
 1. Project name.
 2. Project number.
 3. Date.
 4. Name of Contractor.
 5. Name of Architect.
 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 7. RFI subject.
 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's solution(s) impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 12. Contractor's signature.
 13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
- C. RFI Forms: Form bound in Project Manual.

- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - f. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly with not less than the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Name and address of Contractor.
 3. Name and address of Architect.
 4. RFI number including RFIs that were dropped and not submitted.
 5. RFI description.
 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
 7. Date Architect's response was received.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
 2. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.

1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Tentative construction schedule.
 - b. Phasing.
 - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
 - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - e. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - f. Procedures for RFIs.
 - g. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - i. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - j. Submittal procedures.
 - k. Preparation of record documents.
 - l. Use of the premises and existing building, if applicable.
 - m. Work restrictions.
 - n. Working hours.
 - o. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - p. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - q. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - r. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - s. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - t. Parking availability.
 - u. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - v. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - w. First aid.
 - x. Security.
 - y. Progress cleaning.
 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.

1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Review of mockups.
 - i. Possible conflicts.
 - j. Compatibility problems.
 - k. Time schedules.
 - l. Weather limitations.
 - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - n. Warranty requirements.
 - o. Compatibility of materials.
 - p. Acceptability of substrates.
 - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Space and access limitations.
 - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - u. Installation procedures.
 - v. Coordination with other work.
 - w. Required performance results.
 - x. Protection of adjacent work.
 - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Progress Meetings Owner's Commissioning Authority will conduct progress meetings at monthly intervals.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Deliveries.
 - 5) Off-site fabrication.
 - 6) Access.
 - 7) Site utilization.
 - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 9) Progress cleaning.
 - 10) Quality and work standards.
 - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 12) Field observations.
 - 13) Status of RFIs.
 - 14) Status of proposal requests.
 - 15) Pending changes.
 - 16) Status of Change Orders.
 - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
 - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 3. Daily construction reports.
 - 4. Site condition reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011200 "Multiple Contract Summary" for preparing a combined Contractor's construction schedule.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- D. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Float time belongs to Owner is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:

1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
 2. PDF electronic file.
 3. Two paper copies.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
1. Submit a working electronic copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.
- D. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for all activities, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 3. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
 4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from commencement of the Work the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.
- E. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- F. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly monthly intervals.
- G. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for commencement of the Work the Notice of Award the Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion
 - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 Insert number days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 - 2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 - a. Insert list of major items or pieces of equipment.
 - 3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
 - 4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 Insert number days for startup and testing.
 - 5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's and Construction Manager's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
 - 6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 Insert number days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
 - 1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
 - 2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
 - 3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
 - 4. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Coordination with existing construction.
 - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
 - c. Uninterruptible services.
 - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
 - e. Use of premises restrictions.
 - f. Provisions for future construction.
 - g. Seasonal variations.
 - h. Environmental control.

5. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work.
 6. Other Constraints:
- D. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
1. Unresolved issues.
 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
- E. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule.
- F. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
1. Use Microsoft Project, Scheduling component of Project Web site software specified in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination," WINDOWS operating system.

2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's construction schedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of the Work, the Notice to Proceed OR the Notice of Award.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

2.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for commencement of the Work the Notice to Proceed OR the Notice of Award. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's construction schedule using a cost- and resource-loaded, time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.

1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for commencement of the Work, the Notice to Proceed OR the Notice of Award.
 - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
 2. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
 3. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule in order to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
 - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
 - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
 - c. Purchase of materials.
 - d. Delivery.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Utility interruptions.
 - g. Installation.
 - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
 - i. Testing and commissioning.
 - j. Punch list and final completion.
 - k. Activities occurring following final completion.
 2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
 3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
 4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
 - a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.

- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
 2. Description of activity.
 3. Main events of activity.
 4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
 5. Early and late start dates.
 6. Early and late finish dates.
 7. Activity duration in workdays.
 8. Total float or slack time.
 9. Average size of workforce.
 10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Identification of activities that have changed.
 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
 4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
 5. Changes in the critical path.
 6. Changes in total float or slack time.
 7. Changes in the Contract Time.

2.4 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 4. Equipment at Project site.
 5. Material deliveries.
 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 7. Accidents.
 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
 9. Unusual events.
 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 12. Emergency procedures.
 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
 15. Construction Work Change Directives received and implemented.
 16. Services connected and disconnected.
 17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 18. Partial completions and occupancies.

19. Substantial Completions authorized.

- B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
 - 2. Periodic construction photographs.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.
- B. Digital Photographs: Submit unaltered, original, full-size image files within three days of taking photographs.
 - 1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
 - 2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
 - c. Date photograph was taken.
 - d. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
- C. Construction Photographs: Submit two prints of each photographic view within seven days of taking photographs.
 - 1. Format: 8-by-10-inch (203-by-254-mm) smooth-surface matte prints on single-weight, commercial-grade photographic paper; enclosed back to back in clear plastic sleeves that are punched for standard three-ring binder.
 - 2. Identification: On back of each print, provide an applied label or rubber-stamped impression with the following information:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
 - c. Name of Architect.

- d. Name of Contractor.
- e. Date photograph was taken if not date stamped by camera.
- f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
- g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has been regularly engaged as a professional photographer of construction projects for not less than three years.

1.4 USAGE RIGHTS

- A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights from photographer to Owner for unlimited reproduction of photographic documentation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, with minimum size of 8 megapixels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Photographer: Engage a qualified photographer to take construction photographs.
- B. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
 - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- C. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
 - 1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
 - 2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect.
- D. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of excavation, commencement of demolition and starting construction, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.

1. Flag excavation areas, construction limits before taking construction photographs.
 2. Take 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
 3. Take 20 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
- E. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- F. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.
- G. Additional Photographs: Architect may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified. Additional photographs will be paid for by Change Order and are not included in the Contract Sum.
1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
 2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
 3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Special events planned at Project site.
 - b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
 - c. Photographs to be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site. These photographs are not subject to unit prices or unit-cost allowances.
 - d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
 - e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.
 - f. Owner's request for special publicity photographs.

END OF SECTION 013233

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
 - 4. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1.4 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic copies of digital data files of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
 - 1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings and Project record drawings.

- a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
 - b. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
- D. Paper Submittals: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification.
 1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
 2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches (150 by 200 mm) on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 3. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Name of subcontractor.
 - f. Name of supplier.
 - g. Name of manufacturer.
 - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A).

- i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - l. Other necessary identification.
4. Additional Paper Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
 - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.
5. Transmittal for Paper Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
 - a. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Use AIA Document G810.
 - b. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Provide locations on form for the following information:
 - 1) Project name.
 - 2) Date.
 - 3) Destination (To:).
 - 4) Source (From:).
 - 5) Name and address of Architect.
 - 6) Name of Contractor.
 - 7) Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - 8) Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - 9) Category and type of submittal.
 - 10) Submittal purpose and description.
 - 11) Specification Section number and title.
 - 12) Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - 13) Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - 14) Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - 15) Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - 16) Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - 17) Remarks.
 - 18) Signature of transmitter.
- E. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
 1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., LNHS-061000.01).

Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., LNHS-061000.01.A).

3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use software-generated form from electronic project management software acceptable to Owner, containing the following information:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name and address of Architect.
 - d. Name of .
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - g. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - h. Category and type of submittal.
 - i. Submittal purpose and description.
 - j. Specification Section number and title.
 - k. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - l. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - m. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - n. Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - o. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - p. Transmittal number.
 - q. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - r. Other necessary identification.
 - s. Remarks.
 5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - c. Manufacturer name.
 - d. Product name.
- F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- G. Deviations: Identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.
- H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- J. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements:

- 1. Post electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to Architect's FTP site specifically established for Project.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
- 2. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
- 3. Action Submittals: Submit five paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- 4. Informational Submittals: Submit two paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
- 5. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
 - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically-submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.

B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.

- 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
- 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
- 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.

- d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Five paper copies of Product Data unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm), but no larger than 30 by 42 inches (750 by 1067 mm).
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Five opaque copies of each submittal. Architect will retain three copies; remainder will be returned.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:

- a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
 - 1) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
 1. Submit product schedule in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Five paper copies of product schedule or list unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return [two] <Insert number> copies.

- F. Coordination Drawings Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
- G. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation."
- H. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
- I. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
- J. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- K. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- L. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- M. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- N. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- O. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- P. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- S. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- T. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project.
- U. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
- V. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- W. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- X. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Y. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file and five paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be discarded.

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 2. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
 - 3. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.

- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.3 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.

2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.

1.5 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
 2. Project title and number.
 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of representative making report.
 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 3. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 4. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

- B. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. **Fabricator Qualifications:** A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. **Installer Qualifications:** A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. **Professional Engineer Qualifications:** A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. **Specialists:** Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. **Testing Agency Qualifications:** An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
 - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
 - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- H. **Manufacturer's Representative Qualifications:** An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. **Preconstruction Testing:** Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - c. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.

- d. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups, and laboratory mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- J. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Laboratory Mockups: Comply with requirements of preconstruction testing and those specified in individual Specification Sections.

1.7 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
 2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
 1. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.

2. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 3. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 4. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 5. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's representative's services include examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- D. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- F. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.

- G. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.

- 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

1.8 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
- B. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
 - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 - 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 - 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
 - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.

1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."

B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list.

1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; www.aabc.com.
2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; www.aamanet.org.
3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; www.aapfco.org.
4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; www.transportation.org.
5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; www.aatcc.org.
6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; www.americanbearings.org.
7. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); www.concrete.org.
8. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; www.concrete-pipe.org.
9. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); www.aeic.org.
10. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; www.afandpa.org.
11. AGA - American Gas Association; www.aga.org.
12. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; www.aham.org.
13. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); www.ahrinet.org.
14. AI - Asphalt Institute; www.asphaltinstitute.org.
15. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); www.aia.org.
16. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; www.aisc.org.
17. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; www.steel.org.
18. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; www.aitc-glulam.org.
19. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; www.amca.org.
20. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; www.ansi.org.
21. AOSA - Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; www.aosaseed.com.
22. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; www.apawood.org.
23. APA - Architectural Precast Association; www.archprecast.org.
24. API - American Petroleum Institute; www.api.org.
25. ARI - Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
26. ARI - American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
27. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; www.asphaltroofing.org.
28. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; www.asce.org.
29. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
30. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; www.ashrae.org.
31. ASME - ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); www.asme.org.
32. ASSE - American Society of Safety Engineers (The); www.asse.org.
33. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; www.asse-plumbing.org.

34. ASTM - ASTM International; (American Society for Testing and Materials International); www.astm.org.
35. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; www.atis.org.
36. AWEA - American Wind Energy Association; www.awea.org.
37. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; www.awinet.org.
38. AWMAC - Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; www.awmac.com.
39. AWWPA - American Wood Protection Association; (Formerly: American Wood-Preservers' Association); www.awpa.com.
40. AWS - American Welding Society; www.aws.org.
41. AWWA - American Water Works Association; www.awwa.org.
42. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; www.buildershardware.com.
43. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); www.gobrick.com.
44. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; www.bicsi.org.
45. BIFMA - BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); www.bifma.com.
46. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; www.bissc.org.
47. BOCA - BOCA; (Building Officials and Code Administrators International Inc.); (See ICC).
48. BWF - Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); www.bwfbadminton.org.
49. CDA - Copper Development Association; www.copper.org.
50. CEA - Canadian Electricity Association; www.electricity.ca.
51. CEA - Consumer Electronics Association; www.ce.org.
52. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics & Film Association, Inc.; www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com.
53. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; www.cfsei.org.
54. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; www.cganet.com.
55. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.cellulose.org.
56. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; www.cisca.org.
57. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; www.cispi.org.
58. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; www.chainlinkinfo.org.
59. CPA - Composite Panel Association; www.pbmdf.com.
60. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); www.carpet-rug.org.
61. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; www.coolroofs.org.
62. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; www.crsi.org.
63. CSA - Canadian Standards Association; www.csa.ca.
64. CSA - CSA International; (Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services); www.csa-international.org.
65. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); www.csinet.org.
66. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; www.cedarbureau.org.
67. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); www.cti.org.
68. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
69. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; www.dasma.com.
70. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; www.dhi.org.
71. ECA - Electronic Components Association; www.ec-central.org.
72. ECAMA - Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See ECA).
73. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
74. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; www.eima.com.
75. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.ejma.org.
76. ESD - ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); www.esda.org.
77. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).

78. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; www.evo-world.org.
79. FIBA - Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); www.fiba.com.
80. FIVB - Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); www.fivb.org.
81. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; www.fmglobal.com.
82. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); www.fmglobal.com.
83. FRSA - Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; www.floridarroof.com.
84. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; www.fluidsealing.com.
85. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; www.fscus.org.
86. GA - Gypsum Association; www.gypsum.org.
87. GANA - Glass Association of North America; www.glasswebsite.com.
88. GS - Green Seal; www.greenseal.org.
89. HI - Hydraulic Institute; www.pumps.org.
90. HI/GAMA - Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
91. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
92. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; www.hpva.org.
93. HPW - H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; www.hpwhite.com.
94. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; www.iapsc.org.
95. IAS - International Approval Services; (See CSA).
96. ICBO - International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
97. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
98. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; www.icea.net.
99. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Alliance; www.icpa-hq.org.
100. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; www.icri.org.
101. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; www.iec.ch.
102. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); www.ieee.org.
103. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); www.ies.org.
104. IESNA - Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
105. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; www.iest.org.
106. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; www.igmaonline.org.
107. IGSHPA - International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; www.igshpa.okstate.edu.
108. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; www.ili.ai.
109. Intertek - Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); www.intertek.com.
110. ISA - International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); www.isa.org.
111. ISAS - Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
112. ISFA - International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); www.isfanow.org.
113. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; www.iso.org.
114. ISSFA - International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
115. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; www.itu.int/home.
116. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; www.kcma.org.
117. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
118. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; www.lightning.org.
119. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; www.mbma.com.
120. MCA - Metal Construction Association; www.metalconstruction.org.

121. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.maplefloor.org.
122. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.metalframingmfg.org.
123. MHIA - Material Handling Industry of America; www.mhia.org.
124. MIA - Marble Institute of America; www.marble-institute.com.
125. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; (Formerly: Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association); www.wmmpa.com.
126. MPI - Master Painters Institute; www.paintinfo.com.
127. MSS - Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; www.mss-hq.org.
128. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; www.naamm.org.
129. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); www.nace.org.
130. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; www.nadca.com.
131. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.naima.org.
132. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; www.nbgqa.com.
133. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); www.ncaa.org.
134. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; www.ncma.org.
135. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; www.nebb.org.
136. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; www.necanet.org.
137. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; www.nelma.org.
138. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; www.nema.org.
139. NETA - InterNational Electrical Testing Association; www.netaworld.org.
140. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; www.nfhs.org.
141. NFPA - NFPA; (National Fire Protection Association); www.nfpa.org.
142. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
143. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; www.nfrc.org.
144. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; www.nhla.com.
145. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; www.nlga.org.
146. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
147. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; www.nomma.org.
148. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; www.nrca.net.
149. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; www.nrmca.org.
150. NSF - NSF International; (National Sanitation Foundation International); www.nsf.org.
151. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; www.nspe.org.
152. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; www.nssga.org.
153. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); www.ntma.com.
154. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; www.nwfa.org.
155. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; www.pci.org.
156. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; www.pdionline.org.
157. PLASA - PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association); www.plasa.org.
158. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; www.boltcouncil.org.
159. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; www.rfci.com.
160. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; www.redwoodinspection.com.
161. SAE - SAE International; (Society of Automotive Engineers); www.sae.org.
162. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; www.scte.org.
163. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; www.sdi.org.
164. SDI - Steel Door Institute; www.steeldoor.org.
165. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association; www.sefalabs.com.

166. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
167. SIA - Security Industry Association; www.siaonline.org.
168. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; www.steeljoist.org.
169. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; www.smainfo.org.
170. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; www.smacna.org.
171. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; www.smpte.org.
172. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; www.sprayfoam.org.
173. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; www.spib.org.
174. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; www.spri.org.
175. SRCC - Solar Rating and Certification Corporation; www.solar-rating.org.
176. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; www.ssina.com.
177. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; www.sspc.org.
178. STI - Steel Tank Institute; www.steeltank.com.
179. SWI - Steel Window Institute; www.steelwindows.com.
180. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; www.swpa.org.
181. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; www.tilt-up.org.
182. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; (Formerly: Tile Council of America); www.tileusa.com.
183. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.tema.org.
184. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association; (Formerly: TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); www.tiaonline.org.
185. TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
186. TMS - The Masonry Society; www.masonrysociety.org.
187. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; www.tpinst.org.
188. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; www.turfgrasssod.org.
189. TRI - Tile Roofing Institute; www.tilerroofing.org.
190. UBC - Uniform Building Code; (See ICC).
191. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; www.ul.com.
192. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; www.uni-bell.org.
193. USAV - USA Volleyball; www.usavolleyball.org.
194. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; www.usgbc.org.
195. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; www.usitt.org.
196. WASTEC - Waste Equipment Technology Association; www.wastec.org.
197. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; www.wclib.org.
198. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; www.wcmanet.org.
199. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; www.wdma.com.
200. WI - Woodwork Institute; (Formerly: WIC - Woodwork Institute of California); www.wicnet.org.
201. WMPMA - Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; (See MMPA).
202. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; www.wsrca.com.
203. WPA - Western Wood Products Association; www.wppa.org.

C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list.

1. DIN - Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.; www.din.de.

2. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; www.iapmo.org.
 3. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
 4. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; www.icc-es.org.
- D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list.
1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; www.usace.army.mil.
 2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; www.cpsc.gov.
 3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; www.nist.gov.
 4. DOD - Department of Defense; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
 5. DOE - Department of Energy; www.energy.gov.
 6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; www.epa.gov.
 7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; www.faa.gov.
 8. FG - Federal Government Publications; www.gpo.gov.
 9. GSA - General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
 10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; www.hud.gov.
 11. LBL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; <http://eetd.lbl.gov>.
 12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; www.osha.gov.
 13. SD - Department of State; www.state.gov.
 14. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; www.trb.org.
 15. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; www.ars.usda.gov.
 16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; www.usda.gov.
 17. USDJ - Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; www.ojp.usdoj.gov.
 18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeia; www.usp.org.
 19. USPS - United States Postal Service; www.usps.com.
- E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list.
1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; www.gpo.gov/fdsys.
 2. DOD - Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
 3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
 4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (See FS).
 5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
 - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; www.dsp.dla.mil.
 - b. Available from General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
 - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; www.wbdg.org/ccb.

6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
 7. USAB - United States Access Board; www.access-board.gov.
 8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).
- F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list.
1. CBHF - State of California; Department of Consumer Affairs; Bureau of Electronic Appliance and Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; www.bearhfti.ca.gov.
 2. CCR - California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; www.calregs.com.
 3. CDHS - California Department of Health Services; (See CDPH).
 4. CDPH - California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; www.cal-iaq.org.
 5. CPUC - California Public Utilities Commission; www.cpuc.ca.gov.
 6. SCAQMD - South Coast Air Quality Management District; www.aqmd.gov.
 7. TFS - Texas Forest Service; Forest Resource Development and Sustainable Forestry; <http://txforestservation.tamu.edu>.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014200

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. See Division 1 Section "Summary of Multiple Contracts" for division of responsibilities for temporary facilities and controls.
- C. See Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.
- D. See Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for temporary heat, ventilation, and humidity requirements for products in those Sections.
- E. See Division 2 Section "Dewatering" for disposal of ground water at Project site.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by Architect, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weather-tight; exterior walls are insulated and weather-tight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Pavement: Comply with Division 2 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement."
- B. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails galvanized barbed-wire top strand.
- C. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 9-gage, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized steel bases for supporting posts.
- D. Wood Enclosure Fence: Plywood, 6 feet high, framed with four 2-by-4-inch rails, with preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet apart.
- E. Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements in Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry."

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
 - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Water Service: Use of Owner's existing water service facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
 - 1. Where installations below an outlet might be damaged by spillage or leakage, provide a drip pan of suitable size to minimize water damage. Drain accumulated water promptly from pans.
- E. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
 - 1. Toilets: Use of Owner's existing toilet facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- F. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- G. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction

from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.

- H. Electric Power Service: Use of Owner's existing electric power service will be permitted, as long as equipment is maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- I. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
 - 1. Install electric power service underground, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.
- J. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- K. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.
 - 1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
 - a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer in each field office.
 - 2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers including police and fire departments, Contractor's home office, Architect's office. Owner's office Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
 - 3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.
- L. Electronic Communication Service: Provide temporary electronic communication service, including electronic mail in field office.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines. Comply with NFPA 241.
 - 2. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.

1. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
- C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- D. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- E. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
- F. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Provide Project identification and other signs as indicated on Drawings. Install signs where indicated to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
 1. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 2. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- G. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with Division 1 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.
- H. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.
- I. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Cover finished, permanent stairs with protective covering of plywood or similar material so finishes will be undamaged at time of acceptance.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
- B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Stormwater Control: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- D. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.

- E. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Obtain extended warranty for Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- F. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weather-tight enclosure for building exterior.
 - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.
 - 2. Protect air-handling equipment.
 - 3. Weather strip openings.
 - 4. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
- J. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
 - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.

1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 2. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
 - 6. Progress cleaning.
 - 7. Starting and adjusting.
 - 8. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
 - 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.
 - 3. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by professional engineer certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- B. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- C. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by professional engineer.
- D. Final Property Survey: Submit 5 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.

1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural element during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection
2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.[Operational elements include the following:]
3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.[Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:]
4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.

- B. General: Engage a professional engineer to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
 - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
- B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
 - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
- C. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- D. Final Property Survey: Engage a professional engineer to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by professional engineer, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.

1. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
 - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.

2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways.

- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements"

3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting final completion construction photographic documentation.
 - 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
 - 4. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements for instructing Owner's personnel.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
 - 5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
 - 6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 - 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
 - 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 - 9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
 - 10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 - 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 - 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.6 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
 - 1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
 - 2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 - 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
 - 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
 - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 - 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.7 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
 - 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
 - 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 - 3. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:

- a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect will return annotated copy.
- b. PDF electronic file. Architect will return annotated copy.
- c. Three paper copies unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.

1.8 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper.
 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
 - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - o. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - p. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
 - 2. Three paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
 - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information.
- B. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
- C. Title Page: Include the following information:
 - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 - 2. Name and address of Project.
 - 3. Name and address of Owner.
 - 4. Date of submittal.
 - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 - 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 - 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
 - 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 - 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- D. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
- E. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- F. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
 - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily

navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

G. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.

1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
4. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
 - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2.2 EMERGENCY MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:

1. Type of emergency.
2. Emergency instructions.
3. Emergency procedures.

B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:

1. Fire.
2. Flood.
3. Gas leak.
4. Water leak.
5. Power failure.
6. Water outage.
7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
8. Chemical release or spill.

- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Instructions on stopping.
 - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

2.3 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
 - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 - 3. Operating standards.
 - 4. Operating procedures.
 - 5. Operating logs.
 - 6. Wiring diagrams.
 - 7. Control diagrams.
 - 8. Piped system diagrams.
 - 9. Precautions against improper use.
 - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
 - 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
 - 4. Equipment function.
 - 5. Operating characteristics.
 - 6. Limiting conditions.
 - 7. Performance curves.
 - 8. Engineering data and tests.
 - 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Startup procedures.
 - 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - 4. Regulation and control procedures.
 - 5. Instructions on stopping.
 - 6. Normal shutdown instructions.

7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.4 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Product name and model number.
 2. Manufacturer's name.
 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 4. Material and chemical composition.
 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
1. Inspection procedures.
 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
 5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

2.5 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
 - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.

- C. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
- D. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
- E. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
- F. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - a. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit three paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one paper copy of each submittal.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised Drawings as modifications are issued.
 - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.

- a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - c. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 2. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 3. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 4. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Contract Drawings.
 2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
 3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
 4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
- C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
 4. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.

2. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.

- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as paper copy.

2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.

- B. Format: Submit record Product Data as paper copy.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as paper copy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Material certificates.
- C. Material test reports.
- D. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

- D. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
 - 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- E. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- C. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, plain, fabricated from galvanized-steel wire into flat sheets.
- E. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, Type 1, plain steel.
- F. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I for areas not exposed to soil. Type II where exposed to soil.

- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, graded.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch (25 mm) nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.4 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

2.6 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating[, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering].
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
- B. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 - 2. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
- C. Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: As noted on Structural drawings at 28 days.
 - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: [0.50] [0.45] [0.40] <Insert ratio>.
 - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm), plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
 - 4. Air Content: 5.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
 - 5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.

2.9 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.10 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

3.3 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

- 1. Lap joints **6 inches (150 mm)** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.

- 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.

- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:

- 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-)** wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

- E. Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
- C. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1.
- D. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301.

3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces [not exposed to public view] <Insert locations>.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete on floors one through five.
- C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
 - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
 - 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in one direction.
- C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces [indicated] [where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method]. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
 - 1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.

3.9 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching **0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h)** before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.10 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 042200 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units (CMU's).
2. Decorative concrete masonry units.
3. Pre-faced concrete masonry units.

1.2 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

1. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
2. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91 for air content.
3. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 780 for compressive strength.
4. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 1019.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For reinforcing steel. Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement."
- C. Samples: For each type and color of exposed masonry unit and colored mortar.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of product indicated. For masonry units include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.

1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91 for air content.
2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.
 1. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction typical exterior wall typical interior wall typical exterior and interior walls in sizes approximately **60 inches (1500 mm)** long by **48 inches (1200 mm)** high by full thickness.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

- A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide units that comply with requirements for fire-resistance ratings indicated as determined by testing according to ASTM E 119, by equivalent masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
- B. CMUs: ASTM C 90.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **3050 psi (21.0 MPa)**.
 2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
- C. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C 55.
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **3050 psi (21.03 MPa)**.
 2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
- D. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C 90.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements
 2. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **3050 psi (21.0 MPa)**.
 3. Density Classification: Normal weight.
 4. Pattern and Texture: to be selected by Architect/Owner

2.3 CONCRETE AND MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide one of the following:
- B. Concrete Lintels: ASTM C 1623, matching CMUs in color, texture, and density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated. Provide lintels with net-area compressive strength not less than CMUs.
- C. Concrete Lintels: Precast or formed-in-place concrete lintels complying with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," and with reinforcing bars indicated.
- D. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout.

2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Regional Materials: Aggregate for mortar and grout shall be extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within **500 miles (800 km)** of Project site.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. **Capital Materials Corporation**; Flamingo Color Masonry Cement.
- b. **Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.**; Brikset Type N Citadel Type S Dixie Type S Kosmortar Type N Richmortar Victor Plastic Cement.
- c. **Essroc, Italcementi Group**; Brixment or Velvet.
- d. **Holcim (US) Inc.**; Mortamix Masonry Cement Rainbow Mortamix Custom Buff Masonry Cement White Mortamix Masonry Cement.
- e. **Lafarge North America Inc.**; Magnolia Masonry Cement Lafarge Masonry Cement Trinity White Masonry Cement.
- f. **Lehigh Cement Company**; Lehigh Masonry Cement Lehigh White Masonry Cement.
- g. **National Cement Company, Inc.**; Coosa Masonry Cement.

E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.

1. **Products**: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Lafarge North America Inc.**; Lafarge Mortar Cement or Magnolia Superbond Mortar Cement.

F. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

1. For joints less than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
2. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
3. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

G. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

H. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.

1. **Products**: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Euclid Chemical Company (The)**; Accelguard 80.
 - b. **Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.**; Morset.
 - c. **Sonneborn Products, BASF Aktiengesellschaft**; Trimix-NCA.

I. Water: Potable.

2.5 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**.
- B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.

1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon or Stainless steel.
3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.187-inch (4.76-mm) diameter.
4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.187-inch (4.76-mm) diameter.
5. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet (3 m).

2.6 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated.
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
 2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
 3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch- (6.35-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
 2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face, made from 0.187-inch- (4.76-mm-) 0.25-inch- (6.35-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- C. Anchor Bolts: Headed or L-shaped steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated.

2.7 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim and as follows:
1. Metal Drip Edge: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
 2. Metal Sealant Stop: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch (19 mm) and down into joint 1/4 inch (6 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Copper-Laminated Flashing: 5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m) copper sheet bonded between 2 layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) **Advanced Building Products Inc.;** Copper Fabric Flashing Copper Sealite 2000.
 - 2) **Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division;** Copper Fabric Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - 3) **Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.;** H & B C-Fab Flashing.
 - 4) **Phoenix Building Products;** Type FCC-Fabric Covered Copper.
 - 5) **Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.;** Copper Fabric Flashing.
 - 6) **York Manufacturing, Inc.;** Multi-Flash 500.
2. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) **Advanced Building Products Inc.;** Peel-N-Seal.
 - 2) **Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing;** CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - 3) **Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division;** Dur-O-Barrier Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - 4) **Fiberweb, Clark Hammerbeam Corp.;** Aquaflash 500.
 - 5) **Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.;** Perm-A-Barrier Wall Flashing.
 - 6) **Heckmann Building Products Inc.;** No. 82 Rubberized-Asphalt Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - 7) **Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.;** Textroflash.
 - 8) **W. R. Meadows, Inc.;** Air-Shield Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - 9) **Polyguard Products, Inc.;** Polyguard 300 Polyguard 400.
 - 10) **Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.;** Sando-Seal.
 - 11) **Williams Products, Inc.;** Everlastic MF-40.
3. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy.
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) **DuPont;** Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - 2) **Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.;** Flex-Flash.
 - 3) **Hyload, Inc.;** Hyload Cloaked Flashing System.
 - 4) **Mortar Net USA, Ltd.;** Total Flash.

- C. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- D. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

2.9 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi (14 MPa).
 - 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches (203 to 279 mm) 10 to 11 inches (254 to 279 mm) as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation do not vary by more than plus **1/2 inch (12 mm)** or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
2. For location of elements in plan do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/2 inch (12 mm)**.
3. For location of elements in elevation do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in a story height or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls do not vary from level by more than **1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than **1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m)**, **3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces do not vary from straight by more than **1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m)**, **3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, with a maximum thickness limited to **1/2 inch (12 mm)**.
2. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus **3/8 inch (9 mm)** or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
3. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.

3.2 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

- C. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- E. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
- G. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
 - 1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 - 4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 MASONRY-CELL INSULATION

- A. Pour granular insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of insulation at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports after filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of insulation to one story high, but not more than 20 feet (6 m).
- B. Install molded-polystyrene insulation units into masonry unit cells before laying units.

3.5 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of **5/8 inch (16 mm)** on exterior side of walls, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
 - 1. Space reinforcement not more than **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c.
 - 2. Space reinforcement not more than **8 inches (203 mm)** o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
 - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than **8 inches (203 mm)** above and below wall openings and extending **12 inches (305 mm)** beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

3.6 FLASHING

- A. General: Install embedded flashing in masonry at lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 - 2. At lintels, extend flashing a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing **6 inches (150 mm)** at ends and turn up not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** to form end dams.
 - 3. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch (13 mm)** back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
 - 4. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch (13 mm)** back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.

3.7 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches (1520 mm).

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
 - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- B. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. (464 sq. m) of wall area or portion thereof.
- D. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
- E. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780.
- F. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- G. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.

3.9 PARGING

- A. Parge exterior faces of below-grade masonry walls, where indicated, in 2 uniform coats to a total thickness of 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- B. Use a steel-trowel finish to produce a smooth, flat, dense surface. Form a wash at top of parging and a cove at bottom.
- C. Damp-cure parging for at least 24 hours and protect parging until cured.

3.10 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- B. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes.
 - 2. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

3.11 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 - 1. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (450 mm) of finished grade.
- B. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042200

SECTION 044313.13 - ANCHORED STONE MASONRY VENEER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Stone masonry anchored to concrete backup.
2. Stone masonry anchored to cold-formed metal framing and sheathing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for cavity-wall insulation concealed flashing horizontal joint reinforcement and veneer anchors.
2. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for furnishing steel lintels and shelf angles for stone masonry.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and manufactured product.

B. Samples:

1. For each stone type indicated.
2. For each color of mortar required.

1.3 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Stone Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work.

B. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until masonry has dried.

C. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIMESTONE

- A. Material Standard: Comply with ASTM C 568.
- B. Varieties and Sources: Subject to compliance with requirements and selected by Architect from a full range of samples provided by manufacturer.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; natural color or white cement may be used as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 - 1. Low-Alkali Cement: Not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.**; Brikset Type N Citadel Type S Dixie Type S Kosmortar Type N Richmortar Victor Plastic Cement.
 - b. **Essroc, Italcementi Group**; Brixment or Velvet.
 - c. **Holcim (US) Inc.**; Mortamix Masonry Cement Rainbow Mortamix Custom Buff Masonry Cement White Mortamix Masonry Cement.
 - d. **Lafarge North America Inc.**; Magnolia Masonry Cement Lafarge Masonry Cement Trinity White Masonry Cement.
 - e. **Lehigh Cement Company**; Lehigh Masonry Cement Lehigh White Masonry Cement.
 - f. **National Cement Company, Inc.**; Coosa Masonry Cement.
- D. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in stone masonry mortar.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Davis Colors**; True Tone Mortar Colors.
 - b. **Lanxess Corporation**; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
 - c. **Solomon Colors**; SGS Mortar Colors.
- E. Aggregate: ASTM C 144 and as follows:

1. For pointing mortar, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
2. White Aggregates: Natural white sand or ground white stone.
3. Colored Aggregates: Natural-colored sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone; of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

F. Water: Potable.

2.3 VENEER ANCHORS

A. Materials:

1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2.
2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 316.
3. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2.
4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 Type 316.

B. Wire Veneer Anchors: Wire ties formed from W1.7 or **0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.

C. Corrugated-Metal Veneer Anchors: Not less than **0.030-inch- (0.76-mm-)** thick by **7/8-inch- (22-mm-)** wide hot-dip galvanized -steel sheet with corrugations having a wavelength of **0.3 to 0.5 inch (7.6 to 13 mm)** and an amplitude of **0.06 to 0.10 inch (1.5 to 2.5 mm)**.

D. Adjustable, Screw-Attached Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and a metal anchor section that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division;** D/A 213 or D/A 210 with D/A 700-708.
 - b. **Heckmann Building Products Inc.;** 315-D with 316 or Pos-I-Tie.
 - c. **Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.;** DW-10 DW-10HS or DW-10-X.
 - d. **Wire-Bond;** 1004, Type III RJ-711 or SureTie.
2. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a **100-lbf (445-N)** load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of **0.05 inch (1.3 mm)**.
3. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from **0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-)** thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-)** thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel sheet **0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel sheet.
4. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from **0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-)** **0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized stainless-steel wire.

2.4 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing, where flashing is exposed or partly exposed and where indicated, complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) thick.
- B. Flexible Flashing: For flashing unexposed to the exterior, use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Cementitious Dampproofing for Limestone: Cementitious formulation recommended by ILI and nonstaining to stone, compatible with joint sealants, and noncorrosive to veneer anchors and attachments.
- B. Weep/Vent Products: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from cotton or UV-resistant synthetic fiber, 1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm) in diameter, in length required to produce 2-inch (50-mm) exposure on exterior and 18 inches (450 mm) in cavity behind stone masonry. Use only for weeps.
 - 2. Round Plastic Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, 3/8-inch (10-mm) OD by thickness of stone masonry.
- C. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break Mortar Break II.
 - b. CavClear/Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
 - d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.
 - 2. Provide one of the following configurations:
 - a. Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches (250 mm) wide, with dovetail-shaped notches 7 inches (175 mm) deep that prevent mesh from being clogged with mortar droppings.
 - b. Strips, not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 10 inches (250 mm) wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
 - c. Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
 - d. Sheets or strips not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) 1 inch (25 mm) Insert dimension thick and installed to full height of cavity with additional strips 4 inches (100 mm) high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Cut stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated, including details on Drawings and pattern specified in "Setting Stone Masonry" Article.
 - 1. Shape stone specified to be laid in three-course, random range ashlar pattern with sawed beds.
- B. Thickness of Stone: Provide thickness indicated, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Thickness: 4 inches (100 mm) plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) 1/2 inch (13 mm). Thickness does not include projection of pitched faces.
- C. Finish exposed stone faces and edges to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples.
 - 1. Finish: Smooth Sand rubbed
 - 2. Finish for Sills: Smooth Sand rubbed
 - 3. Finish for Lintels: Smooth Sand rubbed
 - 4. Finish for Copings: Smooth Sand rubbed
 - a. Finish exposed ends of copings same as front and back faces.

2.7 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime masonry cement or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious and aggregate materials together before adding water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for one to two hours. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches required consistency. Use mortar within 30 minutes of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Mortar for Stone Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
 - 1. Mortar for Setting Stone: Type S Type N.
 - 2. Mortar for Pointing Stone: Type N Type O.
- C. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
 - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Accurately mark stud centerlines on face of weather-resistant sheathing paper before beginning stone installation.
- B. Coat concrete and unit masonry backup with asphalt dampproofing.

3.2 SETTING STONE MASONRY

- A. Perform necessary field cutting and trimming as stone is set.
 - 1. Use power saws to cut stone that is fabricated with saw-cut surfaces.
 - 2. Use hammer and chisel to split stone that is fabricated with split surfaces.
 - 3. Pitch face at field-split edges as needed to match stones that are not field split.
- B. Sort stone before it is placed in wall to remove stone that does not comply with requirements relating to aesthetic effects, physical properties, or fabrication, or that is otherwise unsuitable for intended use.
- C. Arrange stones in range ashlar pattern with course heights as indicated, uniform random lengths, and uniform joint widths, with offset between vertical joints as indicated.
- D. Arrange stones in broken-range ashlar pattern with uniform course heights, random lengths, and uniform joint widths.
- E. Arrange stones in three-course, random-range ashlar pattern with random course heights, random lengths (interrupted coursed), and uniform joint widths.
- F. Arrange stones in coursed uncoursed rubble pattern with joint widths within tolerances indicated. Insert small stones into spaces between larger stones as needed to produce joints as uniform in width as practical.
- G. Arrange stones with color and size variations uniformly dispersed for an evenly blended appearance.
- H. Maintain uniform joint widths except for variations due to different stone sizes and where minor variations are required to maintain bond alignment if any. Lay walls with joints not less than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** at narrowest points or more than **3/8 inch (10 mm)** at widest points.
- I. Provide sealant joints of widths and at locations indicated.
 - 1. Keep sealant joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 - 2. Sealing joints is specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- J. Install embedded flashing and weep holes at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.

1. At stud-framed walls, extend flashing through stone masonry, up sheathing face at least **12 inches (300 mm)** and behind weather barrier.
2. At concrete backing, extend flashing through stone masonry, turned up a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm) 12 inches (300 mm)**, and insert in reglet. Reglets are specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing full length of angles but not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** into masonry at each end.
4. At sills, extend flashing not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** at ends.
5. At ends of head and sill flashing, turn up not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** to form end dams.
6. Extend sheet metal flashing **1/2 inch (13 mm)** beyond masonry face at exterior, and turn flashing down to form a drip.
7. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior wall face. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch (13 mm)** back from exterior wall face and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
8. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior wall face. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch (13 mm)** back from exterior wall face and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
9. Cut flexible flashing flush with wall face after completing masonry wall construction.

K. Coat limestone with cementitious dampproofing as follows:

1. Stone at Grade: Beds, joints, and back surfaces to at least **12 inches (300 mm)** above finish-grade elevations.
2. Stone Extending below Grade: Beds, joints, back surfaces, and face surfaces below grade.

L. Place weep holes and vents in joints where moisture may accumulate, including at base of cavity walls, above shelf angles, and at flashing.

1. Use wicking material round plastic tubing or open head joints to form weep holes.
2. Use wicking material to form weep holes above flashing in stone sills. Turn wicking down at lip of sill to be as inconspicuous as possible.
3. Space weep holes **16 inches (400 mm) 24 inches (600 mm)** o.c.
4. Space weep holes formed from plastic tubing or wicking material **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c.
5. Trim wicking material used in weep holes flush with exterior wall face after mortar has set.
6. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.

M. Install vents in head joints at top of each continuous cavity at spacing indicated. Use round plastic tubing or open head joints to form vents.

3.3 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m)**, **3/8 inch in 20 feet (10 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more.

- B. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more.
- C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan, do not exceed **1/2 inch in 20 feet (13 mm in 6 m)** or **3/4 inch in 40 feet (19 mm in 12 m)** or more.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORED STONE MASONRY

- A. Anchor stone masonry to concrete with corrugated-metal veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Secure anchors by inserting dovetailed ends into dovetail slots in concrete.
- B. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with corrugated-metal or individual wire veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Embed anchors in unit masonry mortar joints or grouted cells at a distance of at least one-half of unit masonry thickness.
- C. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement by inserting pintles into eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
- D. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement with vertical rods inserted through anchors and through eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
- E. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with adjustable, screw-attached seismic veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to framing with two screws.
- F. Embed veneer anchors in mortar joints of stone masonry at least halfway, but not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, through stone masonry and with at least a **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on exterior face.
 - 1. Install continuous wire reinforcement in horizontal joints and attach to seismic veneer anchors as stone is set.
- G. Space anchors to provide not less than one anchor per **2 sq. ft. (0.2 sq. m)** of wall area. Install additional anchors within **12 inches (300 mm)** of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding **12 inches (300 mm)**.
- H. Space anchors not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. vertically and **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c. horizontally. Install additional anchors within **12 inches (300 mm)** of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding **12 inches (300 mm)**.
- I. Space anchors not more than **18 inches (450 mm)** o.c. vertically and **32 inches (800 mm)** o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor per **2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m)** of wall area. Install additional anchors within **12 inches (300 mm)** of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding **12 inches (300 mm)**.
- J. Set stone in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated. Build anchors into mortar joints as stone is set.

- K. Fill collar joint space between back of stone masonry and weather-resistant sheathing paper with mortar as stone is set.
- L. Provide 1-inch (25-mm) 2-inch (50-mm) cavity between stone masonry and backup construction unless otherwise indicated. Keep cavity free of mortar droppings and debris.
 - 1. Slope beds toward cavity to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity.
 - 2. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
- M. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depth of not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) 3/4 inch (19 mm) before setting mortar has hardened. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.

3.5 POINTING

- A. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing dust and mortar particles. Where setting mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas, apply pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch (10 mm) deep until a uniform depth is formed.
- B. Point stone joints by placing and compacting pointing mortar in layers of not more than 3/8 inch (10 mm) deep. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to it become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- C. Tool joints, when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard, with a smooth jointing tool to produce the following joint profile:
 - 1. Joint Profile: Flush, with a 3/8-inch (10-mm) half-round raised bead in middle of joint

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean stone masonry as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- B. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean stone masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on mockup; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before cleaning stone masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaner; remove cleaner promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean stone masonry by bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Note No. 20, Revised II, using job-mixed detergent solution.
 - 6. Clean stone masonry with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

7. Clean limestone masonry to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

3.7 EXCESS MATERIALS AND WASTE

- A. Excess Stone: Stack excess stone where directed by Owner for Owner's use.
- B. Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including mortar and excess or soil-contaminated sand, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 1. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (450 mm) of finished grade.

END OF SECTION 044313.13

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.
2. Grout.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 051213 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel Framing" for additional requirements for architecturally exposed structural steel.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator and testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control and special inspection reports as per International Building Code.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC 303.
 - 2. AISC 360.
 - 3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using [schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
 - 2. Use Load and Resistance Factor Design; data are given at factored-load level.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: **ASTM A 325** (**ASTM A 325M**), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A 563, Grade C**, (**ASTM A 563M, Class 8S**) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and **ASTM F 436** (**ASTM F 436M**), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: **ASTM F 959, Type 325** (**ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8**), compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.

2.3 PRIMER

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- B. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.
- B. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M[and AWS D1.8/D1.8M] for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
 - 5. Galvanized surfaces.
 - 6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Inspect shop-bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 3. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

3.3 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
 2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Bolted Connections: Inspect[and test] bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
1. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Miscellaneous steel framing and supports.
2. Prefabricated building columns.
3. Shelf angles.
4. Metal ladders.
5. Ladder safety cages.
6. Elevator pit sump covers.
7. Structural-steel door frames.
8. Miscellaneous steel trim.
9. Metal bollards.
10. Wire rope parking garage guards.
11. Pipe Downspout guards.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Prefabricated building columns.
2. Metal nosings and treads.
3. Paint products.
4. Grout.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For ladders, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.
- B. Structural Performance of Aluminum Ladders: Aluminum ladders[, including landings,] shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ANSI A14.3.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- D. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Zinc-Coated Steel Wire Rope: ASTM A 741.
 - 1. Wire-Rope Fittings: Hot-dip galvanized-steel connectors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to minimum breaking strength of wire rope with which they are used.
- G. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
- H. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- I. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
- J. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
- K. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).

- L. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
 - 1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
 - 2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
 - 3. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening nickel silver.
 - 4. Provide bronze fasteners for fastening bronze.
- B. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy[Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**.
- D. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, **1-5/8 by 7/8 inches (41 by 22 mm)** by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than **3 inches (75 mm)** long at not more than **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- C. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.

- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- F. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- G. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended.
- D. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- E. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.

- C. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
 - 1. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c.
- D. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive **3/4-inch (19-mm)** bolts, spaced not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** from ends and **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.
- D. Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer.
- E. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

2.8 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3, except for elevator pit ladders.
 - 2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Steel Ladders:
 - 1. Space siderails **18 inches (457 mm)** apart unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Siderails: Continuous, **1/2-by-2-1/2-inch (12.7-by-64-mm)** steel flat bars, with eased edges.
 - 3. Rungs: **3/4-inch (19-mm)** diameter steel bars.
 - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
 - 5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung.
 - 6. Galvanize exterior ladders, including brackets.
 - 7. Prime exterior ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.

2.9 LADDER SAFETY CAGES

- A. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
- B. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than 20 feet (6 m) o.c. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. between primary hoops.
- C. Galvanize steel ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners.
- D. Prime steel ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.
- E. sections, one at each end of each section.

2.10 ELEVATOR PIT SUMP COVERS

- A. Fabricate from 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) plate with four 1-inch- (25-mm-) diameter holes for water drainage and for lifting.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
- C. Galvanize [exterior]miscellaneous steel trim.
- D. Prime [exterior]miscellaneous steel trim with zinc-rich primer.

2.12 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) wall-thickness rectangular steel tubing.
 - 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate.
- B. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.
- C. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve.
- D. Prime bollards with zinc-rich primer.

2.13 WIRE ROPE PARKING GARAGE GUARDS

- A. Wire Rope Parking Garage Guards: ~~3/4-inch~~ (19-mm-) diameter, zinc-coated steel wire ropes with wire rope fittings for securing to parking garage columns and walls and for tightening wire rope.

2.14 PIPE DOWNSPOUT GUARDS

- A. Fabricate pipe downspout guards from ~~3/8-inch~~ (9.5-mm-) thick by ~~12-inch~~ (300-mm-) wide steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with ~~2-inch~~ (50-mm) clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two ~~3/4-inch~~ (19-mm) anchor bolts.
- B. Galvanize pipe downspout guards.
- C. Prime pipe downspout guards with zinc-rich primer.

2.15 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated.
- B. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.
- C. Prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer.

2.16 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.17 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
- B. Anchor bollards to existing construction with through bolts. Provide four **3/4-inch (19-mm)** bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Anchor bollards in concrete in formed or core-drilled holes. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with nonshrink grout.
- D. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- E. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

3.3 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 055000

SECTION 055113 - METAL PAN STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.
2. Steel tube railings attached to metal stairs.
3. Steel tube handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For metal pan stairs.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For stairs and railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. **Alfab, Inc.**
 2. **American Stair, Inc.**
 3. **Lapeyre Stair Inc.**
 4. **Pacific Stair Corporation.**
 5. **Worthington Metal Fabricators.**
 6. **<Insert manufacturer's name>.**

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design stairs and railings.
- B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Uniform Load: **100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).**
 2. Concentrated Load: **300 lbf (1.33 kN)** applied on an area of **4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).**

3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
- C. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of **50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m)** applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of **200 lbf (0.89 kN)** applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 2. Infill of Guards:
 - a. Concentrated load of **50 lbf (0.22 kN)** applied horizontally on an area of **1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m)**.
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- D. Seismic Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7
1. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.

2.3 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed).
- D. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, **Grade 25 (Grade 170)**, unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
- E. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, **Grade 30 (Grade 205)**, unless another grade is required by design loads.
 1. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13
- F. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)** thick, [with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** holes **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** o.c. in staggered rows].
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Provide product with perforations matching .

- G. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, [diamond] [square] pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
- H. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- B. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm), W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 PRECAST CONCRETE TREADS

- A. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, ready-mixed concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 5000 psi (35 MPa) and a total air content of not less than 4 percent or more than 6 percent.
- B. Reinforcement: Galvanized, welded wire reinforcement, 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) by 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) diameter wire; comply with ASTM A 185/A 185M and ASTM A 82/A 82M, except for minimum wire size.

2.7 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, railings, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
 - 1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

- B. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- E. Weld connections to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

2.8 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," Commercial Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Stair Framing:
 - 1. Fabricate stringers of steel channels.
 - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel stringers.
 - 2. Construct platforms of steel channel headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements.
 - 3. Weld or bolt stringers to headers; weld or bolt framing members to stringers and headers. If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.
 - 4. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below. Locate hanger rods and struts where they do not encroach on required stair width and are within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.
 - 5. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
- C. Metal Pan Stairs: Form risers, subtread pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than **0.067 inch (1.7 mm)**

- D. Abrasive-Coating-Finished, Formed-Metal Stairs: Form risers, treads, and platforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than **0.097 inch (2.5 mm)**

2.9 STAIR RAILINGS

- A. Steel Tube Railings: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of tube, post spacings, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.
 - 1. Rails and Posts: **1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-)** diameter top and bottom rails and **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** square posts.
 - 2. Picket Infill: **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** round pickets spaced less than **4 inches (100 mm)** clear.
 - 3. Intermediate Rails Infill: **1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-)** diameter intermediate rails spaced less than **12 inches (305 mm)** clear.
- B. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 - 1. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes are okay as shown in NAAMM AMP 521.
- C. Form changes in direction of railings by bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
- D. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- E. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- F. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails.
- G. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding.
- H. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work.
- I. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses.

2.10 FINISHES

- A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.

- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLING METAL PAN STAIRS

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- B. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints.
- D. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
- E. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete.
- F. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLING RAILINGS

- A. Adjust railing systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:
 - 1. Anchor posts to steel by welding or bolting to steel supporting members.
 - 2. Anchor handrail ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail ends and anchored with postinstalled anchors and bolts.
- B. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 055113

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Framing with engineered wood products.
3. Shear wall panels.
4. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
5. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
6. Wood furring and grounds.
7. Wood sleepers.
8. Plywood backing panels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
3. Engineered wood products.
4. Shear panels.
5. Power-driven fasteners.
6. Powder-actuated fasteners.
7. Expansion anchors.
8. Metal framing anchors.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness 19 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
 - 1. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated. items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 - 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
 - 4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
 - 5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 - 2. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated. items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Framing for raised platforms.
 - 2. Framing for stages.
 - 3. Concealed blocking.
 - 4. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
 - 5. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
 - 6. Roof construction.
 - 7. Plywood backing panels.

2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 Construction, Stud, or No. 3 Standard, Stud, or No. 3 grade.
 - 1. Application: All interior partitions Interior partitions not indicated as load-bearing.
 - 2. Species:
 - a. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - b. Northern species; NLGA.
 - c. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
 - d. Western woods; WCLIB or WWP.

- B. Framing Other Than Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: No. 2 Construction or No. 2 Construction, Stud, or No. 3 grade.
1. Application: Framing other than interior partitions interior partitions not indicated as load-bearing.
 2. Species:
 - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
 - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWP.
 - d. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 - e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - f. Douglas fir-south; WWP.
 - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWP.
 - h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
 - i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWP.
- C. Framing Other Than Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,500,000 psi (10 350 MPa) 1,300,000 psi (8970 MPa) 1,100,000 psi (7590 MPa) 1,000,000 psi (6900 MPa) 900,000 psi (6210 MPa) and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 1000 psi (6.9 MPa) 850 psi (5.86 MPa) 700 psi (4.83 MPa) 600 psi (4.14 MPa) 500 psi (3.45 MPa) for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and 12-inch nominal (286-mm actual) width for single-member use.
1. Application: Framing other than interior partitions interior partitions not indicated as load-bearing.
- D. Exposed Framing: Provide material hand-selected for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot-holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
1. Application: Exposed exterior and interior framing indicated to receive a stained or natural finish.
 2. Species and Grade: As indicated above for load-bearing construction of same type

2.5 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Engineered Wood Products, General: Products shall contain no urea formaldehyde. comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
1. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 3100 psi (21.3 MPa) 2900 psi (20.0 MPa) for 12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-) depth members.
 2. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 1,800,000 psi (12 400 MPa)

- C. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units, I-shaped in cross section, made with solid or structural composite lumber flanges and wood-based structural panel webs, let into and bonded to flanges. Provide units complying with material requirements of and with structural capacities established and monitored according to ASTM D 5055.
 - 1. Web Material: Either oriented strand board or plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1, Exterior grade.
 - 2. Structural Properties: Provide units with depths and design values not less than those indicated.
 - 3. Provide units complying with APA PRI-400, factory marked with APA trademark indicating nominal joist depth, joist class, span ratings, mill identification, and compliance with APA standard.
- D. Rim Boards: Product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research/evaluation report for I-joists.
 - 1. Material: All-veneer product glued-laminated wood or product made from any combination solid lumber, wood strands, and veneers.
 - 2. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm)
 - 3. Provide performance-rated product complying with APA PRR-401, rim board rim board plus grade, factory marked with APA trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA standard.

2.6 SHEAR WALL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Shear Transfer Systems.
 - 2. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
 - 3. Weyerhaeuser Company.
 - 4. Insert manufacturer's name.
- C. Wood-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of wood perimeter framing, tie downs, and Exposure I, Structural I plywood or OSB sheathing.
 - 1. Products shall contain no urea formaldehyde. comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Steel-Framed Shear Wall Panels: Prefabricated assembly consisting of cold-formed galvanized steel panel, steel top and bottom plates, and wood studs.

- E. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated of basis-of-design products. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 - 1. Blocking.
 - 2. Nailers.
 - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 - 4. Cants.
 - 5. Furring.
 - 6. Grounds.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 Standard, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species.
- C. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
 - 1. Mixed southern pine; No. 2 3 grade; SPIB.
 - 2. Eastern softwoods; No. 2 3 Common grade; NeLMA.
 - 3. Northern species; No. 2 3 Common grade; NLGA.
 - 4. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common Standard or No. 3 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

2.8 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exterior, AC Exterior, C-C Plugged Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **1/2-inch (13-mm) 3/4-inch (19-mm)** nominal thickness.
 - 1. Plywood shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.9 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M of Type 304 stainless steel.

- B. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- C. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with **ASTM A 307, Grade A** (**ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6**); with **ASTM A 563** (**ASTM A 563M**) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

2.10 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product**: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. **Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.**
 - 2. **KC Metals Products, Inc.**
 - 3. **Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.**
 - 4. **Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.**
 - 5. **USP Structural Connectors.**
- C. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated of basis-of-design products of products of manufacturers listed. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G60** (**Z180**) coating designation.
 - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); **G185** (**Z550**) coating designation; and not less than **0.036 inch** (**0.9 mm**) thick.
 - 1. Use for wood-preserved-treated lumber and where indicated.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; **1-inch** (**25-mm**) nominal thickness, compressible to **1/32 inch** (**0.8 mm**); selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, **1/4 inch** (**6.4 mm**) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- C. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum

foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch (0.6 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Shear Wall Panels: Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- G. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Comply with AWP A M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
- I. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
 - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet sufficiently wet that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061516 - WOOD ROOF DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glued-laminated wood roof decking

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- B. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD ROOF DECKING, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

2.2 GLUED-LAMINATED WOOD ROOF DECKING

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. **Disdero Lumber Company.**
 - 2. **Filler King Company.**
 - 3. **Structural Wood Systems; A Division of Harrison Industries.**
 - 4. **Timberweld.**
- B. Face Species: Southern pine
- C. Roof Decking Nominal Size: 4 by 6.
- D. Face Grade: Custom or Supreme: Clear face is required. Occasional pieces may contain a small knot or minor characteristic that does not detract from the overall appearance.

- E. Face Grade: Decorative: Sound knots and natural characteristics are allowed, including chipped edge knots, short end splits, seasoning checks, and some pin holes. Face knot holes, stains, end slits, skips, roller splits, and planer burns are not allowed.
- F. Face Grade: Service: Face knot holes, stains, end splits, skips, roller splits, planer burns, and other nonstrength-reducing characteristics are allowed. Strength-reducing characteristics are not allowed.
- G. Moisture Content: Provide wood roof decking with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- H. Face Surface: Rough sanded or wire brushed.
- I. Edge Pattern: Vee grooved.
- J. Laminating Adhesive: Wet-use type complying with ASTM D 2559.
 - 1. Adhesives shall contain no urea-formaldehyde resins.
 - 2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Fastener Material: Hot-dip galvanized steel.
- B. Sealants: Latex, complying with ASTM C 83 and with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," recommended by sealant manufacturer and manufacturer of substrates for intended application.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **BASF Building Systems**; Sonolac.
 - b. **Bostik, Inc**; Chem-Calk 600.
 - c. **May National Associates, Inc**; [Bondaflex 600] [Bondaflex Sil-A 700].
 - d. **Pecora Corporation**; AC-20+.
 - e. **Schnee-Morehead, Inc., an ITW company**; SM 8200.
 - f. **Tremco Incorporated**; Tremflex 834.
 - 2. Sealants shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 3. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install solid-sawn wood roof decking to comply with AITC 112.
 - 1. Locate end joints for lay-up indicated.
- B. Anchor wood roof decking, where supported on walls, with bolts as indicated.
- C. Apply joint sealant to seal roof decking at exterior walls at the following locations:
 - 1. Between roof decking and supports located at exterior walls.
 - 2. Between roof decking and exterior walls that butt against underside of roof decking.
 - 3. Between tongues and grooves of roof decking over exterior walls and supports at exterior walls.

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Provide water-resistive barrier over roof decking as the Work progresses to protect roof decking until roofing is applied.

END OF SECTION 061516

SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Evaluation Reports: For following products, from ICC-ES:

1. Preservative-treated plywood.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Plywood: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2.

2.2 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: [Treat plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.3 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior sheathing.
- B. Oriented-Strand-Board Wall Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. For wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
 - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."
- D. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
 - 1. Wall Sheathing:
 - a. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - b. Space panels $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3 mm) apart at edges and ends.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 061753 - SHOP-FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood roof trusses.
2. Wood floor trusses.

B. Allowances: Provide wood truss bracing under the Metal-Plate-Connected Truss Bracing Allowance as specified in Section 012100 "Allowances."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For metal-plate connectors, metal truss accessories, and fasteners.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for trusses.

1. Show location, pitch, span, camber, configuration, and spacing for each type of truss required.
2. Indicate sizes, stress grades, and species of lumber.
3. Indicate locations of permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
4. Indicate locations, sizes, and materials for permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
5. Indicate type, size, material, finish, design values, orientation, and location of metal connector plates.
6. Show splice details and bearing details.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal-plate-connected wood trusses indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product certificates.

B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:

1. Metal-plate connectors.
2. Metal truss accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Metal Connector-Plate Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer that is a member of TPI and that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 for manufacture of connector plates.
 - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
 - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that participates in a recognized quality-assurance program that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 and that involves third-party inspection by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle and store trusses to comply with recommendations in TPI BCSI, "Building Component Safety Information: Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining, & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal-plate-connected wood trusses.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide metal-plate-connected wood trusses capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated. Comply with requirements in TPI 1 unless more stringent requirements are specified below.

2.2 DIMENSION LUMBER

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Provide dry lumber with [19] [15] percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
- B. Permanent Bracing: Provide wood bracing that complies with requirements for miscellaneous lumber in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 METAL CONNECTOR PLATES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Alpine Engineered Products, Inc.; an ITW company.
 2. Cherokee Metal Products, Inc.; Masengill Machinery Company.
 3. CompuTrus, Inc.
 4. Eagle Metal Products.
 5. Jager Building Systems, Inc.; a Tembec/SGF Rexfor company.
 6. MiTek Industries, Inc.; a subsidiary of Berkshire Hathaway Inc.
 7. Robbins Engineering, Inc.
 8. Truswal Systems Corporation; an ITW company.
- B. General: Fabricate connector plates to comply with TPI 1.
- C. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); **G60 (Z180)** coating designation; and not less than **0.036 inch (0.9 mm)** thick.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. Provide fasteners for use with metal framing anchors that comply with written recommendations of metal framing manufacturer.
 2. Where trusses are exposed to weather, in ground contact, made from pressure-preservative treated wood, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners [with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

2.5 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
 2. KC Metals Products, Inc.
 3. Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.
 4. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
 5. USP Structural Connectors.
- B. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those [indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) coating designation.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Assemble truss members in design configuration indicated; use jigs or other means to ensure uniformity and accuracy of assembly with joints closely fitted to comply with tolerances in TPI 1. Position members to produce design camber indicated.
 - 1. Fabricate wood trusses within manufacturing tolerances in TPI 1.
- B. Connect truss members by metal connector plates located and securely embedded simultaneously in both sides of wood members by air or hydraulic press.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wood trusses only after supporting construction is in place and is braced and secured.
- B. If trusses are delivered to Project site in more than one piece, assemble trusses before installing.
- C. Hoist trusses in place by lifting equipment suited to sizes and types of trusses required, exercising care not to damage truss members or joints by out-of-plane bending or other causes.
- D. Install and brace trusses according to TPI recommendations and as indicated.
- E. Anchor trusses securely at bearing points; use metal truss tie-downs or floor truss hangers as applicable. Install fasteners through each fastener hole in metal framing anchors according to manufacturer's fastening schedules and written instructions.
- F. Securely connect each truss ply required for forming built-up girder trusses.
- G. Install and fasten permanent bracing during truss erection and before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of permanent bracing where terminating at walls or beams.
 - 1. Install bracing to comply with Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
 - 2. Install and fasten strongback bracing vertically against vertical web of parallel-chord floor trusses at centers indicated.
- H. Install wood trusses within installation tolerances in TPI 1.
- I. Do not alter trusses in field. Do not cut, drill, notch, or remove truss members.
- J. Replace wood trusses that are damaged or do not meet requirements.

END OF SECTION 061753

SECTION 062023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior trim.
2. Interior plywood, hardboard paneling.
3. Shelving and clothes rods.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 064214 "Stile and Rail Wood Paneling."
2. Section 064400 "Ornamental Woodwork."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.

B. Samples: For each type of paneling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

1. Interior trim.
2. Interior plywood, hardboard paneling.
3. Shelving and clothes rods.

B. Lumber: DOC PS 20.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
 - a. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.

C. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.

D. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.

E. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.

F. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2

- G. Melamine-Faced Particleboard: Particleboard complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, finished on both faces with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD3, Grade VGL, for test methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

- 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

- 1. Kiln dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent respectively.

- B. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- 1. For exposed lumber and plywood indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark back of each piece.

2.3 INTERIOR TRIM

- A. Softwood Lumber Trim:

- 1. Species and Grade: As selected by samples provided to Architect/Owner.
 - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.

- B. Hardwood Lumber Trim:

- 1. Species and Grade: As selected by samples provided to Architect/Owner.
 - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 10percent.

- C. Softwood Moldings for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish): WMMPA WM 4, N-grade wood moldings. Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.

- 1. Species: As selected by samples provided to Architect/Owner.
 - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.

- D. Hardwood Moldings for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish): WMMPA HWM 2, N-grade wood moldings made to patterns included in WMMPA HWM 1.

- 1. Species: As selected by samples provided to Architect/Owner.
 - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.

- E. Moldings for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish): Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.

1. Softwood Moldings: WMMPA WM 4, P grade.
 - a. Species: As selected by Architect/Owner
 - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.
2. Hardwood Moldings: WMMPA HWM 2, P-grade.
3. Species: As selected by samples provided to Architect/Owner
 - a. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.

2.4 PANELING

- A. Hardwood Veneer Plywood Paneling: Manufacturer's stock hardwood plywood panels complying with HPVA HP-1
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Chesapeake Hardwood Products, Inc.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Corp.
 - c. Holland Southwest International.
- B. Hardboard Paneling: Interior factory-finished hardboard paneling complying with AHA 135.5.
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Chesapeake Hardwood Products, Inc.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Corp.
 - c. Marlite.
 2. Thickness: 5/32 inch (4 mm).
 3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As follows, tested according to ASTM E 84:
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- C. Board Paneling: Interior wood-board paneling complying with WMMPA WM 9.
 1. Species and Grade: As selected by samples provided to Architect/Owner.
 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.
- D. Board Paneling:
 1. Species and Grade: As selected from samples provided to Architect/Owner.
 2. Maximum moisture content for seasoned or kiln-dried, board-size lumber varies depending on species, grade, and grading agency. See the Evaluations in Section 062000 "Finish Carpentry."
 3. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.

2.5 SHELVING AND CLOTHES RODS

- A. Shelving: Made from one of the following materials, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick.
 - 1. Particleboard with radiused and filled front edge.
 - 2. MDF with radiused front edge.
- B. Shelf Brackets with Rod Support: BHMA A156.16, B04051; prime-painted formed steel.
- C. Shelf Brackets without Rod Support: BHMA A156.16, B04041; prime-painted formed steel.
- D. Clothes Rods: **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** diameter, clear, kiln-dried hardwood.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Paneling Adhesive: Comply with paneling manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives.
 - 1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
 - 1. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Install to tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2438 mm)** for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with **1/32-inch (0.8-mm)** maximum offset for flush installation and **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** maximum offset for reveal installation.
 - 4. Install stairs with no more than **3/16-inch (4.7-mm)** variation between adjacent treads and risers and with no more than **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.

3.3 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Miter at returns, miter at outside corners, and cope at inside corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.

3.4 PANELING INSTALLATION

- A. Plywood Paneling: Select and arrange panels on each wall to minimize noticeable variations in grain character and color between adjacent panels. Leave **1/4-inch (6-mm)** gap to be covered with trim at top, bottom, and openings. Install with uniform tight joints between panels.
 - 1. Attach panels to supports with manufacturer's recommended panel adhesive and fasteners. Space fasteners and adhesive as recommended by panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Conceal fasteners to greatest practical extent.
- B. Hardboard Paneling: Install according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Leave **1/4-inch (6-mm)** gap to be covered with trim at top, bottom, and openings. Butt adjacent panels with moderate contact. Use fasteners with prefinished heads matching paneling color.
- C. Board Paneling: Arrange in random-width pattern suggested by manufacturer unless boards or planks are of uniform width.
 - 1. Install in full lengths without end joints.
 - 2. Stagger end joints in random pattern to uniformly distribute joints on each wall.
 - 3. Select and arrange boards on each wall to minimize noticeable variations in grain character and color between adjacent boards. Install with uniform tight joints between boards.
 - 4. Fasten paneling by face nailing, setting nails, and filling over nail heads.
 - 5. Fasten paneling with trim screws, set below face and filled.
 - 6. Fasten paneling by blind nailing through tongues.

3.5 SHELVING AND CLOTHES ROD INSTALLATION

- A. Cut shelf cleats at ends of shelves about **1/2 inch (13 mm)** less than width of shelves and sand exposed ends smooth.
- B. Install shelf cleats by fastening to framing or backing with finish nails or trim screws, set below face and filled. Space fasteners not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c.
- C. Install shelf brackets according to manufacturer's written instructions, spaced not more than **32 inches (800 mm)** o.c. Fasten to framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors.
- D. Cut shelves to neatly fit openings with only enough gap to allow shelves to be removed and reinstalled. Install shelves, fully seated on cleats, brackets, and supports.

END OF SECTION 062023

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Foam-plastic board insulation.
2. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
3. Vapor retarders.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Research/evaluation reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **DiversiFoam Products.**
 - b. **Dow Chemical Company (The).**
 - c. **Owens Corning.**
 - d. **Pactiv Building Products.**
 2. Type VII, **60 psi (414 kPa).**
- B. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. **DiversiFoam Products.**
- b. **Plymouth Foam, Inc.**
2. Type VIII, **20 psi** (138 kPa).

2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. **CertainTeed Corporation.**
 2. **Guardian Building Products, Inc.**
 3. **Johns Manville.**
 4. **Knauf Insulation.**
 5. **Owens Corning.**
- B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- C. Polypropylene-Scrim-Kraft-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type II (non-reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).
- D. Kraft-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type II (non-reflective faced), Class C (faced surface not rated for flame propagation); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).
- E. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
- F. Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class B (faced surface with a flame-propagation resistance of 0.12 W/sq. cm); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
- G. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide cross ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

2.3 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKET INSULATION

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. **Fibrex Insulations Inc.**
 2. **Owens Corning.**
 3. **Roxul Inc.**
 4. **Thermafiber.**

- B. Unfaced, Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- C. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.

2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, [6 mils (0.15 mm)] [10 mils (0.25 mm)] thick, with maximum permance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
- B. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF BELOW-GRADE INSULATION

- A. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm) below exterior grade line.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
 - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm) in from exterior walls.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
 - 1. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Seal joints between units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain **3-inch (76-mm)** clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 - 4. Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
 - 5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed **96 inches (2438 mm)**, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
 - 6. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
 - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward exterior of construction.
 - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward areas of high humidity.
- D. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
 - 1. Loose-Fill Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately **2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m)**.
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Place vapor retarders on side of construction indicated on Drawings. Extend vapor retarders to extremities of areas to protect from vapor transmission. Secure vapor retarders in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarders to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- B. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping no fewer than two studs.
 - 1. Before installing vapor retarders, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
 - 2. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
- C. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarders.
- D. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarders.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072419 - WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes water-drainage exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) applied over water-resistive coating over sheathing and masonry.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 6 Section "Sheathing" for sheathing.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in EIFS with elastomeric joint sealants.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Class PB EIFS: A non-load-bearing, exterior wall cladding system that consists of an insulation board attached adhesively, mechanically, or both to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.
- B. Water-Drainage EIFS: EIFS with a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. EIFS Performance: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between system and supporting wall construction, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
 - 2. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior into water-drainage EIFS and assemblies behind it or through them into interior of building that results in deterioration of thermal-insulating effectiveness or other degradation of EIFS and assemblies behind it, including substrates, supporting wall construction, and interior finish, and including a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.
- B. Class PB EIFS: Provide EIFS having physical properties and structural performance that comply with the following:
 - 1. Abrasion Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts of sand when tested in accordance with ASTM D 968, Method A.
 - 2. Absorption-Freeze Resistance: No visible deleterious effects and negligible weight loss after 60 cycles in accordance with EIMA 101.01.
 - 3. Accelerated Weathering: Five samples in accordance with ICC-ES AC235 showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, delamination, or other characteristics that might affect performance as a wall cladding after testing for 2000

- hours when viewed under 5 times magnification in accordance with ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 154.
4. Freeze-Thaw: No surface changes, cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination, or indications of delamination between components when viewed under 5 times magnification after 60 cycles in accordance with EIMA 101.01.
 5. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-inch by 2-inch clean glass substrate, cured for 28 days, and showing no growth when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.
 6. Salt-Spray Resistance: No deleterious affects when tested according to ICC-ES AC235.
 7. Tensile Adhesion: No failure in the EIFS, adhesive, base coat, or finish coat when tested in accordance with EIMA 101.03.
 8. Water Penetration: Sample consisting of 1-inch thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch thick gypsum board, cured for 28 days, and showing no water penetration into the plane of the base coat to expanded polystyrene board interface of the test specimen after 15 minutes at 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. of air pressure difference or 20% of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater, across the specimen during a test period when tested in accordance with EIMA 101.02.
 9. Water Resistance: Three samples, each consisting of 1-inch thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch thick gypsum board; cured for 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination after testing for 14 days in accordance with ASTM D 2247.
 10. Impact Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch thick EIFS when constructed, conditioned, and tested in accordance with EIMA 101.86; and meeting or exceeding the following:
 - a. Standard Impact Resistance: 25 to 49 inch-lb).
 - b. High Impact Resistance: 90 to 150 inch-lb.
 11. Structural Performance Testing: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC235 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 330.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and component of EIFS indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For EIFS. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of penetration and termination, flashing details, joint locations and configurations, fastening and anchorage details including mechanical fasteners, and connections and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Verification: 24-inch square panels for each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated, prepared using same tools and techniques intended for actual work including custom trim, each profile, a typical control joint filled with sealant of color selected.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- E. Sample of warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with system components.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
- B. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
 - 1. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
 - 2. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
 - 3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 deg F for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of EIFS with related Work specified in other Sections to ensure that wall assemblies, including sheathing, weather-resistant sheathing paper, flashing, trim, joint sealants, windows, and doors, are protected against damage from the effects of weather, age, corrosion, moisture, and other causes. Do not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and drainage plane that is behind water-drainage EIFS.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard labor and material warranty.
- B. Warranty Period: 10 years from the date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Sto Corporation; Essence Next; or other manufacturers pre-approved by Architect.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Compatibility: Provide water-resistive coating, adhesive, fasteners, board insulation, reinforcing meshes, base- and finish-coat systems, sealants, and accessories that are compatible with one another and with substrates and approved for use by EIFS manufacturer for Project.

- B. Water-Resistive Coatings: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation and accessories for use as water/weather-resistive barriers, compatible with substrate, and complying with physical and performance criteria of ICC-ES AC212.
 - 1. Sheathing Joint Compound and Tape: Type recommended by EIFS manufacturer for sealing joints between and penetrations through sheathing.
 - 2. Air/Moisture Barrier: Sto Gold Guard.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate; and complying with the following:
 - 1. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and fillers specified for base coat.
- D. Molded, Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 578, Type I; EIFS manufacturer's requirements; and EIMA's "EIMA Guideline Specification for Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Insulation Board" for most stringent requirements for material performance and qualities of insulation, including dimensions and permissible variations, and the following:
 - 1. Aging: Before cutting and shipping, age insulation in block form by air drying for not less than 6 weeks or by another method approved by EIMA that produces equivalent results.
 - 2. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, in accordance with ASTM E 84.
 - 3. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards not more than 24 by 48 inches and in thickness indicated but not more than 4 inches thick or less than thickness allowed by ASTM C 1397.
 - 4. Foam Shapes: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
- E. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multiend strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. in accordance with ASTM E 2098; complying with ASTM D 578 and the following:
 - 1. Standard-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.5 oz./sq. yd.
 - 2. High-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 11.2 oz./sq. yd.
 - 3. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.2 oz./sq. yd.
 - 4. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 7.7 oz./sq. yd.
- F. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
- G. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating complying with the following:
 - 1. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
 - 2. Colors: As indicated on the Drawings.
- H. Water: Potable.
- I. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard Cell Class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.

1. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
2. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
3. Weep Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with perforated face leg extended to form a drip and weep holes in track bottom, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg; designed to drain incidental moisture that gets into wall construction to the exterior at terminations of EIFS with drainage.
4. Expansion Joint: Prefabricated, one-piece V profile; designed to relieve stress of movement.
5. Window Sill Flashing: Prefabricated type for both flashing and sloping sill over framing beneath windows; with end and back dams; designed to direct water to exterior.

2.3 MIXING

- A. General: Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of EIFS.
- B. Examine roof edges, wall framing, flashings, openings, substrates, and junctures at other construction for suitable conditions where EIFS will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Begin coating application only after surfaces are dry.
 2. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
- B. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind drainage plane of EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
- C. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.

3.3 EIFS INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

3.4 SUBSTRATE PROTECTION APPLICATION

- A. Water-Resistive Coatings: Apply over substrates to protect substrates from degradation and to provide water-/weather-resistive barrier.
 - 1. Tape and seal joints, exposed edges, terminations, and inside and outside corners of sheathing unless otherwise indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at window sills, and elsewhere as indicated, according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
 - 1. Weep Screed/Track: Use at bottom termination edges, at window and door heads, and at floor line expansion joints of water-drainage EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Window Sill Flashing: Use at windows unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.

3.6 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Board Insulation: Adhesively attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397, EIFS manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:
 - 1. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of sheathing with adhesive once insulation is adhered to sheathing unless EIFS manufacturer's written instructions specify using primer/sealer with ribbon-and-dab method. Apply adhesive to a thickness of not less than 1/4-inch for factory mixed and not less than 3/8-inch for field mixed, measured from surface of insulation before placement.
 - 2. Press and slide insulation into place. Apply pressure over the entire surface of insulation to accomplish uniform contact, high initial grab, and overall level surface.
 - 3. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for period recommended by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 24 hours, before beginning rasping and sanding insulation, or applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.
 - 4. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
 - 5. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches wide or 6 inches high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches from corners of window and door openings and not less than 4 inches from aesthetic reveals.
 - a. Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than 6 inches from horizontal and 4 inches from vertical joints in sheathing.
 - 6. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
 - 7. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16-inch occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
 - 8. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.

9. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than 1/16-inch from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16-inch.
 10. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than 3/4-inch.
 11. Install foam shapes and attach to sheathing.
 12. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
 13. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.
 14. After installing insulation and before applying field-applied reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than 2-1/2 inches over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 15. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
 - a. Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
 - b. Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
 - c. At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
 16. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and water-/weather-resistive barrier.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:
1. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
 2. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
 3. Where wall height or building shape changes.
 4. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.

3.7 BASE-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation and foam shapes in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 1/16-inch dry-coat thickness.
- B. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed type indicated below in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners and overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are not visible.
1. Standard-impact reinforcing mesh unless otherwise indicated.
 2. High-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings extending 4 inches beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch wide strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches on each side of corners.

1. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip reinforcing mesh not less than 8 inches wide.
2. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.

D. Foam Shapes: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.

3.8 FINISH-COAT INSTALLATION

A. Finish Coat: Apply over drybase coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.

1. Texture: As indicated on the Drawings.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION 072419

SECTION 074233 – PLASTIC (PHENOLIC) WALL PANELS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior solid phenolic cladding panel system and accessories as required for a complete drained and back-ventilated rainscreen system.
 - 1. Wall panels.
 - 2. Fascia.
 - 3. Horizontal soffits.
 - 4. Storefront panels.
- B. Interior solid phenolic cladding panel system and accessories.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 05500 - Metal Fabrications; additional sub framing, Z girts to accommodate exterior insulation is not in the scope of Section 07420.
- B. Section 07200 - Insulation; exterior insulation, if required for NFPA 285 compliance, is not included in the scope of Section 07420.
- C. Section 08400 - Entrances and Storefronts.
- D. Section 08910 - Glazed Curtain Walls.
- E. Section 09250 - Gypsum Board.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International (ASTM):
 - 1. ASTM B 117 - Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus.
 - 2. ASTM D 635 - Standard Test Method for Small Scale Burning.
 - 3. ASTM D 1929 - Standard Test Method for Ignition Temperature.
 - 4. ASTM D 2244 - Standard Practice for Calculation of Color Tolerances and Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates.
 - 5. ASTM D 2247 - Standard Practice for Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity.
 - 6. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
 - 7. ASTM E 119 - Standard Test Method for Fire Rated or Fire Resistive Construction.
 - 8. ASTM E 330 - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under the Influence of Wind Loads.
- B. European Standards (EN):
 - 1. EN 438-2 - Decorative High Pressure Laminate (HPL) Sheets Based on Thermosetting Resins - Determination of Properties.

2. EN 12524 - Building Materials and Products, Hygrothermal Properties, Tabulated Design Values.
- C. International Organization for Standardization (ISO):
 1. ISO 105 A02-93 - Tests for Color Fastness -- Part A02: Grey scale for assessing change in color.
 2. ISO 178 - Determination of Flexural Properties.
 3. ISO 527-3 - Determination of Tensile Properties.
 4. ISO 846 - Evaluation of the Action of Organisms.
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
 1. NFPA 268 - Standard Test Method for Determining Ignitibility of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source.
 2. NFPA 285 - Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit plan, section, elevation and perspective drawings necessary to describe and convey the layout, profiles and product components, including edge conditions, panel joints, fixture location, anchorage, accessories, finish colors, patterns and textures.
- D. Code Compliance: Documents showing product compliance with local building code shall be submitted prior to the bid. These documents shall include, but not be limited to, appropriate Evaluation Reports and/or test reports supporting the use of the product. Alternate materials must be approved by the architect of record prior to the bid date.
- E. Engineering Calculations: Submit engineering calculations as required by the local building code, showing that the installed panels and attachments system meets the wind load requirements for the project.
- F. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns. Please note that samples are only representative for color and pattern and not for thickness or edge finish. Metallic colors may also show a slight fluctuation in appearance do to the metal flake orientation from batch to batch.
- G. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples a minimum of 3.5 inches by 3.5 inches (89 mm by 89 mm) representing actual product, color, and patterns. Sample edges may vary from field panel edges.
- H. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit operation, maintenance, and cleaning information for products covered under this section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary panel products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum of ten years experience.
 - 1. Products covered under the Work listed in this section are to be manufactured in an ISO 9001 certified facility.
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer trained and approved by the manufacture or representative.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Upon Owner's request, provide manufacturer's field service consisting of product use recommendations and periodic site visits for inspection of product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of the product and application workmanship.
 - 1. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Architect.
- E. Pre-installation Meetings: Conduct pre-installation conference to verify project requirements, substrate conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's warranty requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery:
 - 1. During transportation, use stable, flat pallets that are at least the same dimension as the sheets.
 - 2. Materials shall be packaged to minimize or eliminate the possibility of damage during shipping. Items such as wooden side boards, wooden lid, and spacers or protective sheeting between panels shall be used to protect the panels from surface and/or edge damage.
- B. Storage:
 - 1. Store products in an enclosed area protected from direct sunlight, moisture and heat. Maintain a consistent temperature and humidity.
 - 2. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
 - 3. Stack panels using protective dividers to avoid damage to decorative surface.
 - 4. For horizontal storage, store sheets on pallets of equal or greater size as the sheets with a protective layer between the pallet and sheet and on top of the uppermost sheet.
 - 5. Do not store sheets, or fabricated panels vertically.
- C. Handling:
 - 1. Remove protective film within 24 hours of the panels being removed from the pallet.
 - 2. When moving sheets, lift evenly to avoid dragging panels across each other and scratching the decorative surface.
 - 3. Remove all labels and stickers immediately after installation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements performed by the installer prior to release for fabrication. Recorded measurements to be indicated on shop drawings based on field measurements provided by the installer. Coordinate field measurements and fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: At project closeout, provide manufacturer's limited ten year warranty covering defects in materials. Warranty only available when material installed by an installation contractor trained and approved by the manufacturer's representative.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Trespa International B.V.; P.O. Box 110, 6000 AC Weert Wetering 20, 6002 SM Weert The Netherlands; www.trespa.com.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturer's Representative: Trespa North America, Ltd.; 12267 Crosthwaite Cir., Poway, CA 92064. ASD. Toll Free Tel: (800) 4-TRESPA. Tel: (858) 679-2090. Fax: (858) 679-9568. Email: info.northamerica@trespa.com. Web: <http://www.trespa.com/na>.
- C. Substitutions: Not permitted.
- D. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01600.

2.2 WALL PANELS

- A. Solid Phenolic Wall Panels: Trespa Meteon by Trespa International as represented by Trespa North America, LTD.
 - 1. Material: Solid panel manufactured using a combination of high pressure and temperature to create a flat panel created from thermosetting resins, homogenously reinforced with wood-based fibers and an integrated decorative surface or printed décor.
 - 2. Color on Primary Face: _____ color with black reverse.
 - 3. Color on Primary Face: _____ color with white reverse.
 - 4. Color on Primary and Reverse Faces: _____ color on primary face and _____ color on reverse face.
 - 5. Color: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's standard color palette.
 - 6. Finish: Satin sheen.
 - 7. Finish: Gloss.
 - 8. Finish: Rock.
 - 9. Panel Core: Fire retardant (FR) black core.
 - 10. Panel Thickness: 5/16 inch (8 mm).
 - 11. Panel Thickness: 3/8 inch (10 mm).

12. Panel Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
13. Panel Thickness: As indicated on the Drawings.
14. Physical Properties:
 - a. Modulus of Elasticity: 1,300,000 psi (9000 N/mm²) minimum, ISO 178.
 - b. Tensile Strength: 10,100 psi (70 N/mm²) minimum, ISO 527-2.
 - c. Flexural Strength: 14,500psi (120 N/mm²) minimum, ISO 178.
 - d. Thermal Conductivity: 2.1 BTU/inch/ft².hr.°F, EN 12524.
 - e. Structural Performance (ASTM E330):
 - 1) Panels shall be designed to withstand the Design Wind Load based upon the local building code, but in no case less than 15 pounds per square foot (psf). Wind load testing shall be done in accordance with this standard to obtain the following results:
 - 2) Normal to the plane of the wall, the maximum panel deflection shall not exceed L/175
 - 3) Normal to the plane of the wall between supports, deflection of the aluminum sub-framing members shall not exceed L/175 or 3/4 inch, whichever is less
 - a) At 1-1/2 times design pressure, permanent deflection of framing members shall not exceed L/100 of span length and components shall not experience failure or gross permanent distortion.
 - b) If system tests are not available, mock ups shall be constructed and tests performed under the direction of an independent third party laboratory which show compliance to the minimum standards listed above.
15. Fire Performance:
 - a. Flame Spread: Class A, ASTM E 84.
 - b. Smoke Development: Less than 450, ASTM E 84.
 - c. Ignition Temperature: Greater than 650 degree F (350 degree C) above ambient, ASTM D1929.
 - d. Burning Classification: CC1 or CC2, ASTM D635.
 - e. When required for compliance with local building codes, the wall cladding assembly shall show no degradation of the rating of Fire Resistant Assemblies, ASTM E119.
 - f. When required for compliance with local building codes, the wall cladding assembly including cladding and non-cladding elements such as, but not limited to, specific weather resistive barriers and/or exterior insulation materials, shall meet the performance requirements of NFPA 285. Performance shall be determined by actual testing in accordance with NFPA 285 or through an equivalency analysis provided by a recognized fire protection expert.
 - g. When required for compliance with local building codes, the wall cladding assembly shall not ignite when exposed to a radiant heat energy source, NFPA 268.
16. Finish Performance: Electron Beam Cure resin in conformance with the following general requirements:
 - a. Color: As selected by the architect/engineer from manufacturer's standard colors or a custom color to be matched by the panel supplier.
 - b. Humidity Resistance: No formation of blisters when subjected to condensing water fog at 100% relative humidity and 100 degree F (38

- degree C) for 3000 hours, ASTM D 2247.
 - c. Salt Spray Resistance: Corrosion creepage from scribe line (1/16 inch (1.6 mm) max.) and minimum blister rating of 8 within the test specimen field, ASTM B117.
 - d. Weather Exposure: Accelerated - 3000 hours in Atlas Type Weatherometer using cycle of 90 minutes light and 30 minutes diminished light and demineralized water with a maximum color change of 5 Delta E units from the original color according to ASTM D-2244, with the exception of Uni-Colors A12.3.7 / A18.3.5 / A04.1.7, which will not deviate more than 10 Delta E units from original color according ASTM D-2244.
 - e. Color Stability: The decorative surface comply with, classification, 4 - 5 measured with the grey scale according to ISO 105 A02-93 according to test method EN 438-2:29.
 - f. Microbial Characteristics: Will not support micro-organic growth (ISO 846).
- B. Mounting System:
- 1. TS110 - Exposed fastening on fixed depth aluminum sub-framing.
 - 2. TS120 - Exposed fastening on variable depth aluminum sub-framing.
 - 3. TS210 - Concealed fastening over fixed depth aluminum sub-framing.
 - 4. TS220 - Concealed fastening over variable depth aluminum sub-framing.
 - 5. TS110-285 - Exposed fastening on fixed depth aluminum sub-framing tested and meeting the performance requirements of NFPA 285.
 - 6. TS120-285 - Exposed fastening on variable depth aluminum sub-framing tested and meeting the performance requirements of NFPA 285.
 - 7. TS210-285 - Concealed fastening over fixed depth aluminum sub-framing tested and meeting the performance requirements of NFPA 285.
 - 8. TS220-285 - Concealed fastening over variable depth aluminum sub-framing tested and meeting the performance requirements of NFPA 285.
 - 9. Other installation systems - Include test documentation showing compliance with the performance criteria set forth in the specification and in accordance with the local building code.
- C. Aluminum Sub Structure: Aluminum sub-structure designed to withstand structural loading due to wind load and the dead load of the panel, painted as required to conceal behind the open joinery of the attachment system.
- 1. Extrusions, including corner closures, joint closures and vent screens, formed members, sheet, and plate shall conform with the recommendations of the manufacturer.
- D. Extruded Aluminum Trim: Color as specified in the finish schedule.
- E. Fasteners (Concealed/Exposed): Fasteners shall be non-corrosive and as recommended by panel manufacturer. Exposed fasteners shall be colored to match panels where required by the architect.
- F. Panel Corner Profile:
- 1. Dimensions: 143.70 inches by 11.81 inches by 11.81 inches (3650 by 300 by 300 mm) with a 5/16 inch (8 mm) thick by 3/4 inch (19 mm) radius.
 - 2. Dimensions: 143.70 inches by 11.81 inches by 11.81 inches (3650 by 300 by 300 mm) with a 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick by 3/4 inch (19 mm) radius.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Panels: Solid phenolic impregnated kraft paper wall panels with no voids, air spaces or foamed insulation in the core material. Accessory items in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and approved submittals
- B. Panel Weight: 8 mm (2.4 lb/ft²), 10 mm (3 lb/ ft²), 13 mm (3.8 lb/ ft²).
- C. Panel Bow: = 2 mm / m (= 0.079 inch/39.38 inches).
- D. Panel Dimensions: Field fabrication shall be allowed where necessary, but shall be kept to an absolute minimum. All fabrication shall be done under controlled shop conditions when possible.
- E. Appearance: Panel lines, breaks, and angles shall be sharp, true, and surfaces free from warp and buckle

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. Surfaces to receive panels shall be even, smooth, dry, and free from defects detrimental to the installation of the panel system. Notify Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of the work.
- C. Confirm exterior sheathing is plumb and level, with no deflection greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in 20 feet (6096 mm).
- D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install solid phenolic wall panels and sub-frame system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install solid phenolic wall panels plumb and level and accurately spaced in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and approved submittals and drawings.
- C. Anchor panels and sub-framing securely per engineering recommendations and in accordance with approved shop drawings to allow for necessary movement and structural support.
- D. Fasten solid phenolic wall panels with fasteners approved for use with supporting

substrate.

- E. Do not install panels or component parts which are observed to be defective or damaged including, but not limited to: warped, bowed, abraded, scratched, and broken members.
- F. Do not cut or trim component parts during installation in a manner that would damage the finish, decrease the strength, or result in visual imperfection or a failure in performance. Return component parts with require alteration to the shop for re-fabrication or replacement.
- G. Install corner profiles and trim with fasteners appropriate for use with adjoining construction as indicated on the Contract Drawings and as recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove masking or panel protection as soon as possible after installation. Any masking intentionally left in place after panel installation on an elevation, shall become the responsibility of the General Contractor to remove.
- B. Adjust final panel installation so that all joints are true and even throughout the installation. Panels out of plane shall be adjusted with the surrounding panels to minimize any imperfection.
- C. Repair panels with minor damage. Remove and replace panels damaged beyond repair as a direct result of the panel installation. After installation, panel repair and replacement shall become the responsibility of the General Contractor.
- D. Clean finished surfaces as recommended by panel manufacturer. After installation cleaning, cleaning during construction shall become the responsibility of the General Contractor.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 075423 - THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Adhered thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
2. Mechanically fastened thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
3. Loosely laid and ballasted thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
4. Roof insulation.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" apply to work of this Section.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
1. Sheet roofing, of color required.
 2. Roof paver, full sized, in each color and texture required.
 3. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period: 15years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - 2. Cooley Engineered Membranes.
 - 3. Custom Seal Roofing.
 - 4. Firestone Building Products.
 - 5. Flex Roofing Systems.
 - 6. GAF Materials Corporation.
 - 7. GenFlex Roofing Systems.
 - 8. Johns Manville.
 - 9. Mule-Hide Products Co., Inc.
 - 10. Versico Incorporated.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain components including same manufacturer as membrane roofing or manufacturer approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accelerated Weathering: Roofing system shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
- B. Impact Resistance: Roofing system shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746 or ASTM D 4272.
- C. Roofing System Design: Tested by a qualified testing agency to resist the following uplift pressures:
 - 1. Corner Uplift Pressure: <Insert **lbf/sq. ft. (kPa/sq. m)**>.
 - 2. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: <Insert **lbf/sq. ft. (kPa/sq. m)**>.

3. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: <Insert **lbf/sq. ft. (kPa/sq. m)**>.
- D. Energy Star Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
- E. Energy Performance: Roofing system shall have an initial solar reflectance of not less than 0.70 and an emissivity of not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.
- F. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, [Class A] [Class B] [Class C]; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- G. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.3 TPO ROOFING

- A. Fabric-Reinforced TPO Sheet: ASTM D 6878, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, uniform, flexible fabric-backed TPO sheet.
 1. Thickness: **60 mils (1.5 mm)**, nominal.
 2. Exposed Face Color: Tan or White. Final selection to be made by Architect as per samples provided.

2.4 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.
 1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, **55 mils (1.4 mm)** thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based.
- D. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- E. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roofing to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- F. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide metal termination bars, metal battens, pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

2.5 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

- A. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, **5/8 inch (16 mm)** thick.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **CertainTeed Corporation**; [GlasRoc Sheathing] [GlasRoc Sheathing Type X].
 - b. **Georgia-Pacific Corporation**; [Dens Deck] [Dens Deck DuraGuard] [Dens Deck Prime].
 - c. **National Gypsum Company**; Gold Bond eXP Extended Exposure Sheathing.
 - d. **Temple-Inland, Inc**; GreenGlass Exterior Sheathing.
 - e. **USG Corporation**; Securock Glass Mat Roof Board.
 - f. <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

2.6 ROOF INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, **1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m)** minimum density, square edged.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 2. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **DiversiFoam Products.**
 - b. **Dow Chemical Company (The).**
 - c. **Owens Corning.**
 - d. **Pactiv Corporation.**
- B. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type VIII, **1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m)** minimum density.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.**
 - b. **DiversiFoam Products.**
 - c. **Dyplast Products.**
- C. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 3, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Atlas Roofing Corporation.**
 - b. **Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.**

- c. Dyplast Products.
- d. Firestone Building Products.
- e. GAF Materials Corporation.
- f. Hunter Panels.
- g. Insulfoam LLC; a Carlisle company.
- h. Johns Manville.
- i. Rmax, Inc.

D. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of **1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48)** unless otherwise indicated.

E. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

2.7 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

B. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

C. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.

D. Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, oriented strand board, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. **CertainTeed Corporation;** [GlasRoc Sheathing] [GlasRoc Sheathing Type X].
- b. **Georgia-Pacific Corporation;** [Dens Deck] [Dens Deck DuraGuard] [Dens Deck Prime].
- c. **National Gypsum Company;** Gold Bond eXP Extended Exposure Sheathing.
- d. **Temple-Inland, Inc;** GreenGlass Exterior Sheathing.
- e. **USG Corporation;** Securock Glass Mat Roof Board.

2.8 WALKWAYS

A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately **3/16 inch (5 mm)** thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. **Hanover Architectural Products.**
- b. **Rapid Building Systems.**
- c. **Roofblok Limited.**

- d. Sunny Brook Pressed Concrete Co.
- e. Wausau Tile Inc.
- f. Westile Roofing Products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

3.2 SUBSTRATE BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
 - 1. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

3.3 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- C. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
 - 1. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
- D. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
 - 1. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m), and allow primer to dry.
 - 2. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
 - 3. Set each layer of insulation in insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

4. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.
 5. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- E. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck.
1. Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

3.4 ADHERED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll roofing and allow to relax before retaining.
- B. Accurately align roofing, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roofing at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roofing. Do not apply to splice area of roofing.
- D. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- E. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet.
 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that do not comply with requirements.
- F. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roofing in place with clamping ring.

3.5 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.

- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.6 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 075423

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
2. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
3. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
4. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
3. Include identification of finish for each item.
4. Include pattern of seams and details of termination points, expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, direction of expansion, roof-penetration flashing, and connections to adjoining work.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product certificates.

B. Product test reports.

C. Sample warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are SPRI ES-1 tested, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 1. Build mockup of typical roof edge, eave, including fascia, fascia trim, approximately 10 feet (3.0 m) long.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Sheet Metal Standard for Copper: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings roof edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 or H01 temper.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Hussey Copper Ltd.**
 - b. **Revere Copper Products, Inc.**
 2. Nonpatinated Exposed Finish: Mill.
 3. Prepatinated Copper-Sheet Finish: Dark brown Verdigris <Insert color>, prepatinated according to ASTM B 882.
- C. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required.
1. As-Milled Finish: Mill.
 2. Alclad Finish: Metallurgically bonded surfacing alloy on both sides, forming aluminum sheet with reflective luster.
 3. Factory Prime Coating: Where painting after installation is required, pretreat metal with white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat; minimum dry film thickness of **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)**.
 4. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
 5. Color Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of samples provided.
 6. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 7. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum **30 mils (0.76 mm)** thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Carlisle Residential, a division of Carlisle Construction Materials; WIP 300HT.
 - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.-Conn.; Grace Ice and Water Shield HT Ultra.
 - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
 - d. Kirsch Building Products, LLC; Sharkskin Ultra SA.
 - e. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
 - f. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Specialty Tile & Metal Underlayment.
 - g. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Deck Guard HT.
 - h. Protecto Wrap Company; Protecto Jiffy Seal Ice & Water Guard HT.
 - i. SDP Advanced Polymer Products Inc; Palisade SA-HT.
2. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C) or higher.
 3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C) or lower.
- C. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m) minimum.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
 2. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.
 3. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
 4. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
 5. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- C. Solder:
1. For Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.

2. For Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead or Grade Sn60, 60 percent tin and 40 percent lead
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide and **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- G. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.
- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 MANUFACTURED REGLETS

- A. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation> or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Cheney Flashing Company.**
 - b. **Fry Reglet Corporation.**
 - c. **Heckmann Building Products, Inc.**
 - d. **Hickman, W. P. Company.**
 - e. **Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.**
 - f. **Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.**
 - g. **National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.**
 - h. **Sandell Manufacturing.**

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.

1. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 2. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 3. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- C. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- D. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- F. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- G. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- H. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.

2.7 ROOF-DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Hanging Gutters: Fabricate to cross section required, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long sections. Furnish flat-stock gutter brackets and gutter spacers and straps fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by cited sheet metal standard but with thickness not less than twice the gutter thickness. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
1. Accessories: Continuous, removable leaf screen with sheet metal frame and hardware cloth screen, Wire-ball downspout strainer and Valley baffles.
- B. Built-in Gutters: Fabricate to cross section required, with riveted and soldered joints, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long sections. Fabricate expansion joints and accessories from same metal as gutters unless otherwise indicated.

1. Accessories: Continuous, removable leaf screen with sheet metal frame and hardware cloth screen, Bronze wire-ball downspout strainer.
2. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
 - a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)
 - b. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
- C. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts to dimensions indicated, complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers from same material as downspouts and anchors
 1. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
 - b. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
 - c. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

2.8 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12-foot- (3.6-m-) long sections. Furnish with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
 1. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
 - b. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
 - c. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
- B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12-foot- (3.6-m-) long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and interior leg. Miter corners, fasten and seal, solder or weld watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
 1. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
 - b. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
 - c. Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
 - d. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
- C. Base Flashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
 3. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
- D. Counterflashing and Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
 3. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
- E. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.

3. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.

F. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Copper: 12 oz./sq. ft. (0.41 mm thick)
2. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.

2.9 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12-foot- (3.6-m-) long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches (150 mm) beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) <Insert weight (thickness)>.
2. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches (100 mm) beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) <Insert weight (thickness)>.
2. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
3. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
4. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
5. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

C. Wall Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) <Insert weight (thickness)>.
2. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
3. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
4. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
5. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, according to manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.

- C. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
 - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
 - 3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 - 4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
 - 5. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection.
 - 1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
 - 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for nails and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) for wood screws

- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets with solder to width of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**; however, reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
 - 1. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
 - 2. Do not use torches for soldering.
 - 3. Heat surfaces to receive solder, and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Stainless-Steel Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for stainless steel and acid flux. Promptly remove acid flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.
 - 5. Copper Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for copper.
- H. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

3.3 ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Hanging Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered joints or joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchor them in position. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Slope to downspouts.
 - 1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, **50 feet (15.24 m)** apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
 - 2. Install continuous gutter screens on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, removable hinged to swing open for cleaning gutters.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately **60 inches (1500 mm)** o.c.
- D. Parapet Scuppers: Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
- E. Expansion-Joint Covers: Install expansion-joint covers at locations and of configuration indicated. Lap joints minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** in direction of water flow.

3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate.
- C. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches (100 mm).
- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.5 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete.", Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- D. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches (100 mm) beyond wall openings.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.

- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment supports.
 - 2. Roof hatches.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.
 - 1. Mill-Phosphatized Finish: Manufacturer's standard for field painting.

2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish; AAMA 621; system consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
 4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat.
- B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, AZ50 (AZM150) coated.
1. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish; AAMA 621; system consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight
 3. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat.
- C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
1. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
 2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
 3. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
 4. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
 5. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish; AAMA 620; system consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
 6. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
- D. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used, otherwise mill finished.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- F. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.

- B. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners.
- C. Sealants: As recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated.

2.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Equipment Supports: Internally reinforced metal equipment supports capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AES Industries, Inc.
 - b. Curbs Plus, Inc.
 - c. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
 - d. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - e. LM Curbs.
 - f. Milcor Inc.; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 - g. Pate Company (The).
 - h. Roof Products, Inc.
 - i. Thybar Corporation.
 - j. Vent Products Co., Inc.
 - k. <Insert manufacturer's name>.
 - B. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, [0.079 inch (2.01 mm)] thick.
 - 1. Finish: Factory prime coating
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - C. Construction:
 - 1. Insulation: Factory insulated with [1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) thick [cellulosic] board insulation.
 - 2. Liner: Same material as equipment support, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
 - 3. Factory-installed continuous wood nailers 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) wide at tops of equipment supports.
 - 4. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as equipment support.
 - 5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
 - 6. Fabricate equipment supports to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated.

7. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate each support with height to accommodate roof slope so that tops of supports are level with each other. Equip supports with water diverters or crickets on sides that obstruct water flow.
8. Security Grille: Provide where indicated.

2.4 ROOF HATCH

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated double-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation,] and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AES Industries, Inc.
 - b. Babcock-Davis.
 - c. Bilco Company (The).
 - d. Bristolite Skylights.
 - e. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
 - f. Dur-Red Products.
 - g. Hi Pro International, Inc.
 - h. J. L. Industries, Inc.
 - i. Metallic Products Corp.
 - j. Milcor Inc.; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
 - k. Naturalite Skylight Systems; Vistawall Group (The).
 - l. Nystrom.
 - m. O'Keeffe's Inc.
 - n. Pate Company (The).
 - o. Precision Ladders, LLC.
- B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, [30 by 36 inches (750 by 900 mm)].
- C. Type and Size: Double-leaf lid, [72 by 96 inches (1830 by 2440 mm)].
- D. Loads: Minimum [40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.9-kPa)] external live load and [20-lbf/sq. ft. (0.95-kPa)] internal uplift load.
- E. Hatch Material: [Zinc-coated (galvanized)] steel sheet, [0.079 inch (2.01 mm)] thick.
 1. Finish: Factory prime coating
 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
- F. Construction:
 1. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate board.
 2. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.

3. Hatch Lid: Glazed, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
 4. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
 5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
 6. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
 7. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height that is [constant] [tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surfaces of perimeter curb are level]. Equip hatch with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
- G. Hardware: Galvanized-steel spring latch with turn handles, butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
1. Provide two-point latch on lids larger than 84 inches (2130 mm).
 2. Provide remote-control operation.
- H. Safety Railing System: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and accessories required for a complete installation; attached to roof hatch and complying with 29 CFR 1910.23 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Ladder-Assist Post: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard device for attachment to roof-access ladder. Post locks in place on full extension; release mechanism returns post to closed position.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories. Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.
 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene sheet.

- C. Security Grilles: Weld bar intersections and[, using tamper-resistant bolts, attach the] ends of bars to structural frame or primary curb walls.
- D. Seal joints with sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.2 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780.
- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- C. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.

1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.

B. Product test reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by UL or a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction
2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems bearing marking of qualified testing and inspection agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
 2. Grace Construction Products.
 3. Hilti, Inc.
 4. Johns Manville.
 5. Nelson Firestop Products.
 6. NUCO Inc.
 7. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
 8. RectorSeal Corporation.
 9. Specified Technologies Inc.
 10. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 11. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
 12. USG Corporation.

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of **0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa)**.
1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of **0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa)**.
1. F-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
 2. T-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479.
1. L-Rating: Not exceeding **5.0 cfm/sq. ft. (0.025 cu. m/s per sq. m)** of penetration opening at **0.30-inch wg (74.7 Pa)** at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

- F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- C. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.
- D. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within **6 inches (150 mm)** of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
 - 1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 4. Date of installation.
 - 5. Manufacturer's name.
 - 6. Installer's name.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.4 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
- B. Where Intertek ETL SEMKO-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek ETL SEMKO's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under "Firestop Systems."
- C. Where FM Global-approved systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers listed in FM Global's "Building Materials Approval Guide" under "Wall and Floor Penetration Fire Stops."
- D. Firestopping with No Penetrating Items FS-<#>:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- F-A- F-B- F-C- W-J- W-L-
- E. Firestopping for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing FS-<#>:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- C-BK- F-A- F-B- F-C- F-E- W-J- W-K- W-L- W-N-
- F. Firestopping for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing FS-<#>:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- C-BK- F-A- F-B- F-C- F-E- W-J- W-K- W-L- W-N-
- G. Firestopping for Electrical Cables FS-<#>:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- C-BK- F-A- F-B- F-C- F-E- W-J- W-K- W-L-
- H. Firestopping for Cable Trays with Electric Cables FS-<#>:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- F-A- F-B- F-C- W-J- W-K- W-L-
- I. Firestopping for Insulated Pipes FS-<#>:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- C-BK- F-A- F-B- F-C- F-E- W-J- W-L- W-N- <Insert four-digit number> 5001-5999.
- J. Firestopping for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants FS-<#>:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- F-A- W-L- W-J-

K. Firestopping for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants FS-<#>:

1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- F-A- F-B- F-C- F-E- W-J- W-L- W-N-

L. Firestopping for Groupings of Penetrants FS-<#>:

1. UL-Classified Systems: C-AJ- C-BJ- F-A- F-B- F-C- F-E- W-J- W-L- END OF
SECTION 078413

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Silicone joint sealants.
2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
3. Urethane joint sealants.
4. Immersible joint sealants.
5. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
6. Latex joint sealants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples: For each kind and color of joint sealant required.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Preconstruction laboratory test reports.
- C. Preconstruction field-adhesion-test reports.
- D. Field-adhesion-test reports.
- E. Sample warranties.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
 - 1. Adhesion Testing: Use ASTM C 794 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 - 2. Compatibility Testing: Use ASTM C 1087 to determine sealant compatibility when in contact with glazing and gasket materials.
 - 3. Stain Testing: Use ASTM C 1248 to determine stain potential of sealant when in contact with stone, masonry substrates.
- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates. Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Low-Emitting Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **GE Construction Sealants;** SCS2700 SilPruf LM .
 - b. **Sika Corporation U.S.;** Sikasil WS-290 Sikasil WS-290 FPS.

2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **May National Associates, Inc., a subsidiary of Sika Corporation U.S.;** Bondaflex Sil 290 FPS-NB Bondaflex Sil 290 NB.
 - b. **Pecora Corporation;** 890FTS/TXTR 890 NST.
 - c. **Tremco Incorporated;** Spectrem 1.

2.4 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC, Building Systems;** Sonalastic TX1.
 - b. **Bostik, Inc.;** Chem-Calk GPS1 900 915 916 2000.
 - c. **ER Systems, an ITW Company;** Pacific Polymers Elasto-Thane 230 MP.
 - d. **Pecora Corporation;** Dynatrol I-XL.
 - e. **Polymeric Systems, Inc.;** Flexiprene 1000.
 - f. **Schnee-Morehead, Inc., an ITW company;** Permathane SM7108.
 - g. **Sherwin-Williams Company (The);** Stampede-1 Stampede-TX.
 - h. **Sika Corporation U.S.;** Sikaflex Textured Sealant.
 - i. **Tremco Incorporated;** Dymonic.

2.5 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Dow Corning Corporation**; 786-M White.
 - b. **GE Construction Sealants**; SCS1700 Sanitary.
 - c. **May National Associates, Inc., a subsidiary of Sika Corporation U.S.**; Bondaflex Sil 100 WF.
 - d. **Soudal USA**; RTV GP.
 - e. **Tremco Incorporated**; Tremsil 200.

2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC, Building Systems**; Sonolac.
 - b. **May National Associates, Inc., a subsidiary of Sika Corporation U.S.**; Bondaflex 600 Bondaflex Sil-A 700.
 - c. **Pecora Corporation**; AC-20.
 - d. **Sherwin-Williams Company (The)**; 850A 950A PowerHouse.
 - e. **Tremco Incorporated**; Tremflex 834.
 - f. <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.

2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), Type O (open-cell material), Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC, Building Systems**.
 - b. **Construction Foam Products, a division of Nomaco, Inc.**

- B. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 2. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1193 and joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- C. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.

2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
1. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet (300 m) 100 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.4 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces <JS-#>.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints in brick pavers.
 - b. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - c. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete paving units.
 - d. Joints in stone paving units, including steps.
 - e. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - f. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - g. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 50, T, NT
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces subject to water immersion <JS-#>.

1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints in pedestrian plazas.
 - b. Joints in swimming pool decks.
 - c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, immersible, S, P, 25, T, NT, I
 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces <JS-#>.
1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
 - b. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units.
 - c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - d. Joints in dimension stone cladding.
 - e. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 079500 - EXPANSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior wall expansion control systems.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For each expansion control system specified. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, splices, blockout requirement, attachments to other work, and line diagrams and a tabular schedule of expansion control systems.
- B. Samples: For each exposed expansion control system and for each color and texture specified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General: Provide expansion control systems of design, basic profile, materials, and operation indicated. Provide units with capability to accommodate variations in adjacent surfaces.
 - 1. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize field splicing. Install with hairline mitered corners where expansion control systems change direction or abut other materials.
 - 2. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces, T-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous expansion control systems.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate installation of exterior wall and soffit expansion control systems with roof expansion control systems to ensure that wall transitions are watertight. Roof expansion joint assemblies are specified elsewhere.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide expansion control systems with fire barriers identical to those of systems tested for fire resistance per UL 2079 or ASTM E 1966 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Hose Stream Test: Wall-to-wall and wall-to-ceiling systems shall be subjected to hose stream testing.

2. The term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."
3. Component Importance Factor is 1.5.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Moisture Barriers: Manufacturer's standard moisture barrier consisting of a continuous, waterproof membrane within joint and attached to substrate on sides of joint below the primary cover. Equip moisture barrier with drain tubes and seals to direct collected moisture to exterior-wall expansion control system.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: **ASTM B 221** (**ASTM B 221M**), Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; **ASTM B 209** (**ASTM B 209M**), Alloy 6061-T6 for sheet and plate.
 1. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials.
- B. Elastomeric Seals: ASTM E 1783; preformed elastomeric membranes or extrusions to be installed in metal frames.
- C. Compression Seals: ASTM E 1612; preformed elastomeric extrusions having an internal baffle system and designed to function under compression.
- D. Cellular Foam Seals: Extruded, compressible foam designed to function under compression.
- E. Elastomeric Concrete: Modified epoxy or polyurethane extended into a prepackaged aggregate blend, specifically designed for bonding to concrete substrates.
- F. Fire Barriers: Any material or material combination to meet performance criteria for required fire-resistance rating.
- G. Moisture Barrier: Flexible elastomeric material.
- H. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M.
- I. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard anchors, clips, fasteners, and other accessories as indicated or required for complete installations.

2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Mill finish.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- C. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to expansion control system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, and instructions for installing expansion control systems.
- C. Cast-In Frames: Coordinate and furnish frames to be cast into concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing expansion control systems and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install expansion control systems.
 1. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
 2. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation. Notify Architect where discrepancies occur that will affect proper expansion control system installation and performance.
 3. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
 4. Repair or grout blockout as required for continuous frame support using nonmetallic, shrinkage-resistant grout.
 5. Install frames in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
 - a. Shimming is not permitted.
 6. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) from each end and not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
- C. Seals in Metal Frames: Install elastomeric seals and membranes in frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install with minimum number of end joints.
 1. Provide in continuous lengths for straight sections.
 2. Seal transitions according to manufacturer's written instructions. Vulcanize or heat-weld field-spliced joints as recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Installation: Mechanically lock seals into frames or adhere to frames with adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Foam Seals: Install with adhesive recommended by manufacturer.

- E. Terminate exposed ends of expansion control systems with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.
- F. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Coordinate installation of expansion control system materials and associated work so complete assemblies comply with assembly performance requirements.
 - 1. Fire Barriers: Install fire barriers to provide continuous, uninterrupted fire resistance throughout length of joint, including transitions and field splices.
- G. Moisture Barrier: Provide at all exterior joints and where indicated on Drawings. Provide drainage fittings at a maximum of 50 feet (15.2 m) or where indicated on Drawings.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete.
- B. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections.

END OF SECTION 079500

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hollow-metal work.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include elevations, door edge details, frame profiles, metal thicknesses, preparations for hardware, and other details.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.
- E. Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. **Amweld International, LLC.**
 - 2. **Apex Industries, Inc.**
 - 3. **Ceco Door Products;** an Assa Abloy Group company.
 - 4. **Commercial Door & Hardware Inc.**
 - 5. **Concept Frames, Inc.**
 - 6. **Curries Company;** an Assa Abloy Group company.

7. Custom Metal Products.
8. Daybar.
9. Deansteel.
10. de La Fontaine Industries.
11. DKS Steel Door & Frame Sys. Inc.
12. Door Components, Inc.
13. Fleming-Baron Door Products.
14. Gensteel Doors Inc.
15. Greensteel Industries, Ltd.
16. HMF Express.
17. Hollow Metal Inc.
18. Hollow Metal Xpress.
19. J/R Metal Frames Manufacturing, Inc.
20. Karpen Steel Custom Doors & Frames.
21. L.I.F. Industries, Inc.
22. LaForce, Inc.
23. Megamet Industries, Inc.
24. Mesker Door Inc.
25. Michbi Doors Inc.
26. MPI Group, LLC (The).
27. National Custom Hollow Metal.
28. North American Door Corp.
29. Philipp Manufacturing Co (The).
30. Pioneer Industries, Inc.
31. Premier Products, Inc.
32. Republic Doors and Frames.
33. Rocky Mountain Metals, Inc.
34. Security Metal Products Corp.
35. Shanahans Manufacturing Ltd.
36. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
37. Steward Steel; Door Division.
38. Stiles Custom Metal, Inc.
39. Titan Metal Products, Inc.
40. Trillium Steel Doors Limited.
41. West Central Mfg. Inc.

2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Provide an assembly with gaskets listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
- B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9.

2.3 INTERIOR DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule
1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
 2. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch (1.0 mm).
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Core: Polyisocyanurate
 3. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Metallic-coated, steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm).
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
 4. Exposed Finish: Factory.

2.4 EXTERIOR HOLLOW-METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule
1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
 2. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm).
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch (1.0 mm), with minimum A40 (ZF120) coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Core: Polystyrene Polyisocyanurate The value used in the option in "Thermal-Rated Doors" Subparagraph below is for polyurethane-core doors and is an example only; verify ratings with manufacturers.
 3. Thermal-Rated Doors: Provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 2.1 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (0.370 K x sq. m/W) when tested according to ASTM C 1363.
 4. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch (1.3 mm), with minimum A40 (ZF120) coating.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
 5. Exposed Finish: Factory.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:

1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than **0.042 inch (1.0 mm)** thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than **2 inches (51 mm)** wide by **10 inches (254 mm)** long; or wire anchors not less than **0.177 inch (4.5 mm)** thick.
2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than **0.042 inch (1.0 mm)** thick.
3. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum **3/8-inch-(9.5-mm-)** diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.

B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, minimum thickness of **0.042 inch (1.0 mm)**, and as follows:

1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
2. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than **2-inch (51-mm)** height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), **04Z (12G)** coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- F. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: From corrosion-resistant materials.
- G. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of **4 inches (102 mm)**, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing).
- I. Glazing: Section 088000 "Glazing."

- J. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Hollow-Metal Doors:
1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
 2. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated.
- C. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
1. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
 4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor; however, for slip-on drywall frames, provide anchor clips or countersunk holes at bottoms of jambs.
 5. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
 - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 16 inches (406 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c., to match coursing, and as follows:
 - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) high.
 - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) high.
 - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches (2286 to 3048 mm) high.
 - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof above 120 inches (3048 mm) high.
 - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) high.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) high.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) high.

- 4) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof above 96 inches (2438 mm) high.
 - c. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each frame.
 - d. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches (660 mm) o.c.
6. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- D. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 2. Comply with applicable requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparation of hollow-metal work for hardware.
- E. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites and louvers where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow-metal work.
 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
 4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal work.
 5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.

2.8 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
 1. Shop Primer: SDI A250.10.
- B. Factory Finish: SDI A250.3.
 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Louvers: Provide sightproof lightproof louvers for interior doors, where indicated, which comply with SDI 111C, with blades or baffles formed of ~~0.020-inch~~ (0.5-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into ~~0.032-inch~~ (0.8-mm-) thick steel frame.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Automatic Louvers: Movable blades closed by actuating fusible link, and listed and labeled for use in fire-rated door assemblies of type and fire-resistance rating indicated.
- B. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- C. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than ~~0.016 inch~~ (0.4 mm) thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow-metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840 as required by standards specified.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. At fire-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - c. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
 - d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
 - e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - f. Check plumb, square, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
 - g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that will be filled with grout containing antifreezing agents.
 - 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 - 3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
 - 4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
 - 5. Concrete Walls: Solidly fill space between frames and concrete with mineral-fiber insulation.

6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 7. In-Place Metal or Wood-Stud Partitions: Secure slip-on drywall frames in place according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 8. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, measured at jambs at floor.
- B. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors:
 - a. Between Door and Frame Jambs and Head: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** plus or minus **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
 - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** to **1/4 inch (6.3 mm)** plus or minus **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
 - c. At Bottom of Door: **3/4 inch (19.1 mm)** **5/8 inch (15.8 mm)** plus or minus **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
 - d. Between Door Face and Stop: **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** to **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** plus or minus **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors and gaskets according to NFPA 105.
- C. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than **9 inches (230 mm)** o.c. and not more than **2 inches (51 mm)** o.c. from each corner.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow-metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow-metal work immediately after installation.

- C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- D. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
2. Hollow-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
- 3.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 083473.16 "Wood Sound Control Door Assemblies" for acoustic flush wood doors.
2. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.
3. Section 134900 "Radiation Protection" for lead-lined flush wood doors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include factory-finishing specifications.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

1. Dimensions and locations of blocking.
2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
3. Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
4. Undercuts.
5. Requirements for veneer matching.
6. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
7. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification WI Certified Compliance Program certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
 2. Ampco.
 3. Chappell Door Co.
 4. Eggers Industries.
 5. General Veneer Manufacturing Co.
 6. Graham Wood Doors; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 7. Haley Brothers, Inc.
 8. Ipik Door Company.
 9. Lambton Doors.
 10. Marlite.
 11. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
 12. Mohawk Doors; a Masonite company.
 13. Oshkosh Door Company.
 14. Poncraft Door Company.
 15. Vancouver Door Company.
 16. VT Industries, Inc.

2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. **Quality Standard:** In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
1. Provide AWI Quality Certification WI Certified Compliance Labels indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
- B. **Low-Emitting Materials:** Fabricate doors with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.
- C. **Low-Emitting Materials:** Fabricate doors with adhesives and composite wood products that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. **Fire-Rated Wood Doors:** Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
1. **Cores:** Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
 2. **Edge Construction:** Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

3. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - E. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control, based on testing according to UL 1784.
 - F. Hollow-Core Doors:
 1. Construction: Institutional Standard hollow core.
- 2.3 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH
- A. Interior Solid-Core Doors
 1. Grade: Premium, with Grade AA faces
 2. Core: Either glued or nonglued wood stave or structural composite lumber.
 3. Construction: Five or seven plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
 4. Construction: Seven plies, either bonded or nonbonded construction.
 - B. Interior Hollow-Core Doors <Insert drawing designation>:
 1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces Options in "Species" Subparagraph below are examples only; revise or insert another species.
- 2.4 DOORS FOR OPAQUE FINISH
- A. Interior Solid-Core Doors
 1. Grade: Custom.
 2. Faces: MDO Any closed-grain hardwood of mill option Hardboard or MDF.
 3. Core: Either glued or nonglued wood stave or structural composite lumber.
 4. Construction: Five or seven plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
 - B. Interior Hollow-Core Doors
 1. Grade: Custom.
 2. Faces: Any closed-grain hardwood of mill option
- 2.5 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS
- A. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.

- B. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; factory primed for paint with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated.
- C. Metal Louvers:
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Air Louvers, Inc.
 - b. Anemostat; a Mestek company.
 - c. L & L Louvers, Inc.
 - d. Louvers & Dampers, Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - e. McGill Architectural Products.
 - 2. Metal and Finish: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, factory primed for paint with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish.
 - 3. Metal and Finish: Extruded aluminum with Class II, clear anodic finish, AA-M12C22A31.
 - 4. Metal and Finish: Extruded aluminum with light bronze medium bronze dark bronze black, Class II, color anodic finish, AA-M12C22A32/A34.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
 - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
 - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
 - 3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Doors for Opaque Finish: Shop prime faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises with one coat of wood primer specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

2.8 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 - 1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors that are indicated to receive transparent finish.
- C. Use only paints and coatings that comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Transparent Finish:
 - 1. Grade: Premium .
 - 2. Finish: WDMA TR-4 conversion varnish or WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane <Insert finish designation>.
 - 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - 4. Sheen: Satin Semigloss as selected by Architect.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Section 087111 "Door Hardware (Descriptive Specification)."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
 - 1. Install fire-rated doors according to NFPA 80.
 - 2. Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
 - 1. Clearances: Provide **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
- D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each door face material.
- D. Schedule: Types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Units complying with NFPA 80 tested according to the following test method:
1. NFPA 252 or UL 10B for fire-rated access door assemblies installed vertically.
 2. NFPA 288 for fire-rated access door assemblies installed horizontally.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Access Panel Solutions.
 2. Acudor Products, Inc.
 3. Alfab, Inc.
 4. Babcock-Davis.
 5. Cendrex Inc.
 6. Elmdor/Stoneman Manufacturing Co.; Div. of Acorn Engineering Co.
 7. Jensen Industries; Div. of Broan-Nutone, LLC.
 8. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Div. of Activar Construction Products Group.
 9. Karp Associates, Inc.

10. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
 11. Maxam Metal Products Limited.
 12. Metropolitan Door Industries Corp.
 13. MIFAB, Inc.
 14. Milcor Inc.
 15. Nystrom, Inc.
 16. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The).
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door and frame from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Flanges:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings
 2. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide frame with gypsum board beads for concealed flange installation.
 3. Locations: Wall and ceiling
 4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch (1.52 mm), 16 gage.
 - a. Finish: Factory finish.
 5. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), 16 gage.
 - a. Finish: Factory finish.
 6. Frame Material: Same material and thickness as door
 7. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard
 8. Hardware: Latch .
- D. Aluminum Flush Access Doors in all area where corrosion can occur including pool and toilet areas:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings
 2. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide manufacturer's standard-width exposed flange, proportional to door size.
 3. Locations: Wall and ceiling
 4. Aluminum Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.045 inch (1.15 mm)
 - a. Finish: Clear anodic.
 5. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door
 6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard
 7. Hardware: Latch.
- E. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings
 2. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame, with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal. Provide self-latching door with automatic closer and

- interior latch release. Provide frame with gypsum board plaster beads for concealed flange installation.
 - 3. Locations: Wall and ceiling
 - 4. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction
 - 5. Temperature-Rise Rating: 250 deg F (139 deg C) at the end of 30 minutes.
 - 6. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.036 inch (0.91 mm), 20 gage
 - a. Finish: Factory finish.
 - 7. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), 20 gage
 - a. Finish: Factory finish.
 - 8. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door .
 - 9. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 10. Hardware: Latch
- F. Hardware:
- 1. Latch: Cam latch Slam latch or Self-latching bolt

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- C. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- D. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.
- E. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
- F. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- G. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H15; with minimum sheet thickness according to ANSI H35.2 (ANSI H35.2M).
- H. Frame Anchors: Same type as door face.
- I. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling.
 - 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
 - 1. For cylinder locks, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
 - 2. For recessed panel doors, provide access sleeves for each locking device. Furnish plastic grommets and install in holes cut through finish.
- F. Extruded Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Steel and Metallic-Coated-Steel Finishes:
 - 1. Factory Prime: Apply manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
 - 2. Factory Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry-film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat.
- E. Aluminum Finishes:

1. Mill finish.
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 083113

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior and interior storefront framing.
2. Storefront framing for window walls.
3. Exterior and interior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.

1. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.

C. Samples: For each exposed finish required.

D. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams.

E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Energy Performance Certificates: NFRC-certified energy performance values from manufacturer.

B. Product test reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated and accredited by IAS or ILAC Mutual Recognition Arrangement as complying with ISO/IEC 17025.
- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:

- a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings
- D. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
 1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Maximum air leakage of **0.06 cfm/sq. ft.** (**0.30 L/s per sq. m**) at a static-air-pressure differential of **1.57 lbf/sq. ft.** (**75 Pa**)
 2. Entrance Doors:
 - a. Pair of Doors: Maximum air leakage of **1.0 cfm/sq. ft.** (**5.08 L/s per sq. m**) at a static-air-pressure differential of **1.57 lbf/sq. ft.** (**75 Pa**).
 - b. Single Doors: Maximum air leakage of **0.5 cfm/sq. ft.** (**2.54 L/s per sq. m**) at a static-air-pressure differential of **1.57 lbf/sq. ft.** (**75 Pa**).
- E. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
 1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than **10 lbf/sq. ft.** (**480 Pa**).
- F. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:
 1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than **0.45 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F** (**2.55 W/sq. m x K**) as determined according to NFRC 100.
 2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.35 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 3. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 35 as determined according to NFRC 500.
- G. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 2
 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within **30 feet** (**9.1 m**) of grade.
- H. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
 1. Temperature Change: **120 deg F** (**67 deg C**), ambient; **180 deg F** (**100 deg C**), material surfaces.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
1. **Arcadia, Inc.**
 2. **Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.**
 3. **CMI Architectural.**
 4. **Commercial Architectural Products, Inc.**
 5. **Coral Industries, Inc;** FL200 Frontline Storefront System FL300 Frontline Storefront System FL300T Frontline Storefront System FL500 Frontline Impact Storefront FL550 Frontline Impact Storefront FS400T Frontline Storefront System.
 6. **EFCO Corporation.**
 7. **Kawneer Company, Inc.; Alcoa Company.**
 8. **Leed Himmel Industries, Inc.**
 9. **Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope™.**
 10. **Pittco Architectural Metals, Inc.**
 11. **SAFTI FIRST Fire Rated Glazing Solutions; SAFTIfire GPX Framing.**
 12. **TRACO.**
 13. **Tubelite Inc.**
 14. **United States Aluminum.**
 15. **YKK AP America Inc.**
 16. Insert manufacturer's name.

2.3 FRAMING

- A. **Framing Members:** Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Construction: Thermally broken
 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 3. Glazing Plane: Front
 4. Finish: Baked-enamel or powder-coat finish
 5. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
- B. **Backer Plates:** Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- C. **Brackets and Reinforcements:** Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. **Materials:**
1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - a. Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).**
 - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).**
 - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: **ASTM B 429/B 429M.**

- d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
 - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
 1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch (44.5-mm) overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch (3.2-mm-) thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 - a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior
 2. Door Design: As indicated
 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Section 087111 "Door Hardware (Descriptive Specification)."
- B. General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door to comply with requirements in this Section.
 1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and named manufacturers' products
 2. Opening-Force Requirements:
 - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf (133 N) to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to open the door to its minimum required width.
 - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N) to fully open door.
- C. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:

1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.
 2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.
- D. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
1. Offset-Pivot Hinges: Provide top, bottom, and intermediate offset pivots at each door leaf.
- E. Butt Hinges: BHMA A156.1, Grade 1, radius corner.
1. Nonremovable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while entrance door is closed.
 2. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel, with stainless-steel pin
 3. Quantities:
 - a. For doors up to 87 inches (2210 mm) high, provide three hinges per leaf.
 - b. For doors more than 87 and up to 120 inches (2210 and up to 3048 mm) high, provide four hinges per leaf.
- F. Continuous-Gear Hinges: Manufacturer's standard with stainless-steel bearings between knuckles, fabricated to full height of door and frame.
- G. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
- H. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- I. Automatic and Self-Latching Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.
- J. Panic Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
- K. Cylinders: As specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." As specified in Section 087111 "Door Hardware (Descriptive Specification)."
1. Keying: Master key system. Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include notation "DO NOT DUPLICATE"
- L. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- M. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.
- N. Removable Mullions: BHMA A156.3, extruded aluminum.
1. When used with panic exit devices, provide removable mullions listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic

protection, based on testing according to UL 305. Use only mullions that have been tested with exit devices to be used.

- O. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to comply with field conditions and requirements for opening force.
- P. Concealed Overhead Holders: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
- Q. Surface-Mounted Holders: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- R. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.
- S. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
- T. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.
- U. Silencers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- V. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21, raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
- W. Finger Guards: Manufacturer's standard collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb at center-pivoted doors.

2.6 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L.
- E. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing panels.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
- F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
- G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
 - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 - 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts
1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Perform a minimum of two tests in areas as directed by Architect.
- C. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 084229.23 - SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes exterior and interior, sliding, power-operated automatic entrances.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For automatic entrances.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware mounting heights, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 3. Indicate locations of activation and safety devices.
 - 4. Include hardware schedule and indicate hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
- C. Sample: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For automatic entrances.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.
- B. Product test reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project and who employs a Certified Inspector.
- B. Certified Inspector Qualifications: Certified by AAADM.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of automatic entrances that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components on which finishes fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 Insert number years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AUTOMATIC ENTRANCE ASSEMBLIES

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Power-Operated Door Standard: BHMA A156.10.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design automatic entrances.
- B. Wind Loads: 115 miles per hour.
- C. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Automatic entrances shall pass small-missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests of ASTM E 1996 according to the IBC for Wind Zone 2
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces
- E. Air Infiltration: Maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 1.25 cfm/sq. ft. (6.4 L/s x sq. m) of fixed entrance-system area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa)

2.3 SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard automatic entrances including doors, sidelites, framing, headers, carrier assemblies, roller tracks, door operators, controls, and accessories required for a complete installation.
- B. Sliding Automatic Entrance
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Single- and Biparting-Sliding Units:**
 - 1) **Besam Entrance Solutions; Subsidiary of ASSA ABLOY Entrance Systems.**
 - 2) **DORMA Automatics; Division of DORMA Group North America.**
 - 3) **Gildor Automatic Doors.**
 - 4) **Horton Automatics; a division of Overhead Door Corporation.**
 - 5) **Hunter Automatics Inc.**
 - 6) **Nabco Entrances Inc.**
 - 7) **record-usa.**
 - 8) **Stanley Access Technologies, LLC; Division of Stanley Security Solutions.**
 - 9) **Tormax Technologies, Inc.**
 - 10) Insert manufacturer's name.
 - 2. Configuration: Biparting- sliding door(s) with transom and pocketed sidelite(s).
 - a. Traffic Pattern: Two way.
 - b. Emergency Breakaway Capability: Sliding leaves only
 - c. Mounting: Surface.
 - 3. Operator Features:
 - a. Power opening and closing.
 - b. Drive System: or belt.
 - c. Adjustable opening and closing speeds.
 - d. Adjustable hold-open time between zero and 30 seconds.
 - e. Obstruction recycle.
 - f. On-off/hold-open switch to control electric power to operator, key operated.
 - 4. Sliding-Door Carrier Assemblies and Overhead Roller Tracks: Carrier assembly that allows vertical adjustment; consisting of nylon- or delrin-covered, ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a continuous roller track, or ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a nylon- or delrin-covered, continuous roller track. Support doors from carrier assembly by cantilever and pivot assembly.
 - a. Rollers: Minimum of two ball-bearing roller wheels and two antirise rollers for each active leaf.
 - 5. Sliding-Door Threshold: Threshold members and bottom-guide-track system with stainless-steel, ball-bearing-center roller wheels.

- a. Configuration: No threshold across door opening and surface-mounted guide-track system at sidelites.
6. Controls: Activation and safety devices as indicated on Drawings and according to BHMA standards.
 - a. Activation Device: Motion sensor mounted on each side of door header to detect pedestrians in activating zone to activate door operator.
 - b. Safety Device: Presence sensor mounted on each side of door header and two photoelectric beams mounted in sidelite jambs on one side of the door to detect pedestrians in presence zone and to prevent door from closing.
 - c. Sidelite Safety Device: Presence sensor, mounted above each sidelite on side of door opening through which doors travel, to detect obstructions and to prevent door from opening.
7. Finish: Finish framing, door(s), and header with baked-enamel or powder-coat finish.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities

2.4 ENTRANCE COMPONENTS

- A. Framing Members: Extruded aluminum, minimum 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 1. Nominal Size: As indicated on Drawings 1-3/4 by 4-1/2 inches (45 by 115 mm)
 2. Extruded Glazing Stops and Applied Trim: Minimum 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wall thickness.
- B. Stile and Rail Doors: 1-3/4-inch- (45-mm-) thick, glazed doors with minimum 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, extruded-aluminum tubular stile and rail members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are welded, or incorporate concealed tie-rods that span full length of top and bottom rails.
 1. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 2. Stile Design: As indicated on Drawings
 3. Rail Design: As indicated on Drawings
 4. Muntin Bars: Horizontal tubular rail member for each door; match stile design and finish.
- C. Sidelite(s) and Transom: 1-3/4-inch- (45-mm-) deep sidelite(s) and transom with minimum 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, extruded-aluminum tubular stile and rail members matching door design.
 1. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Same materials and design as for stile and rail door.
 2. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
- D. Headers: Fabricated from minimum 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum and extending full width of automatic entrance units to conceal door operators and controls. Provide hinged or removable access panels for service and adjustment of door operators and controls. Secure panels to prevent unauthorized access.

1. Mounting: Concealed, with one side of header flush with framing.
- E. Signage: As required by cited BHMA standard.
 1. Application Process: Door manufacturer's standard process

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 1. Extrusions: **ASTM B 221** (**ASTM B 221M**).
 2. Sheet: **ASTM B 209** (**ASTM B 209M**).
- B. Steel Reinforcement: Reinforcement with corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00 applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Use surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM A 666, Type 304
- D. Stainless-Steel Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304
- E. Glazing: As specified in Section 088000 "Glazing." Section 088853 "Security Glazing."
- F. Sealants and Joint Fillers: As specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout; complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M; of consistency suitable for application.
- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- I. Fasteners and Accessories: Corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

2.6 DOOR OPERATORS AND CONTROLS

- A. General: Provide operators and controls, which include activation and safety devices, according to BHMA standards, for condition of exposure, and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for type of occupancy indicated.
- B. Door Operators: Provide door operators of size recommended by manufacturer for door size, weight, and movement.
 1. Door Operator Performance: Door operators shall open and close doors and maintain them in fully closed position when subjected to Project's design wind loads.
 2. Electromechanical Operators: Concealed, self-contained, overhead unit powered by fractional-horsepower, permanent-magnet dc motor; with closing speed controlled mechanically by gear train and dynamically by braking action of electric motor; with solid-state microprocessor controller; UL 325; and with manual operation with power off.

- C. Motion Sensors: Self-contained, K-band-frequency, microwave-scanner units; fully enclosed by its plastic housing; adjustable to provide detection-field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156.10.
 - 1. Provide capability for switching between bidirectional and unidirectional detection.
 - 2. For one-way traffic, sensor on egress side shall not be active when doors are fully closed.
- D. Electrical Interlocks: Unless units are equipped with self-protecting devices or circuits, provide electrical interlocks to prevent activation of operator when door is locked, latched, or bolted.

2.7 HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide units in sizes and types recommended by automatic entrance and hardware manufacturers for entrances and uses indicated. Finish exposed parts to match door finish unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Breakaway Device for Power-Operated Doors: Device that allows door to swing out in direction of egress to full 90 degrees from any operating position. Interrupt powered operation of door operator while in breakaway mode.
- C. Deadlocks: Deadbolt operated by exterior cylinder and interior thumb turn, with minimum **1-inch- (25-mm-)** long throw bolt; BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
 - 1. Cylinders: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1, six-pin mortise type.
 - a. Keying: Integrate into building master key system.
 - 2. Deadbolts: Laminated-steel hook Steel, mortise type, BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
 - 3. Two-Point Locking for Stile and Rail Sliding Doors: Mechanism in stile of active door leaf that automatically extends second lockbolt into overhead carrier assembly threshold.
- D. Dustproof Strikes for All-Glass Sliding Doors: Recessed, floor-type, BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, to receive deadbolt.
- E. Weather Stripping: Replaceable components.
 - 1. Sliding Type: AAMA 701, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. General: Factory fabricate automatic entrance components to designs, sizes, and thicknesses indicated and to comply with indicated standards.
- B. Framing: Provide automatic entrances as prefabricated assemblies. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work before shipment to Project site.
 - 1. Provide components with concealed fasteners and anchor and connection devices.

2. Fabricate components with accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 3. Fabricate exterior components to drain condensation and water passing joints within system to the exterior.
 4. Provide anchorage and alignment brackets for concealed support of assembly from building structure.
 5. Allow for thermal expansion of exterior units.
- C. Doors: Factory fabricated and assembled in profiles indicated. Reinforce as required to support imposed loads and for installing hardware.
- D. Door Operators: Factory fabricated and installed in headers, including adjusting and testing.
- E. Glazing: Fabricate framing with minimum glazing edge clearances for thickness and type of glazing indicated, according to GANA's "Glazing Manual."
- F. Hardware: Factory install hardware to greatest extent possible; remove only as required for final finishing operation and for delivery to and installation at Project site. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed hardware before applying finishes.
1. Provide sliding-type weather stripping, mortised into door, at perimeter of doors and breakaway sidelites.
- G. Controls:
1. General: Factory install activation and safety devices in doors and headers as required by BHMA A156.10 for type of door and direction of travel.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install automatic entrances according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for direction of pedestrian travel, including signage, controls, wiring, and connection to the building's power supply.
1. Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight.
 2. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.

3. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating.
 - B. Entrances: Install automatic entrances plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades without warp or rack of framing members and doors. Anchor securely in place.
 1. Install surface-mounted hardware using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
 2. Set headers, carrier assemblies, tracks, operating brackets, and guides level and true to location with anchorage for permanent support.
 3. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within system to exterior.
 4. Level recesses for recessed thresholds using nonshrink grout.
 - C. Door Operators: Connect door operators to electrical power distribution system.
 - D. Access-Control Devices: Connect access-control devices to access-control system as specified in Section 281300 "Access Control."
 - E. Controls: Install and adjust activation and safety devices according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for direction of pedestrian travel. Connect control wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - F. Glazing: Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing." Section 088853 "Security Glazing."
 - G. Sealants: Comply with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to provide weathertight installation.
 1. Set framing members and flashings in full sealant bed.
 2. Seal perimeter of framing members with sealant.
 - H. Signage: Apply signage on both sides of each door and breakaway sidelite as required by cited BHMA standard for direction of pedestrian travel.
 - I. Wiring within Automatic Entrance Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's written limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Certified Inspector: Engage a Certified Inspector to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.
 - B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 1. Test and inspect each automatic entrance, using AAADM inspection forms, to determine compliance of installed systems with applicable BHMA standards.
 - C. Automatic entrances will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware, moving parts, door operators, and controls to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer; comply with requirements of applicable BHMA standards.
- B. Readjust door operators and controls after repeated operation of completed installation equivalent to three days' use by normal traffic (100 to 300 cycles).

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain automatic entrances.

END OF SECTION 084229.23

SECTION 085113 - ALUMINUM WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes aluminum windows for exterior locations.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware, accessories, insect screens, operational clearances, and details of installation, including anchor, flashing, and sealant installation.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color specified, 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm) in size.
- D. Product Schedule: For aluminum windows. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Sample warranties.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace aluminum windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. Window: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Glazing Units: 20years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Aluminum Finish: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
1. All Seasons Window & Door Mfg., Inc.; All Seasons Commercial Division, Inc.
 2. Boyd Aluminum Manufacturing.
 3. Custom Window Company.
 4. DeSCo Architectural Inc.
 5. EFCO Corporation; a Pella company.
 6. EXTECH Exterior Technologies, Inc.
 7. Fleetwood Windows & Doors.
 8. Gerkin Windows and Doors.
 9. Graham Architectural Products Corp.
 10. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
 11. Mannix Exterior Wall Systems, Inc.
 12. Peerless Products Inc.
 13. Quaker Windows Products Co.
 14. Thermal Windows, Inc.
 15. TRACO.
 16. Wausau Window and Wall Systems.
 17. Winco.
 18. YKK AP America Inc.

2.2 WINDOW PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Standard: AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
1. Minimum Performance Class: AW
 2. Minimum Performance Grade: 40
- B. Thermal Transmittance: NFRC 100 maximum whole-window U-factor of 0.30 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (1.71 W/sq. m x K)
- C. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): NFRC 200 maximum whole-window SHGC of 0.40
- D. Condensation-Resistance Factor (CRF): Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a CRF of 45

2.3 ALUMINUM WINDOWS

- A. Operating Types: As indicated on Drawings
- B. Frames and Sashes: Thermally broken aluminum extrusions complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

- C. Glass: Clear annealed glass, ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
 - 1. Kind: Fully tempered where indicated on Drawings
- D. Insulating-Glass Units: ASTM E 2190.
 - 1. Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
 - a. Tint: Clear .
 - b. Kind: Fully tempered
 - 2. Lites: Two Three.
 - 3. Filling: Fill space between glass lites with argon.
 - 4. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second surface
- E. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal.
- F. Hardware, General: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant hardware sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions.
 - 1. Exposed Hardware Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
- G. Projected Window Hardware:
- H. Hung Window Hardware:
 - 1. Counterbalancing Mechanism: AAMA 902.
 - 2. Locks and Latches: Operated from the inside only.
 - 3. Tilt Hardware: Releasing tilt latch allows sash to pivot about horizontal axis.
- I. Horizontal-Sliding Window Hardware:
 - 1. Sill Cap/Track: Designed to comply with performance requirements indicated and to drain to the exterior.
 - 2. Locks and Latches: Operated from the inside only.
 - 3. Roller Assemblies: Low-friction design.
- J. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
 - 1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to the greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Dividers (False Muntins): Provide extruded-aluminum divider grilles in designs indicated for each sash lite.
 - 1. Type: Permanently located between insulating-glass lites
 - 2. Pattern: As indicated on Drawings
 - 3. Profile: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
- B. Subsills: Thermally broken extruded-aluminum subsills in configurations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Column Covers: Extruded-aluminum profiles in sizes and configurations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Interior Trim: Extruded-aluminum profiles in sizes and configurations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Panning Trim: Extruded-aluminum profiles in sizes and configurations indicated on Drawings.
- F. Receptor System: Two-piece, snap-together, thermally broken, extruded-aluminum receptor system that anchors windows in place.
- G. Aluminum Frames: Complying with SMA 1004 or SMA 1201.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate aluminum windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
- B. Glaze aluminum windows in the factory.
- C. Weather strip each operable sash to provide weathertight installation.
- D. Provide weep holes and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.
- E. Provide water-shed members above side-hinged sashes and similar lines of natural water penetration.
- F. Provide mullions and cover plates, matching window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of window units. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movement of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections, as indicated. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design wind loads of window units.
- G. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel Finish: Thermosetting, modified-acrylic or polyester enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 2603, except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils** (0.04 mm), medium gloss.
 - 1. Color: As indicated on drawings. Final selected to be made by Architect with full range of samples provided.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components. For installation procedures and requirements not addressed in manufacturer's written instructions, comply with installation requirements in ASTM E 2112.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction to produce weathertight construction.
- C. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
- D. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.
- E. Adjust operating sashes and hardware for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
- F. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
- G. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.

END OF SECTION 085113

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
 - a. Swinging doors.
 - b. Sliding doors.
 - c. Folding doors.
2. Cylinders for door hardware specified in other Sections.
3. Electrified door hardware.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the products listed below. Coordinating and scheduling the purchase and delivery of these products remain requirements of this Section.

1. Pivots thresholds weather stripping and lock cylinders to be installed under other Sections.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified door hardware.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

D. Other Action Submittals:

1. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as installation procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
 - a. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in the Contract Documents.
 - b. Content: Include the following information:
 - 1) Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, size, and material of each door and frame.
 - 2) Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.

- 3) Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
 - 4) Description of electrified door hardware sequences of operation and interfaces with other building control systems.
2. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
- B. Source Limitations: Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.
- C. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated door assemblies are indicated, provide door hardware rated for use in assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- F. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines
1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N).
 2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
 - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied perpendicular to door.
 - b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied parallel to door at latch.
 - c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) high and 3/4 inch (19 mm) high for exterior sliding doors.
 4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.

- G. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.
- B. Deliver keys and permanent cores to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Electromagnetic and Delayed-Egress Locks: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Exit Devices: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - d. Concealed Floor Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Provide door hardware for each door as scheduled in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article on Drawings to comply with requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and named manufacturers' products equivalent in function and comparable in quality to named products complying with BHMA designations referenced.
 - 2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
- B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:
 - 1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in Part 3 "Door Hardware Schedule" Article.
 - 2. References to BHMA Designations: Provide products complying with these designations and requirements for description, quality, and function.

2.2 HINGES

- A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Baldwin Hardware Corporation.
 - b. Bommer Industries, Inc.
 - c. Cal-Royal Products, Inc.
 - d. Hager Companies.
 - e. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - f. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
 - g. McKinney Products Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - h. PBB, Inc.
 - i. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works.
 - j. Insert manufacturer's name.

2.3 SELF-CLOSING HINGES AND PIVOTS

- A. Self-Closing Hinges and Pivots: BHMA A156.17.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Baldwin Hardware Corporation.
 - b. Bommer Industries, Inc.
 - c. Cal-Royal Products, Inc.
 - d. Hager Companies.
 - e. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
 - f. McKinney Products Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - g. PBB, Inc.
 - h. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works.
 - i. Insert manufacturer's name.

2.4 CONTINUOUS HINGES

- A. Continuous Hinges: BHMA A156.26; minimum **0.120-inch- (3.0-mm-)** thick, hinge leaves with minimum overall width of **4 inches (102 mm)**; fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete.
- B. Pin-and-Barrel-Type Hinges:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Hager Companies.
- b. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
- c. Lawrence Hardware Inc.
- d. Markar Architectural Products, Inc.; a subsidiary of Adams Rite Manufacturing Co.
- e. McKinney Products Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- f. Select Products Limited.
- g. Zero International.
- h. Insert manufacturer's name.

2.5 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.

1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.
3. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.

- a. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- b. Best Access Systems; Div. of Stanley Security Solutions, Inc.
- c. Cal-Royal Products, Inc.
- d. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
- e. Falcon Lock; An Ingersoll-Rand Company.
- f. K2 Commercial Hardware; a Black & Decker Corp. company.
- g. Marks USA.
- h. Medeco Security Locks, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- i. PDQ Manufacturing.
- j. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- k. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
- l. Weiser Lock Corp.; a Black & Decker Corp. company.
- m. Yale Security Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- n. Insert manufacturer's name.

- B. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13; Operational Security Grade 1 2; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Accurate Lock & Hardware Co.
- b. Adams Rite Manufacturing Co.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- c. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- d. Best Access Systems; Div. of Stanley Security Solutions, Inc.
- e. Cal-Royal Products, Inc.
- f. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- g. Falcon Lock; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
- h. Marks USA.

- i. PDQ Manufacturing.
- j. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- k. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
- l. Yale Security Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- m. Insert manufacturer's name.

2.6 AUXILIARY LOCKS

2.7 ELECTROMAGNETIC LOCKS

- A. Electromagnetic Locks: BHMA A156.23; electrically powered; with electromagnet attached to frame and armature plate attached to door; full-exterior or full-interior type, as required by application indicated.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Door Controls International, Inc.
 - b. Dortronics Systems, Inc.
 - c. DynaLock Corp.
 - d. Rutherford Controls Int'l. Corp.
 - e. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - f. Securitron Magnalock Corporation; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - g. Security Door Controls.

2.8 SELF-CONTAINED ELECTRONIC LOCKS

- A. Self-Contained Electronic Locks: BHMA A156.25, bored or mortise; with internal, battery-powered, self-contained electronic locks; consisting of complete lockset, motor-driven lock mechanism, and actuating device; enclosed in zinc-dichromate-plated, wrought-steel case, and strike that suits frame. Provide key override, low-battery detection and warning, LED status indicators, and ability to program at the lock.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Best Access Systems; Div. of Stanley Security Solutions, Inc.
 - b. Kaba Ilco Corp.; a Kaba Group company.
 - c. Marks USA.
 - d. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - e. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - f. Yale Security Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.

2.9 EXIT LOCKS AND EXIT ALARMS

- A. Exit Locks and Alarms: BHMA A156.29, Grade 1.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- b. Detex Corporation.
- c. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.

2.10 EXIT DEVICES AND AUXILIARY ITEMS

A. Exit Devices and Auxiliary Items: BHMA A156.3.

- 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Adams Rite Manufacturing Co.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - b. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - c. Cal-Royal Products, Inc.
 - d. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - e. Detex Corporation.
 - f. Door Controls International, Inc.
 - g. DORMA Architectural Hardware; Member of The DORMA Group North America.
 - h. Dor-O-Matic; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - i. K2 Commercial Hardware; a Black & Decker Corp. company.
 - j. Monarch Exit Devices & Panic Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - k. Precision Hardware, Inc.; Division of Stanley Security Solutions, Inc.
 - l. Rutherford Controls Int'l. Corp.
 - m. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - n. Von Duprin; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - o. Yale Security Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - p. Insert manufacturer's name.

2.11 LOCK CYLINDERS

A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.

- 1. Manufacturer: Same manufacturer as for locking devices.
- 2. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Arrow USA; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - b. ASSA, Inc.; An ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
 - c. Best Access Systems; Div. of Stanley Security Solutions, Inc.
 - d. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - e. Falcon Lock; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - f. Medeco Security Locks, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - g. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - h. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - i. Yale Security Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.

B. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.

- C. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

2.12 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, Appendix A. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.
 - 1. Grand Master Key System: Change keys, a master key, and a grand master key operate
 - 2. Existing System:
 - a. Master key or grand master key locks to Owner's existing system.
 - b. Re-key Owner's existing master key system into new keying system.
 - 3. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.
- B. Keys: Brass.
 - 1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:
 - a. Notation: "DO NOT DUPLICATE."
 - 2. Quantity: In addition to one extra key blank for each lock, provide the following:
 - a. Master Keys: Five.

2.13 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Key Control Cabinet: BHMA A156.5; metal cabinet with baked-enamel finish; containing key-holding hooks, labels, 2 sets of key tags with self-locking key holders, key-gathering envelopes, and temporary and permanent markers; with key capacity of 150 percent of the number of locks.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Key Boxes and Cabinets.
 - b. GE Security, Inc.
 - c. HPC, Inc.
 - d. Lund Equipment Co., Inc.
 - e. MMF Industries.
 - f. Tri Palm International.
 - 2. Wall-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet with hinged-panel door equipped with key-holding panels and pin-tumbler cylinder door lock.

2.14 ACCESSORIES FOR PAIRS OF DOORS

- A. Coordinators: BHMA A156.3; consisting of active-leaf, hold-open lever and inactive-leaf release trigger; fabricated from steel with nylon-coated strike plates; with built-in, adjustable safety release; and with internal override.

- B. Carry-Open Bars: BHMA A156.3; prevent the inactive leaf from opening before the active leaf; provide polished brass or bronze carry-open bars with strike plate for inactive leaves of pairs of doors unless automatic or self-latching bolts are used.
- C. Astragals: BHMA A156.22.

2.15 CLOSER HOLDER RELEASE DEVICES

- A. Closer Holder Release Devices: BHMA A156.15; Grade 1; closer connected with separate or integral releasing and fire- or smoke-detecting devices. Door shall become self-closing on interruption of signal to release device. Automatic release is activated by smoke detection system loss of power.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - b. DORMA Architectural Hardware; Member of The DORMA Group North America.
 - c. LCN Closers; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - d. Norton Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - e. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - f. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - g. Insert manufacturer's name.

2.16 MECHANICAL STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Wall- and Floor-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16; polished cast brass, bronze, or aluminum base metal.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc.
 - b. Baldwin Hardware Corporation.
 - c. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated.
 - d. Cal-Royal Products, Inc.
 - e. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc.
 - f. Door Controls International, Inc .
 - g. Hager Companies.
 - h. Hiawatha, Inc.
 - i. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - j. Rockwood Manufacturing Company.
 - k. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works.
 - l. Trimco.

2.17 ELECTROMAGNETIC STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Electromagnetic Door Holders: BHMA A156.15, Grade 1; wall-mounted electromagnetic single unit with strike plate attached to swinging door; coordinated with fire detectors and interface with fire alarm system for labeled fire-rated door assemblies.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc.
 - b. DORMA Architectural Hardware; Member of The DORMA Group North America.
 - c. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.

2.18 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc.
 - b. Glynn-Johnson; an Ingersoll-Rand company.
 - c. Rockwood Manufacturing Company.
 - d. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - e.

2.19 DOOR GASKETING

- A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; air leakage not to exceed **0.50 cfm per foot (0.000774 cu. m/s per m)** of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to ASTM E 283; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Hager Companies.
 - b. M-D Building Products, Inc.
 - c. National Guard Products.
 - d. Pemko Manufacturing Co.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - e. Reese Enterprises, Inc.
 - f. Sealeze; a unit of Jason Incorporated.
 - g. Zero International.
 - h.

2.20 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Hager Companies.
- b. M-D Building Products, Inc.
- c. National Guard Products.
- d. Pemko Manufacturing Co.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- e. Reese Enterprises, Inc.
- f. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
- g. Sealeze; a unit of Jason Incorporated.
- h. Zero International.

2.21 SLIDING DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Sliding Door Hardware: BHMA A156.14; consisting of complete sets including rails, hangers, supports, bumpers, floor guides, and accessories indicated.
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Cox, Arthur, & Sons, Inc.
 - b. Hager Companies.
 - c. Henderson, PC Inc.
 - d. Johnson, L. E., Products, Inc.
 - e. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works.

2.22 FOLDING DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: BHMA A156.14; complete sets including overhead rails, hangers, supports, bumpers, floor guides, and accessories indicated.
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Cox, Arthur, & Sons, Inc.
 - b. Hager Companies.
 - c. Henderson, PC Inc.
 - d. Johnson, L. E., Products, Inc.
 - e. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works.

2.23 METAL PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

- A. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; fabricated from **0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick stainless steel; with manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screw fasteners.
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings schedule or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Baldwin Hardware Corporation.
 - b. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated.
 - c. Don-Jo Mfg., Inc.
 - d. Hiawatha, Inc.
 - e. IPC Door and Wall Protection Systems, Inc.; Div. of InPro Corporation.
 - f. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand company.

- g. Pawling Corporation.
- h. Rockwood Manufacturing Company.
- i. Trimco.
- j. Insert manufacturer's name.

2.24 FABRICATION

- A. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Applications:
 - a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:
 - 1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames; use threaded-to-the-head wood screws for wood doors and frames.
 - 2) Strike plates to frames.
 - 3) Closers to doors and frames.
 - b. Steel Through Bolts: For the following unless door blocking is provided:
 - 1) Surface hinges to doors.
 - 2) Closers to doors and frames.
 - 3) Surface-mounted exit devices.
 - 3. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
 - 4. Fasteners for Wood Doors: Comply with requirements in DHI WDHS.2, "Recommended Fasteners for Wood Doors."
 - 5. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

2.25 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."
- C. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated on Drawings to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
 - 3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- D. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
 - 1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
 - 2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- E. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches (750 mm) of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- F. Intermediate Offset Pivots: Where offset pivots are indicated, provide intermediate offset pivots in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than one intermediate offset pivot per door and one additional intermediate offset pivot for every 30 inches (750 mm) of door height greater than 90 inches (2286 mm).
- G. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
 - 1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying schedule directed by Owner.
- H. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- I. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior doors and other doors indicated in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

- J. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.
- K. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- L. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- M. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.
- N. Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant: Owner will engage a qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.

3.3 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

END OF SECTION 087100

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
 - 1. Windows.
 - 2. Doors.
 - 3. Glazed curtain walls.
 - 4. Glazed entrances.
 - 5. Interior borrowed lites.
 - 6. Storefront framing.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.
- B. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
- C. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than

thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:
 - a. Specified Design Wind Loads: As indicated on Structural drawings.
 - b. Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed 90 miles per hour (meters per second) at 33 feet (10 m) above grade, according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
 - 1) Basic Wind Speed: 90 miles per hour
 - 2) Importance Factor: As indicated.
 - 3) Exposure Category: As indicated on Structural drawings.
 - c. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6.0 mm.
 - d. Thickness of Tinted and Heat-Absorbing Glass: Provide the same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick of thickness indicated].
 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite 6.0 mm thick and a nominal 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) wide interspace.
 4. Center-of-Glass Values: Based on using LBL-44789 WINDOW 5.0 computer program for the following methodologies:
 - a. U-Factors: NFRC 100 expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
 - b. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200.
 - c. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.

- B. Samples: 12-inch- (300-mm-) square, for each type of glass product indicated, other than monolithic clear float glass.
- C. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Submit to elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers, for testing according to ASTM C 1087, samples of each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member that will contact or affect elastomeric glazing sealants:
- B. Glazing for Fire-Rated Door and Window Assemblies: Glazing for assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 and that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257.
- C. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and, for wired glass, ANSI Z97.1.
- D. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. GANA Publications: [GANA Laminated Division's "Laminated Glass Design Guide" and]GANA's "Glazing Manual."
 - 2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR-A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
 - 3. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
 - 4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."
- E. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the Insulating Glass Certification Council.
- F. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups .
 - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace coated-glass

units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by laminated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 3. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product specified.
 4. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 5. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3; of class indicated.
1. Ultra-Clear (Low-Iron) Float Glass: Class I (clear); with a minimum 91 percent visible light transmission and a minimum solar heat gain coefficient of 0.87.
 - a. Products:
 - 1) AFG Industries Inc.; Krystal Klear.

- 2) Pilkington Building Products North America; Optiwhite.
 - 3) PPG Industries, Inc.; Starphire.
- B. Wired Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type II (patterned and wired flat glass), Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q-6; and of form and mesh pattern specified.
- C. Insulating-Glass Units, General: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA units and with requirements specified in this Article and in Part 2 "Insulating-Glass Units" Article.
1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 2. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated for insulating-glass units are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
 3. Sealing System: Dual seal.
 4. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
 - a. Corner Construction: Manufacturer's standard corner construction.

2.3 FIRE-RATED GLAZING PRODUCTS

- A. Fire-Protection Rating: As indicated for the assembly in which glazing material is installed, and permanently labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below, complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
1. Neoprene, ASTM C 864.
 2. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
 3. Silicone, ASTM C 1115.
 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM C 1115.
 5. Any material indicated above.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned gaskets of material indicated below; complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
1. Neoprene.
 2. EPDM.
 3. Silicone.
 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber.
 5. Any material indicated above.

2.5 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range].
- B. Elastomeric Glazing Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
1. Single-Component Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealants GS-<#>:
 - a. Products:
 - b. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
 - c. Class: [50] [100/50].
 - d. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
 - e. Uses Related to Glazing Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to glazing substrates indicated, O.
 - f. Applications: <Describe types of glazing applications where this sealant is required.>
 2. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealants GS-<#>:
- C. Glazing Sealants for Fire-Resistive Glazing Products: Identical to products used in test assemblies to obtain fire-protection rating.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.

- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

2.7 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

2.8 MONOLITHIC WIRED-GLASS UNITS

- A. Polished Wired-Glass Units WG- $\langle\# \rangle$: Form 1 (wired glass, polished both sides), Quality-Q6, Mesh, 6.0 mm thick.

- 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Asahi/AMA Glass Corp.; affiliated with AFG Industries, Inc.
 - b. Central Glass Co., Ltd.; distributed by Northwestern Industries Inc.
 - c. Pilkington Sales (North America) Ltd.

- B. Patterned Wired-Glass Units WG- $\langle\# \rangle$: Form 2 (wired glass, patterned surfaces), Quality-Q6, Mesh 1 M1 (diamond), 6.0 mm thick.

- 1. Manufacturers:

- a. AFG Industries Inc.
 - b. Central Glass Co., Ltd.; distributed by Northwestern Industries Inc.
 - c. Pilkington Sales (North America) Ltd.
 - d. \langle Insert manufacturer's name. \rangle

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GLAZING

- A. General: Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
 - 1. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
 - 2. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

3. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
 4. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
 5. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
 6. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm).
 7. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Tape Glazing: Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
1. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
 2. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
 3. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
 4. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
 5. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.
- C. Gasket Glazing (Dry): Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
1. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
 2. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
 3. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.
- D. Sealant Glazing (Wet): Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
1. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
 2. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 089119 - FIXED LOUVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fixed, extruded-aluminum and formed-metal louvers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for louvers in hollow-metal doors.
 - 2. Section 081416 "Flush Wood Doors" for louvers in flush wood doors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
- C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For louvers indicated to comply with structural performance requirements, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on tests performed according to AMCA 500-L.
- B. Windborne-debris-impact-resistance test reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or

permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.

1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on a uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) acting inward or outward.
- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Louvers located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade shall pass enhanced-protection, large-missile testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 2 when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than louvers indicated for use on Project.
- D. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.

2.2 FIXED, EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

A. Horizontal, Nondrainable-Blade Louver

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Air Balance Inc.; a Mestek company.
 - b. Air Flow Company, Inc.
 - c. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
 - d. All-Lite Architectural Products.
 - e. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek company.
 - f. Architectural Louvers; Harray, LLC.
 - g. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - h. Carnes Company, Inc.
 - i. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - j. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - k. Dowco Products Group; Safe Air of Illinois.
 - l. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - m. Louvers & Dampers; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - n. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
 - o. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
 - p. Nystrom, Inc.
 - q. Pottorff.
 - r. Reliable Products, Inc.
 - s. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
 - t. United Enertech.
 - u. Vent Products Co., Inc.
2. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm)
3. Blade Profile: Blade with center baffle.
4. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) for blades and 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) for frames.
5. Mullion Type: Fully recessed.

6. Louver Performance Ratings:

- a. Free Area: Not less than **8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m)** **8.5 sq. ft. (0.79 sq. m)** Insert value for **48-inch- (1220-mm-)** wide by **48-inch- (1220-mm-)** high louver.
- b. Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than **750 fpm (3.8 m/s)**
- c. Air Performance: Not more than **0.10-inch wg (25-Pa)** static pressure drop at **700-fpm (3.6-m/s)** free-area exhaust intake velocity.

B. Horizontal, Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Air Balance Inc.; a Mestek company.**
 - b. **Air Flow Company, Inc.**
 - c. **Airolite Company, LLC (The).**
 - d. **All-Lite Architectural Products.**
 - e. **American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek company.**
 - f. **Architectural Louvers; Harray, LLC.**
 - g. **Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.**
 - h. **Construction Specialties, Inc.**
 - i. **Greenheck Fan Corporation.**
 - j. **Industrial Louvers, Inc.**
 - k. **NCA Manufacturing, Inc.**
 - l. **Nystrom, Inc.**
 - m. **Pottorff.**
 - n. **Reliable Products, Inc.**
 - o. **Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.**
 - p. **United Enertech.**
2. Louver Depth: **5 inches (125 mm)**
3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than **0.080 inch (2.03 mm)** **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)** for blades and **0.080 inch (2.03 mm)** for frames.
4. Louver Performance Ratings:
 - a. Free Area: Not less than **6.0 sq. ft. (0.56 sq. m)** for **48-inch- (1220-mm-)** wide by **48-inch- (1220-mm-)** high louver.
 - b. Air Performance: Not more than **0.10-inch wg (25-Pa)** static pressure drop at **700-fpm (3.6-m/s)** **800-fpm (4.1-m/s)** free-area exhaust intake velocity.
 - c. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 95 percent effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall rate of **3 inches (75 mm)** per hour and a wind speed of **29 mph (13 m/s)** at a core-area intake velocity of **300 fpm (1.5 m/s)** .
5. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

2.3 LOUVER SCREENS

A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver

1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.

2. Screening Type: Bird screening.
- B. Louver Screen Frames: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached.
- C. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
 1. Bird Screening: Stainless steel, ~~1/2-inch-~~ (13-mm-) square mesh, ~~0.047-inch~~ (1.19-mm) wire.
- D. Louver Screening for Galvanized-Steel Louvers:
 1. Bird Screening: Galvanized steel, ~~1/2-inch-~~ (13-mm-) square mesh, ~~0.041-inch~~ (1.04-mm) wire.
- E. Louver Screening for Stainless-Steel Louvers:
 1. Bird Screening: Stainless steel, ~~1/2-inch-~~ (13-mm-) square mesh, ~~0.047-inch~~ (1.19-mm) wire.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ~~ASTM B 221~~ (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ~~ASTM B 209~~ (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, ~~G60~~ (Z180) ~~G90~~ (Z275) zinc coating, mill phosphatized.
- D. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
 1. Use tamper-resistant screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 3. For fastening galvanized steel, use hot-dip-galvanized steel or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 4. For fastening stainless steel, use 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 5. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- B. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

2.7 GALVANIZED-STEEL SHEET FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating compatible with the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair according to ASTM A 780.
- C. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
 - 1. Color and Gloss: Match Architect's sample As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

2.8 STAINLESS-STEEL SHEET FINISHES

- A. Repair sheet finish by grinding and polishing irregularities, weld spatter, scratches, and forming marks to match surrounding finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- D. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.

Hampton Inn and Suites, Monroe, LA
Project No.: 12-111

September 16, 2013

END OF SECTION 089119

SECTION 089516 - WALL VENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes wall vents.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL VENTS (BRICK VENTS)

- A. Extruded-Aluminum Wall Vents:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Air Flow Company, Inc.
 - b. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
 - c. Architectural Louvers; Harray, LLC.
 - d. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - e. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - f. Dowco Products Group; Safe Air of Illinois.
 - g. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - h. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
 - i. Industrial Louvers, Inc.
 - j. Louvers & Dampers; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - k. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
 - l. Nystrom, Inc.
 - m. Reliable Products, Inc.
 - n. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
 - o. Sunvent Industries; Division of Sylro Sales Corp.
 - p. United Enertech.
2. Extruded-aluminum louvers and frames, not less than **0.125-inch (3.18-mm)** nominal thickness, assembled by welding; with **18-by-14- (1.4-by-1.8-mm-)** mesh, aluminum insect screening on inside face.
3. Dampers: Aluminum blades and frames mounted on inside of wall vents.
4. Finish: Mill

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221** (**ASTM B 221M**), Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209** (**ASTM B 209M**), Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 319.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Protect unpainted surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint.
- B. Build vents into masonry work as construction progresses; comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

END OF SECTION 089516

SECTION 092116.23 - GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each component of gypsum board shaft wall assembly.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: Provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by a testing and inspecting agency.
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: Gypsum shaft wall assemblies shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Fire-Resistance Rating: 2 hours
- B. STC Rating: 51, minimum
- C. Studs: Manufacturer's standard profile for repetitive members, corner and end members, and fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
 - 1. Depth: As indicated
 - 2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated
- D. Runner Tracks: Manufacturer's standard J-profile track with manufacturer's standard long-leg length, but at least 2 inches (51 mm) long and matching studs in depth.
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated

- E. Firestop Tracks: Provide firestop track at head of shaft wall on each floor level.
- F. Elevator Hoistway Entrances: Manufacturer's standard J-profile jamb strut with long-leg length of 3 inches (76 mm), matching studs in depth.
- G. Room-Side Finish: Gypsum board
- H. Shaft-Side Finish: Gypsum shaftliner board, moisture- and mold-resistant Type X
- I. Insulation: Sound attenuation blankets.

2.3 PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Panel Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.
- B. Gypsum Shaftliner Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M; manufacturer's proprietary fire-resistive liner panels with paper faces.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Gypsum; Shaft Liner.
 - b. CertainTeed Corp.; ProRoc Shaftliner.
 - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC, Subsidiary of Georgia Pacific; ToughRock Fireguard Shaftliner.
 - d. Lafarge North America, Inc.; Firecheck Type X Shaftliner.
 - e. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Brand Fire-Shield Shaftliner.
 - f. PABCO Gypsum; Pabcore Shaftliner Type X.
 - g. Temple-Inland Inc.; Fire-Rated SilentGuard Gypsum Shaftliner System.
 - h. USG Corporation; Sheetrock Brand Gypsum Liner Panel.
 - 2. Thickness: 1 inch (25.4 mm).
 - 3. Long Edges: Double bevel.
- C. Gypsum Shaftliner Board, Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M; manufacturer's proprietary fire-resistive liner panels with moisture- and mold-resistant core and surfaces.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; ProRoc Moisture and Mold Resistant Shaftliner.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC, Subsidiary of Georgia Pacific; Dens-Glass Ultra Shaftliner.
 - c. Lafarge North America, Inc.; Firecheck Moldcheck Type X Shaftliner.
 - d. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Brand Fire-Shield Shaftliner XP.
 - e. PABCO Gypsum; Pabcore Mold Curb Shaftliner Type X.
 - f. Temple-Inland Inc.; Fire-Rated SilentGuard TS Mold-Resistant Gypsum Shaftliner System.

- g. **USG Corporation; Sheetrock Brand Mold Tough Gypsum Liner Panel.**
 - 2. Thickness: **1 inch (25.4 mm).**
 - 3. Long Edges: Double bevel.
 - 4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- D. Gypsum Board: As specified in Section 092900 "Gypsum Board."

2.4 NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING

- A. Steel Framing Members: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal.
- B. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Fire Trak Corp.;** Fire Trak System attached to studs with Fire Trak Posi Klip.
 - b. **Grace Construction Products; FlameSafe FlowTrak System.**
 - c. **Metal-Lite, Inc.; The System.**
 - d. **Steel Network Inc. (The);** VertiClip SLD VertiTrack VTD Series.

2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Trim Accessories: Material and shapes as specified in Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" that comply with gypsum board shaft wall assembly manufacturer's written recommendations for application indicated.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Track Fasteners: Power-driven fasteners of size and material required to withstand loading conditions.
- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: As specified in Section 092900 "Gypsum Board."
- E. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with requirements of fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and ASTM C 754 other than stud-spacing requirements.

- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials: Patch or replace sprayed fire-resistive materials removed or damaged during installation of shaft wall assemblies. After application, remove only to extent necessary for installation of gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.
- D. Building Expansion Joints: Frame both sides of expansion joints with furring and other support.
- E. Install supplementary framing around openings and as required for blocking, bracing, and support of gravity and pullout loads of fixtures, equipment, handrails, and similar items.
 - 1. Elevator Hoistway: Provide jamb struts on each side of door frame.
- F. Penetrations: Install supplementary steel framing around perimeter of penetration behind boxes containing wiring devices, elevator call buttons, elevator floor indicators, and similar items.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum panels from building structure, while maintaining continuity of fire-rated construction.
- H. Firestop Tracks: Install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
- I. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect while maintaining fire-resistance rating of gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.
- J. Sound-Rated Shaft Wall Assemblies: Seal with acoustical sealant at perimeter of each assembly and at joints and penetrations.
- K. Cant Panels: At projections into shaft exceeding 4 inches (102 mm), install 1/2- or 5/8-inch- (13- or 16-mm-) thick gypsum board cants covering tops of projections.
- L. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.
- M. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

END OF SECTION 092116.23

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.
3. Tile backing panels.
4. Texture finishes.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples:

1. Textured Finishes: Manufacturer's standard size for each textured finish indicated and on same backing indicated for Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. American Gypsum.
 2. CertainTeed Corp.
 3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 4. Lafarge North America Inc.
 5. National Gypsum Company.
 6. PABCO Gypsum.

7. Temple-Inland.
8. USG Corporation.

B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.

C. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.

D. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.

1. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

E. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
2. Long Edges: Tapered.

F. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.

1. Core: As indicated
2. Long Edges: Tapered.
3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.3 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

A. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. CertainTeed Corp.
 - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - d. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - e. National Gypsum Company.
 - f. PABCO Gypsum.
 - g. Temple-Inland.
 - h. USG Corporation.
2. Core: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), regular type 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X.

- B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, with fiberglass mat laminated to both sides and with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; GlasRoc Sheathing.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; Dens-Glass Gold.
 - c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond, e(2)XP.
 - d. USG Corporation; Securock Glass Mat Sheathing.
 - e.
 2. Core: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), regular type 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C 1178/C 1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; GlasRoc Tile Backer.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; DensShield Tile Backer.
 - c.
 2. Core: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), regular type 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X.
 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or 1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. C-Cure; C-Cure Board 990.
 - b. CertainTeed Corp.; FiberCement Underlayment BackerBoard.
 - c. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard EasyBoard.
 - d. FinPan, Inc.; Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board EZ Backer ProTEC.
 - e. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.; Hardiebacker Hardiebacker 500.
 - f. National Gypsum Company, Permabase Cement Board.
 - g. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
 2. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) As indicated.
 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- C. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Gypsum.
 - b. CertainTeed Corp.
 - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - d. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - e. PABCO Gypsum.
 - f. Temple-Inland.
 - g. USG Corporation.
2. Core: **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)**, regular type **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, Type X Type C as required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.

2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
 3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
 4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing).
- D. Acoustical Joint Sealant: ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings as demonstrated by testing according to ASTM E 90.
 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Accumetric LLC; BOSS 824 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
 - b. Grabber Construction Products; Acoustical Sealant GSC.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR AIS-919.
 - d. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
 - e. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."
- F. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

2.7 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
- B. Polystyrene Aggregate Ceiling Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, polystyrene aggregate finish with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; ToughRock Ceiling Textures/Polystyrene.
 - b. National Gypsum Company; ProForm Perfect Spray.
 - c. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Ceiling Spray Texture, QT.
 - 2. Texture: Fine
- C. Aggregate Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, aggregated, drying-type texture finish for spray application.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; ProRoc Wall and Ceiling Spray Texture.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; ToughRock Ceiling Textures/Vermiculite.
 - c. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Wall and Ceiling Spray Texture (Aggregated).
 - 2. Texture: Spatter knock-down
- D. Acoustical Finish: Water-based, chemical-setting or drying-type, job-mixed texture finish for spray application.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. International Cellulose Corp.; SonaSpray "fc."
 - b. USG Corporation; USG Acoustical Plaster Finish.
 - 2. Application Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm)
 - 3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 Insert value or less.
 - 4. NRC: 0.55 according to ASTM C 423.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide ~~1/4- to 1/2-inch-~~ (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- D. Install trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings Insert requirements.
- E. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- F. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- G. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
- H. Texture Finish Application: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture matching approved mockup and free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.
- I. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and texture finishes and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- J. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ceramic mosaic tile.
2. Quarry tile.
3. Pressed floor tile.
4. Porcelain tile.
5. Glazed wall tile.
6. Stone thresholds.
7. Tile backing panels.
8. Waterproof membrane for thinset applications.
9. Metal edge strips.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples:

1. Each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. For ceramic mosaic tile in color blend patterns, provide samples of each color blend.
2. Assembled samples mounted on a rigid panel, with grouted joints, for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
3. Stone thresholds.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer is a five-star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.
3. Installer employs Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation.
2. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide Standard-grade tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

2.2 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Ceramic Tile Type As selected by Architect/Owner: Factory-mounted glazed ceramic mosaic tile.
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Marazzi Tile, Inc.
 - b. American Olean Corporation.
 - c. Crossville, Inc.
 - d. Dal-Tile Corporation.
 - e. Interceramic.
 - f. Iris US.
 - g. Jeffrey Court Inc.
 - h. Porcelanite.
 - i. Seneca Tiles, Inc.

2. Composition: Porcelain
 3. Certification: Porcelain tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
 4. Module Size: 1 by 1 inch (25.4 by 25.4 mm) 1 by 2 inches (25.4 by 50.8 mm) 2 by 2 inches (50.8 by 50.8 mm)
 5. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 6. Face: Plain with cushion edges.
 7. Surface: Slip resistant, with abrasive admixture.
 8. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
 9. Finish: As selected by Architect/Owner from manufacturer's full range glaze options.
 10. Tile Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 11. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 12. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. Base Cove: Cove, module size 2 by 1 inch (50.8 by 25.4 mm).
 - b. Base Cap: Surface bullnose, module size 2 by 1 inch (50.8 by 25.4 mm) 2 by 2 inches (50.8 by 50.8 mm)
 - c. External Corners for Thinset Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose, module size 1 by 1 inch (25.4 by 25.4 mm) 2 by 1 inch (50.8 by 25.4 mm) 2 by 2 inches (50.8 by 50.8 mm)
 - d. Internal Corners: Cove, module size 1 by 1 inch (25.4 by 25.4 mm) 2 by 1 inch (50.8 by 25.4 mm)
 - e. Tapered Transition Tile: Shape designed to effect transition between thickness of tile floor and adjoining floor finishes of different thickness, tapered to provide reduction in thickness from 1/2 to 1/4 inch (12.7 to 6.4 mm) across nominal 4-inch (100-mm) dimension.
- B. Ceramic Tile Type As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range square-edged quarry tile.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Olean Corporation.
 - b. Dal-Tile Corporation.
 - c. Endicott Tile Ltd.; Endicott Clay Products Co.
 - d. Florida Brick & Clay Company Inc.
 - e. Interceramic.
 - f. Jeffrey Court Inc.
 - g. Metropolitan Ceramics.
 - h. Quarry Tile Co.
 - i. Seneca Tiles, Inc.
 - j. Sonoma Tilemakers.
 - k. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - l. Vitromex USA.
 2. Face Size: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 3. Thickness: 3/8 inch (9.5 mm)
 4. Wearing Surface: Abrasive aggregate embedded in surface
 5. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
 6. Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range glaze.

7. Tile Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 8. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. Base: Coved with surface bullnose top edge, face size **6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm)**
- C. Ceramic Tile Type As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range Glazed pressed floor tile.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **American Marazzi Tile, Inc.**
 - b. **American Olean Corporation.**
 - c. **Dal-Tile Corporation.**
 - d. **Florim USA.**
 - e. **Interceramic.**
 - f. **Porcelanite.**
 - g. **Seneca Tiles, Inc.**
 - h. **Vitromex USA.**
 2. Composition: Impervious natural clay or porcelain
 3. Face Size: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 4. Thickness: **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)**
 5. Face: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 6. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
 7. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. Base Cove: Cove, module size same as adjoining flat tile
 - b. Base Cap: same as adjoining flat tile Insert size.
 - c. External Corners: same as adjoining flat tile
 - d. Internal Corners: Cove, module size same as adjoining flat tile
 - e. Tapered Transition Tile: Shape designed to effect transition between thickness of tile floor and adjoining floor finishes of different thickness, tapered to provide reduction in thickness from **1/2 to 1/4 inch (12.7 to 6.4 mm)** across nominal **4-inch (100-mm)** dimension.
- D. Ceramic Tile Type As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range Glazed porcelain tile.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **American Marazzi Tile, Inc.**
 - b. **American Olean Corporation.**
 - c. **Crossville, Inc.**
 - d. **Dal-Tile Corporation.**
 - e. **Florida Tile, Inc.**

- f. Florim USA.
 - g. Interceramic.
 - h. Iris US.
 - i. Porcelanite.
 - j. Seneca Tiles, Inc.
 - k.
 - 2. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
 - 3. Face Size: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - 4. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
 - 5. Thickness: 3/8 inch (9.5 mm)
 - 6. Face: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - 7. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
 - 8. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - 9. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - 10. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. Base Cap: Surface bullnose, module size same as adjoining flat tile Insert size.
 - b. Wainscot Cap: Surface bullnose, module size same as adjoining flat tile Insert size.
 - c. External Corners: Surface bullnose, module size same as adjoining flat tile Insert size.
 - d. Tapered Transition Tile: Shape designed to effect transition between thickness of tile floor and adjoining floor finishes of different thickness, tapered to provide reduction in thickness from 1/2 to 1/4 inch (12.7 to 6.4 mm) across nominal 4-inch (100-mm) dimension.
- E. Ceramic Tile Type As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range: Glazed wall tile.
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Marazzi Tile, Inc.
 - b. American Olean Corporation.
 - c. Dal-Tile Corporation.
 - d. Jeffrey Court Inc.
 - e. Porcelanite.
 - f. Seneca Tiles, Inc.
 - 2. Module Size: 4-1/4 by 4-1/4 inches (108 by 108 mm)
 - 3. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
 - 4. Thickness: 5/16 inch (8 mm).
 - 5. Face: Plain with modified square edges or cushion edges
 - 6. Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range glaze.
 - 7. Tile Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - 8. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - 9. Mounting: Factory, back mounted.
 - 10. Mounting: PregROUTED sheets of tiles are factory assembled and grouted with manufacturer's standard white silicone rubber.

11. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:

- a. Base: Coved Straight, module size 4-1/4 by 4-1/4 inches (108 by 108 mm)
- b. Wainscot Cap: Bullnose cap Surface bullnose, module size 4-1/4 by 4-1/4 inches (108 by 108 mm)
- c. External Corners: same size as adjoining flat tile.
- d. Internal Corners: Field-buttet square corners. For coved base and cap use angle pieces designed to fit with stretcher shapes.

- F. Accessories: Provide vitreous china accessories of type and size indicated, suitable for installing by same method as used for adjoining wall tile.

1. One soap holder with grab handle for each shower and tub indicated.
2. One paper holder at each water closet.
3. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.

1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or less above adjacent floor surface.

- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C 503/C 503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of 10 according to ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241/C 241M and with honed finish.

1. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained white stone with gray veining.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 or ASTM C 1325, Type A.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. **C-Cure**; C-Cure Board 990.
- b. **Custom Building Products**; Wonderboard.
- c. **FinPan, Inc.**; ProTEC Concrete Backer Board.
- d. **USG Corporation**; DUROCK Cement Board.
- e.

2. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

- B. Fiber-Cement Backer Board: ASTM C 1288.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **CertainTeed Corporation**; FiberCement BackerBoard.
 - b. **James Hardie Building Products, Inc.**; Hardiebacker 1/4"
 - c.
2. Thickness: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**

2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Chlorinated Polyethylene Sheet: Nonplasticized, chlorinated polyethylene faced on both sides with nonwoven polyester fabric.
 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Noble Company (The)**; Nobleseal TS.
 - b. **Noble Company (The)**; Noble Deck.
 - c.
 2. Nominal Thickness: **0.030 inch (0.76 mm)**.
 3. Nominal Thickness: **0.040 inch (1 mm)**.
- C. **PVC Sheet:** PVC heat-fused on both sides to facings of nonwoven polyester.
 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Compotite Corporation**; Composeal Gold.
 - b. **Noble Company (The)**; Wall Seal.
 2. Nominal Thickness: **0.025 inch (0.6 mm)**.
 3. Nominal Thickness: **0.040 inch (1 mm)**.
- D. Polyethylene Sheet: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing; **0.008-inch (0.2-mm)** nominal thickness.
 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Schluter Systems L.P.**; KERDI.

2.6 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.

- B. Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.1.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.
 - b. Bonsal American; an Oldcastle company.
 - c. Bostik, Inc.
 - d. C-Cure.
 - e. Custom Building Products.
 - f. Jamo Inc.
 - g. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - h. MAPEI Corporation.
 - i. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
 - j. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - k. TEC; H. B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.
 - 2. For wall applications, provide nonsagging mortar.
- C. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ardex Americas.
 - b. Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.
 - c. Bonsal American; an Oldcastle company.
 - d. Bostik, Inc.
 - e. C-Cure.
 - f. Custom Building Products.
 - g. Jamo Inc.
 - h. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - i. MAPEI Corporation.
 - j. Merkrete Systems; Parex USA, Inc.
 - k. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
 - l. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - m. TEC; H. B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.
 - 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix to which only water must be added at Project site.
 - 3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with liquid-latex additive at Project site.
 - 4. For wall applications, provide nonsagging mortar.

2.7 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Boiardi Products Corporation; a QEP company.

- b. Bonsal American; an Oldcastle company.
- c. Bostik, Inc.
- d. C-Cure.
- e. Custom Building Products.
- f. Jamo Inc.
- g. Laticrete International, Inc.
- h. MAPEI Corporation.
- i. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
- j. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
- k. TEC; H. B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.
- l.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shape, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; stainless-steel, ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Blanke Corporation.
 - b. Ceramic Tool Company, Inc.
 - c. Schluter Systems L.P.
- C. Grout Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company; Grout Sealer.
 - b. Custom Building Products; Surfaceguard Sealer Grout and Tile Sealer Grout Sealer.
 - c. Jamo Inc.; Surfaceguard Sealer Grout and Tile Sealer Grout Sealer.
 - d. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.; Grout Sealer Clear Penetrating Sealer & Grout Release.
 - e. Summitville Tiles, Inc.; SL-15, Invisible Seal SL-99, Summitseal II.
 - f. TEC, H. B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.; Grout Guard Plus Penetrating Grout Sealer Grout Guard Penetrating Grout Sealer Guard All Invisible Penetrating Sealer.
 - g.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives bonded mortar bed or thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives or thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped **1/4 inch per foot (1:50)** toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Exterior tile floors.
 - b. Tile floors in wet areas.
 - c. Tile swimming pool decks.
 - d. Tile floors in laundries.
 - e. Tile floors consisting of tiles **8 by 8 inches (200 by 200 mm)** or larger.

- f. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
 - 1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm)
 - 2. Quarry Tile: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm)
 - 3. Pressed Floor Tile: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm)
 - 4. Glazed Wall Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm)
 - 5. Porcelain Tile: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm)
- H. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
 - 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- I. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in latex-portland cement mortar (thinset).
 - 2. Do not extend cleavage membrane waterproofing or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in dry-set portland cement or latex-portland cement mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on cleavage membrane waterproofing or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.
- J. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.

- K. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to cementitious grout joints in tile floors according to grout-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as grout sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.
- L. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated. Use latex-portland cement mortar for bonding material unless otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.
- M. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- N. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.

3.4 EXTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Exterior Floor Installations:

- 1. Ceramic Tile Installation TCNA F101 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) bonded to concrete over waterproof membrane on concrete over waterproof membrane on concrete where indicated and bonded to concrete where membrane is not indicated.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Latex-portland cement mortar.
- 2. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F102; thinset mortar on concrete over waterproof membrane on concrete over waterproof membrane on concrete where indicated and on concrete where membrane is not indicated.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded High-performance unsanded grout.

3.5 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:

- 1. Ceramic Tile Installation TCNA F111 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) with cleavage membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded High-performance unsanded grout.
- 2. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F112 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) bonded to concrete.

- a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement.
 3. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F113; thinset mortar.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded grout.
 4. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F121 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) on waterproof membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded High-performance unsanded grout.
 5. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F122; thinset mortar on waterproof membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: High-performance sanded unsanded grout.
 6. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F125A; thinset mortar on crack isolation membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded High-performance unsanded Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
- B. Interior Wall Installations, Masonry or Concrete:
1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W202; thinset mortar.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded High-performance unsanded Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
 2. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W211 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) bonded to substrate.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement grout.

3. Ceramic Tile Installation : TCNA W221 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) on metal lath over cleavage membrane over waterproof membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement grout.
 4. Ceramic Tile Installation : TCNA W222 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; one-coat cement mortar bed (thickset) on metal lath over cleavage membrane over waterproof membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement
- C. Interior Wall Installations, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:
1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W221 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) over cleavage membrane over waterproof membrane on solid backing.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded High-performance unsanded Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
 2. Ceramic Tile Installation : TCNA W222 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; one-coat cement mortar bed (thickset) over cleavage membrane over waterproof membrane on solid backing.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement
 3. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W244C or TCNA W244F; thinset mortar on cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board over vapor-retarder membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded grout.
 4. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W245 or TCNA W248; thinset mortar on glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board.

- a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement grout.
- D. Bathtub Wall Installations with No Shower Head, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:
- 1. Ceramic Tile Installation : TCNA B413; thinset mortar on water-resistant gypsum board.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement grout.
- E. Bathtub/Shower Wall Installations, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:
- 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA B411 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) over vapor-retarder membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement
 - 2. Ceramic Tile Installation : TCNA B412; thinset mortar organic adhesive water-cleanable, tile-setting epoxy on cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Dry-set Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded grout.
- F. Shower Receptor and Wall Installations:
- 1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA B414 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1B ANSI A108.1C; cement mortar bed (thickset) over vapor-retarder membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement grout.
 - 2. Ceramic Tile Installation : TCNA B420; thinset mortar on waterproof membrane over coated glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board coated glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board over vapor-retarder membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement High-performance sanded grout.
 - 3. Ceramic Tile Installation : TCNA B421; thinset mortar on waterproof membrane over solid backing.

- a. Ceramic Tile Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
- b. Thinset Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
- c. Grout: Sand-portland cement Standard sanded cement Standard unsanded cement
High-performance sanded .

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 095123 - ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical tiles and concealed suspension systems for ceilings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Evaluation reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to NVLAP.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical ceiling area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class B materials.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS, GENERAL

- A. Acoustical Tile Standard: Comply with ASTM E 1264.
- B. Metal Suspension System Standard: Comply with ASTM C 635.
- C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL TILES

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. **Armstrong World Industries, Inc.**
 2. **CertainTeed Corp.**
 3. **USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.**
- B. Classification:
- C. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range
- D. NRC: Type E-400 mounting according to ASTM E 795.
- E. Edge/Joint Detail: Beveled, kerfed and rabbeted, or tongue and grooved, or butt. All public areas to get the textured, tegular ceiling tiles.
- F. Thickness: **3/4 inch (19 mm)**
- G. Modular Size: As indicated on Drawings

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. **Armstrong World Industries, Inc.**
 2. **USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.**
- B. Access: Upward.
- C. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations complying with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical tile ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M and seismic design requirements indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- C. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as indicated on reflected ceiling plans.

END OF SECTION 095123

SECTION 096816 - SHEET CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes woven carpet and carpet cushion.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
 - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet.
 - 2. Carpet type, color, and dye lot.
 - 3. Seam locations, types, and methods.
 - 4. Pile direction.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Warrant: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced Installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Ratings: Where indicated, provide carpet and carpet cushion identical to those of assemblies tested for fire response per NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with CRI 104.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, runs, excess static discharge, and delamination.
 - 3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Carpet Cushion: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet cushion installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty includes consequent removal and replacement of carpet and accessories.
 - 2. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet cushion due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 - 3. Failure includes, but is not limited to, permanent indentation or compression.
 - 4. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOVEN CARPET

- A. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Fiber Content: 80 percent wool; 20 percent nylon 6.
- D. Face Construction: [Axminster] [Wilton] [Velvet] <Insert construction>.
- E. Pile Characteristic: [Level-loop] [Cut] [Cut-and-loop] pile.
- F. Yarn Twist: <Insert twist in TPI (TPCM)>.
- G. Yarn Count: <Insert yarn count>.
- H. Density: <Insert oz./cu. yd. (g/cu. cm)>.
- I. Pile Thickness: <Insert inches (mm)> for finished carpet[per ASTM D 6859].
- J. Rows: <Insert number of lengthwise tufts per inch (mm)>.

- K. Pitch: <Insert number of rows in 27 inches (686 mm)>.
- L. Face Weight: <Insert oz./sq. yd. (g/sq. m)>.
- M. Total Weight: <Insert oz./sq. yd. (g/sq. m)> for finished carpet.
- N. Backing: [Manufacturer's standard.] [As follows:]
 - 1. Chain Warp: <Insert material>.
 - 2. Stuffer Warp: <Insert material>.
 - 3. Shot or Fill Weft: <Insert material>.
 - 4. Backcoating: <Insert backcoating>.
- O. Applied Soil-Resistance Treatment: [Manufacturer's standard material] <Insert treatment>.
- P. Antimicrobial Treatment: [Manufacturer's standard material] <Insert treatment>.
- Q. Performance Characteristics: As follows:
 - 1. Appearance Retention Rating: Heavy traffic, 3.0 minimum per ASTM D 7330.
 - 2. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Not less than [0.45 W/sq. cm] [0.22 W/sq. cm].
 - 3. Dry Breaking Strength: Not less than 100 lbf (445 N) per ASTM D 2646.
 - 4. Resistance to Insects: Comply with AATCC 24.
 - 5. Colorfastness to Crocking: Not less than 4, wet and dry, per AATCC 165.
 - 6. Colorfastness to Light: Not less than 4 after [40] [60] <Insert number> AFU (AATCC fading units) per AATCC 16, Option E.
 - 7. Electrostatic Propensity: Less than 3.5 kV per AATCC 134.
 - 8. Emissions: Provide carpet that complies with testing and product requirements of CRI's "Green Label Plus" program.
 - 9. Emissions: Provide carpet that complies with the product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.2 CARPET CUSHION

- A. Traffic Classification: CCC Class III, extra-heavy traffic.
- B. Fiber Cushion: Rubberized hair, mothproofed and sterilized.
- C. Polyurethane-Foam Cushion: [Grafted prime] [Densified] [Bonded] [Mechanically frothed].
- D. Performance Characteristics: As follows:
 - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
 - 2. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): per ASTM C 423.
 - 3. Emissions: Provide carpet cushion that complies with testing and product requirements of CRI's "Green Label" program.
 - 4. Emissions: Provide carpet cushion that complies with the product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.3 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet cushion manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet and is recommended or provided by carpet manufacturer carpet and carpet cushion manufacturers.
 - 1. Use adhesives with VOC content not more than 50 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Use adhesives that comply with the product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Tackless Carpet Stripping: Water-resistant plywood, in strips as required to match cushion thickness and that comply with CRI 104, Section 12.2.
- D. Seam Adhesive: Hot-melt adhesive tape or similar product recommended by carpet manufacturer for sealing and taping seams and butting cut edges at backing to form secure seams and to prevent pile loss at seams.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet performance. Examine carpet for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. Preparation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 7.3, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates.
- E. Installation: Comply with CRI 104 and carpet manufacturer's, carpet and carpet cushion manufacturers' written installation instructions for the following:
 - 1. Direct-Glue-Down Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 9, "Direct Glue-Down Installation."
 - 2. Double-Glue-Down Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 10, "Double-Glue-Down Installation."
 - 3. Carpet with Attached-Cushion Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 11, "Attached-Cushion Installations."
 - 4. Preapplied Adhesive Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 11.4, "Pre-Applied Adhesive Systems (Peel and Stick)."

5. Hook-and-Loop Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 11.5, "Hook and Loop Technology."
 6. Stretch-in Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 12, "Stretch-in Installations."
 7. Stair Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 13, "Carpet on Stairs" for stretch-in glue-down installation.
- F. Comply with carpet manufacturer's written recommendations and Shop Drawings for seam locations and direction of carpet; maintain uniformity of carpet direction and lay of pile. At doorways, center seams under the door in closed position.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with carpet.
- H. Cut and fit carpet to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- I. Extend carpet into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- J. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- K. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders to comply with CRI 104, Section 15, "Patterned Carpet Installations" and with carpet manufacturer's written recommendations.
- L. Comply with carpet cushion manufacturer's written recommendations. Install carpet cushion seams at 90-degree angle with carpet seams.
- M. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet:
1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet manufacturer.
 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet surface.
 3. Vacuum carpet using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- N. Protect installed carpet to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protecting Indoor Installations."

END OF SECTION 096816

SECTION 097200 - WALL COVERINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vinyl wall covering.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Samples: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified, full width by 36-inch- (914-mm-) Insert dimension long in size.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product test reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates according to test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
2. Fire-Growth Contribution: No flashover and heat and smoke release according to NFPA 286.

2.2 VINYL WALL COVERING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Arc-Com Fabrics, Inc.
 2. Blue Mountain Wallcoverings, Inc.
 3. Brewster Wallcovering Company.
 4. DesignTex Inc.; a Steelcase company.
 5. D. L. Couch; Wallcovering Source.
 6. Eykon; Wallcovering Source.
 7. Fidelity Industries, Inc.
 8. F. Schumacher & Co.
 9. Gilford.
 10. Innovations in Wallcoverings, Inc.
 11. Knoll, Inc.
 12. Len-Tex Corporation.
 13. MDC Wallcoverings.
 14. RJF International Corporation.
 15. Roysons Corporation.
 16. Source One Wallcovering.
 17. U.S. Vinyl Manufacturing Corporation.
 18. Versa.
 19. Vescom America.
 20. Warner Company (The).
 21. Wolf-Gordon.
 22. York Wallcoverings.
 - 23.
- B. Description: Provide mildew-resistant products in rolls from same production run and complying with the following:
1. FS CCC-W-408D and CFFA-W-101-D for Type II, Medium Duty products.
- C. Width: 54 inches (1372 mm)
- D. Backing: Scrim Osnaburg Drill Nonwoven fabric.
1. Fiber Content: Cotton Polyester Polycotton Polyester cellulose
- E. Repeat: Random Insert horizontal and vertical dimensions of repeat.
- F. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.

1. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Primer/Sealer: Mildew resistant, complying with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and recommended in writing by primer/sealer and wall-covering manufacturers for intended substrate.
- C. Metal Primer: Interior ferrous metal primer complying with Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and recommended in writing by primer and wall-covering manufacturers for intended substrate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, mildew, and incompatible primers.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 5 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
 2. Plaster: Allow new plaster to cure. Neutralize areas of high alkalinity. Prime with primer recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 3. Metals: If not factory primed, clean and apply primer recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 4. Gypsum Board: Prime with primer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 5. Painted Surfaces: Treat areas susceptible to pigment bleeding.
- D. Check painted surfaces for pigment bleeding. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finish with fine sandpaper.
- E. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
- F. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.

3.2 WALL-COVERING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.

- B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
- C. Install strips in same order as cut from roll.
- D. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
- E. Match pattern **72 inches (1830 mm)** above the finish floor.
- F. Install seams vertical and plumb at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from outside corners and **3 inches (75 mm)** from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
- G. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
- H. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.
- I. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
- J. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION 097200

SECTION 097523 - STONE WINDOW STOOLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes stone window stools.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and manufactured product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for stone window stools, including dimensions and profiles of stone units.
- C. Samples:
 - 1. For each stone type indicated. Include two or more Samples in each set and show the full range of variations in appearance characteristics in completed Work.
 - 2. For each color of grout pointing mortar required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STONE, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain each variety of stone, regardless of finish, from a single quarry, whether specified in this Section or in another Section of the Specifications, with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- B. Varieties and Sources: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide stone of varieties and from sources complying with Section 044200 "Exterior Stone Cladding."

2.2 GRANITE

- A. Material Standard: Comply with ASTM C 615.
- B. Description: Uniform, fine medium-grained, color as selected by Architect from a full range of manufacturer's samples stone without veining.
- C. Finish: Polished Honed
- D. Match Architect's samples.

2.3 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II.
 - 1. Low-Alkali Cement: Not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Aggregate: ASTM C 144.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Adhesives, General: Use only adhesives formulated for stone and ceramic tile and recommended by their manufacturer for the application indicated.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Boiardi Products; a QEP company.
 - b. Bonstone Materials Corporation.
 - c. Bostik, Inc.
 - d. C-Cure.
 - e. Custom Building Products.
 - f. Jamo Inc.
 - g. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - h. MAPEI Corporation.
 - i. Mer-Krete Systems; ParexLahabra, Inc.
 - j. Prospec; Bonsal American; a division of Oldcastle Architectural Products Group.
 - k. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - l. TEC, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc.; an H. B. Fuller company.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Grout Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, composed of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate to produce required color.
- C. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6, packaged.
- D. Polymer-Modified Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7, packaged.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bostik, Inc.
 - b. C-Cure.

- c. Custom Building Products.
 - d. DAP Inc.
 - e. Jamo Inc.
 - f. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - g. MAPEI Corporation.
 - h. Mer-Krete Systems; ParexLahabra, Inc.
 - i. Prospec; Bonsal American; a division of Oldcastle Architectural Products Group.
 - j. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
 - k. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - l. TEC, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc.; an H. B. Fuller company.
- E. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, packaged, chemical-resistant, water-cleanable, tile-setting and -grouting epoxy.
- 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Boiardi Products; a QEP company.
 - b. Bostik, Inc.
 - c. C-Cure.
 - d. Custom Building Products.
 - e. Jamo Inc.
 - f. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - g. MAPEI Corporation.
 - h. Mer-Krete Systems; ParexLahabra, Inc.
 - i. Prospec; Bonsal American; a division of Oldcastle Architectural Products Group.
 - j. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - k. TEC, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc.; an H. B. Fuller company.

2.5 POINTING MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 - 1. Low-Alkali Cement: Not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Aggregate: ASTM C 144, except with 100 percent passing **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
 - 1. White Aggregates: Natural white sand or ground white stone.
 - 2. Colored Aggregates: Natural-colored sand or ground marble, granite, or other durable stone; of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- D. Water: Potable.

2.6 STONE ACCESSORIES

- A. Temporary Setting Shims: Rigid plastic shims, nonstaining to stone, sized to suit joint thickness.
- B. Cleaner: Stone cleaner specifically formulated for stone types, finishes, and applications indicated, as recommended by stone producer. Do not use cleaning compounds containing acids, caustics, harsh fillers, or abrasives.
- C. Stone Sealer: Colorless, stain-resistant sealer that does not affect color or physical properties of stone surfaces, as recommended by stone producer for application indicated.
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Bostik, Inc.**
 - b. **Custom Building Products.**
 - c. **Hillyard, Inc.**
 - d. **HMK Stone Care; ACI International.**
 - e. **Miracle Sealants Company.**
 - f. **Stone Care International.**
 - g. **Summitville Tiles, Inc.**

2.7 STONE FABRICATION

- A. Select stone for intended use to prevent fabricated units from containing cracks, seams, and starts that could impair structural integrity or function.
- B. Cut stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated and to comply with fabrication and construction tolerances recommended by applicable stone association.
 - 1. Where items are installed with adhesive or where stone edges are visible in the finished work, make items uniform in thickness and of identical thickness for each type of item; gage back of stone if necessary.
 - 2. Dress joints straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fabricate molded work to produce stone shapes with a uniform profile throughout entire unit length and with precisely formed arris slightly eased to prevent snipping, and matched at joints between units.
 - 1. Produce moldings with machines having abrasive shaping wheels made to reverse contour of molding shape; do not sculpt moldings.
- D. Window Stools:
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: **7/8 inch (22 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Edge Detail: **3/8-inch (10-mm)** bevel at top edge, bottom corner slightly eased
 - 3. Ends: Extend stools beyond opening as indicated and finish ends to match exposed edge.
 - 4. Joints: Fabricate in one piece without joints.
 - 5. Fabricate window stools in one piece unless otherwise indicated.

2.8 MIXES

- A. Mortar, General: Comply with referenced standards and with manufacturers' written instructions for mix proportions, mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures needed to produce mortar of uniform quality and with optimum performance characteristics.
 - 1. Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated. Do not use calcium chloride.
 - 2. Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious materials, water, and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer unless otherwise indicated. Discard mortar when it has reached initial set.
- B. Setting Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N Type O.
- C. Pointing Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N Type O. Provide pointing mortar mixed to match Architect's sample and complying with the following:
 - 1. Pigmented Pointing Mortar: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not exceed pigment-to-cement ratio of 1:10, by weight.
 - 2. Colored-Aggregate Pointing Mortar: Produce color required by combining colored aggregates with portland cement of selected color.
- D. Grout: Comply with mixing requirements of referenced ANSI standards and with manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SETTING STONE, GENERAL

- A. Do necessary field cutting as stone is set. Use power saws with diamond blades to cut stone. Cut lines straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snipping.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Level: Do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, **3/8 inch (10 mm)** maximum.
- B. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary from average joint width more than plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
- C. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): Do not exceed **1/32-inch (0.8-mm)** difference between planes of adjacent units.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Stone Window Stools: Set stone window stools on masonry in a full bed of mortar.

- B. Stone Window Stools: Set stone window stools on wood or metal framing or wood blocking in a full bed of water-cleanable epoxy adhesive. Hold adhesive back from exposed edges of joints to allow for grouting.
- C. Where joints are indicated in window stools, maintain alignment across joints. Use temporary shims as necessary to maintain joint width.
- D. Grout Point joints after setting stone.

3.4 GROUTING JOINTS

- A. Grout stone to comply with ANSI A108.10.
 - 1. Use sanded grout mixture for joints wider than **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
 - 2. Use unsanded grout mixture for joints **1/8 inch (3 mm)** and narrower.
- B. Remove temporary shims before grouting.
- C. Tool joints uniformly and smoothly with plastic tool.

3.5 POINTING JOINTS WITH MORTAR

- A. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing temporary shims, dust, and mortar particles. Where setting spots occur at joints, rake out excess setting mortar or plaster to a depth of not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
- B. Point stone joints by placing pointing mortar in layers of not more than **3/8 inch (10 mm)**. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Apply mortar first to areas where depths are greater than surrounding areas until a uniform depth is formed.
- C. Tool joints when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard. Use a round jointer having a diameter **1/8 inch (3 mm)** larger than width of joint.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean stone window stools as work progresses. Remove adhesive, grout, mortar, and sealant smears immediately.
- B. Clean stone window stools no fewer than six days after completion of grouting and pointing, using clean water and soft rags or stiff-bristle fiber brushes. Do not use wire brushes, acid-type cleaning agents, cleaning compounds with caustic or harsh fillers, or other materials or methods that could damage stone.
- C. Sealer Application: Apply stone sealer to comply with stone producer's and sealer manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.

END OF SECTION 097523

SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
 - 1. Exposed concrete masonry units (CMU).
 - 2. Exterior hollow metal doors and frames.
 - 3. Exposed metal piping and conduit
 - 4. Exposed metal framing.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 5 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
 - 2. Division 9 Section "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. MPI Standards:
 - 1. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
 - 2. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85%; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that are from same production run (batch mix) as materials applied and that are packaged for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Quantity: Furnish an additional 5%, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by ICI Paints.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule.

2.3 BLOCK FILLERS

- A. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI #4.

2.4 METAL PRIMERS

- A. Cementitious Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #26.

2.5 EXTERIOR ALKYD PAINTS

- A. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (Semigloss): MPI #94 (Gloss Level 5).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12%.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
 - 1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
 - 2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Galvanized and Pre-primed Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.5 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. CMU Substrates:
 - 1. Latex System: MPI EXT 4.2A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior latex (semigloss).
- B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.3B.
 - a. Prime Coat: galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).
- C. Pre-primed Metal Substrates:
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 4.2A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Touch-up existing as required with equivalent type primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).

END OF SECTION 099113

SECTION 101400 - SIGNS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of signs:
 - 1. Panel signs.
 - 2. Cast metal plaques.
 - 3. Dimensional Building Letters and Numbers

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data: Include manufacturer's construction details relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes for each type of sign required.
- C. Shop Drawings: Provide shop drawings for fabrication and erection of signs. Include plans, elevations, and large-scale sections of typical members and other components. Show anchors, grounds, reinforcement, accessories, layout, and installation details.
 - 1. Provide message list for each sign required.
 - 2. Furnish full-size rubbings for metal plaque.
- D. Samples: Provide the following samples of each sign component for initial selection of color, pattern and surface texture as required and for verification of compliance with requirements indicated.
 - 1. Samples for initial selection of color, pattern, and texture:
 - a. Cast Acrylic Sheet and Plastic Laminate: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual sections of material including the full range of colors available for each material required.
 - b. Aluminum: Samples of each finish type and color, on 6-inch-long sections of extrusions and not less than 4-inch squares of sheet or plate, showing the full range of colors available.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: For each separate type of sign required, obtain signs from one source from a single manufacturer.

- B. Design Criteria: The drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of signs and are based on the specific type and model indicated. Signs by other manufacturers may be considered provided that deviations in dimensions and profiles are minor and do not change the design concept as judged by the Architect. The burden of proof of equality is on the proposer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:
 - 1. Manufacturers of Panel Signs:
 - a. Mohawk Sign Systems.
 - b. Spanjer Brothers, Inc.
 - c. Vomar Products, Inc.
 - 2. Manufacturers of Cast Plaques:
 - a. Andco Industries Corp.
 - b. A.R.K. Ramos Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - c. Leeds Aluminum Letters, Inc.
 - 3. Manufacturers of Dimensional Letters:
 - a. Graphics Systems
 - b. Andco Industries Corp.
 - c. A.R.K. Ramos Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
 - e. Gemini, Inc.
 - f. Matthews International Corp.
 - g. Metal Arts.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Laminate: Provide type ES high-pressure plastic laminate engraving stock 1/8" thick with face and core plies in contrasting colors, in finishes and color combinations indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from the manufacturer's standards.
- B. Aluminum Castings: Provide aluminum castings of alloy and temper recommended by the aluminum producer and finisher for the casting process used and for the use and finish indicated.
- C. Fasteners: Use concealed fasteners fabricated from metals that are not corrosive to the sign

material and mounting surface.

- D. Anchors and Inserts: Use nonferrous metal or hot-dipped galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

2.3 PANEL SIGNS

- A. Panel Signs: Comply with requirements indicated for materials, thicknesses, finishes, colors, designs, shapes, sizes, and details of construction.
 - 1. Produce smooth, even, level sign panel surfaces, constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch measured diagonally.
- B. Unframed Panel Signs: Fabricate signs with edges mechanically and smoothly finished to conform with the following requirements:
 - 1. Edge Condition: Beveled.
 - 2. Edge Color for Plastic Laminate: Edge color same as background.
 - 3. Corner Condition: Corners rounded.
- C. Graphic Content and Style: Provide sign copy that complies with the requirements indicated for size, style, spacing, content, position, material, finishes, and colors of letters, numbers, and other graphic devices.
- D. Engraved Copy: Machine-engrave letters, numbers, symbols, and other graphic devices into sign panel on the face indicated to produce precisely formed copy, incised to uniform depth. Use high-speed cutters mechanically linked to master templates in a pantographic system or equivalent process capable of producing characters of the style indicated with sharply formed edges.
 - 1. Engraved Plastic Laminate: Engrave through the exposed face ply of the plastic laminate sheet to expose the contrasting core ply.

2.4 DIMENSIONAL LETTERS AND NUMBERS

- A. Cast Letters and Numbers: Form individual letters and numbers by casting. Produce characters with smooth, flat faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, free from pits, scale, sand holes, or other defects. Cast lugs into the back of characters and tap to receive threaded mounting studs. Comply with requirements indicated for finish, style, and size.
 - 1. Metal: Aluminum.
 - 2. Metal: Bronze.
- B. Cutout Letters and Numbers: Cut letters and numbers from solid plate material of thickness indicated. Produce precisely cut characters with square cut, smooth edges. Comply with requirements indicated for finish, style, and size.
 - 1. Metal: Aluminum.

2. Metal: Bronze.
 3. Metal: Stainless steel.
 4. Metal: Brass
 5. Metal: Chrome Plated.
- C. Fabricated Letters and Numbers: Fabricate letters and numbers to required sizes and styles, using metals and thicknesses indicated. Form exposed faces and sides of characters to produce surfaces free from warp and distortion. Include internal bracing for stability and attachment of mounting accessories. Comply with requirements indicated for finish, style, and size.
1. Aluminum Sheet: Not less than 0.090 inch thick. Fabricate by the heliarc welding process.
 2. Bronze Plate: Not less than 20 gage.
 3. Stainless Steel Sheet: Not less than 18 gage for face and 22 gage for returns.
 4. Letter Height: 2 inches.
 5. Letter Height: 4 inches.
 6. Letter Height: 6 inches.
 7. Letter Height: 8 inches.
 8. Letter Height: 10 inches.
 9. Letter Height: 12 inches.
 10. Letter Height: 18 inches.
 11. Letter Style: Helvetica.
 12. Letter Style: Gothic.
 13. Letter Style: Roman.
 14. Letter Style: Futura.
 15. Illuminated Units: Illuminate dimensional letters and numbers in the manner indicated using manufacturer's standard lighting components including neon tubes, transformers, insulators, and other components. Make provisions for servicing and concealed connection to the building system. Coordinate electrical characteristics with those of the power supply provided.
 - a. Backlighting Units: Provide concealed white neon tubes of the number indicated or required by size of the characters. Include manufacturer's hardware for projection mounting of the characters at the distance from the wall surface indicated.
 - b. Facelighting Units: Fabricate letter faces from translucent plastic sheet of thickness indicated. Attach letters to sheet metal back channels. Provide neon tubes of the number and spacing required to illuminate letter faces evenly.

2.5 CAST METAL PLAQUES

- A. Plaques: Castings shall be free from pits, scale, sand holes, or other defects. Comply with requirements specified for metal, border style, background texture, and finish and with requirements shown for thickness, size, shape, and copy. Hand-tool and buff borders and raised copy to produce the manufacturer's standard satin polished finish. Refer to "Finish" article for other finish requirements.
1. Metal: Aluminum.
 2. Border Style: Plain bevel.
 3. Background Texture: Manufacturer's standard pebble texture.
 4. Background Finish: Provide the manufacturer's dark background.

5. Size: 24" x 24".

B. Text for Plaque:

Architect: Mishra Architecture PLLC
Structural Engineer: (As Indicated on Drawings)
Mechanical Engineer: (As Indicated on Drawings)
Electrical Engineer: (As Indicated on Drawings)

General Contractor John Q. Doe
Mechanical Contractor John Q. Doe
Electrical Contractor John Q. Doe

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Colors and Surface Textures: For exposed sign material that requires selection of materials with integral or applied colors, surface textures or other characteristics related to appearance, provide color matches indicated, or if not indicated, as selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's standards.
- B. Metal Finishes: Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual" for finish designations and applications recommendations.
- C. Aluminum Finishes: Finish designations prefixed by "AA" conform to the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - 1. Class II Clear Anodized Fine Satin Finish: AA-M31C21A31 (Mechanical Finish: Fine satin directional textured; Chemical Finish: Fine matte etched finish; Anodic Coating: Class II Architectural, clear film thicker than 0.4 mil).
 - 1) Color: As selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's standard colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate sign units and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of the type described and in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at the height indicated, with sign surfaces free from distortion or other defects in appearance.
- B. Wall Mounted Panel Signs: Attach panel signs to wall surfaces using the methods indicated below:
 - 1. Silicone-Adhesive Mounting: Use liquid silicone adhesive recommended by the sign manufacturer to attach sign units to irregular, porous, or vinyl-covered surfaces. Use double-sided vinyl tape where recommended by the sign manufacturer to hold the sign in place until the adhesive has fully cured.

- C. Cast Metal Plaques: Mount plaques using the standard method recommended by the manufacturer for the type of wall surface indicated.
 - 1. Concealed Mounting: Mount the plaques by inserting threaded studs into tapped lugs on the back of the plaque. Set in predrilled holes filled with quick-setting cement.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At completion of the installation, clean soiled sign surfaces in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Protect units from damage until acceptance by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 101400

SECTION 102819 - TUB AND SHOWER DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes frameless shower doors and enclosures.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For tub and shower doors and enclosures.
- C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of tub and shower doors and enclosures that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period without monetary limitation.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Threeyears from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FRAMELESS ENCLOSURES

- A. Frameless glass panels with mounting and operating hardware of types and sizes required to support imposed loads.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawingsor comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Agalite; Hartung Glass Industries.**
 - b. **Alumax; Sapa Extrusions, Inc.**

- c. American Shower Door.
 - d. Artistcraft Shower Doors.
 - e. Basco Corporation.
 - f. Cardinal Shower Enclosures; Hoskin & Muir, Inc.
 - g. Century Bathworks.
 - h. Fleurco Shower Doors.
 - i. Kohler Co.
 - j. Southeastern Aluminum Products, Inc.
- B. Hardware and Trim: Manufacturer's standard units as indicated and as required for complete installation.
- 1. Materials:
 - a. Stainless Steel:
 - 1) Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish
- C. Swinging Doors: Hinged for 90 degrees out swing. Self-centering when doors are within 15 degrees of closed position. Soft bulb seal or wipes; affixed to door to direct water back into enclosure and provide a tight water seal.
- 1. Hinges: Side hinged
 - 2. Door Pulls: Back-to-back towel bars
 - a. Towel Bar Length: 18 inches (457 mm)
- D. Fixed Panels: Side mounts; match hinges in material and finish.
- E. Glazing: Safety glazing materials complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II, with permanently etched identification acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1. Glass Nominal Thickness: As determined by manufacturer based on panel size
 - 2. Clear Glass: ASTM C 1048, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear), Kind FT.
 - 3. Protective, Self-Cleaning, Glass Coating: Clear float glass with a coating on first surface having both photocatalytic and hydrophilic properties that act to loosen dirt and to cause water to sheet evenly over the glass instead of beading.
- F. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard stainless-steel or other noncorrosive fasteners.
- G. Sealant: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
- H. Materials:
- 1. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 302 or 304.
 - 2. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 302 or 304.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Prepare and install as recommended in manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are contained in GANA's "Glazing Manual."
- B. Clean substrates, removing projections, filling voids, and sealing joints.
- C. Set units level, plumb, and true to line, without warp or rack of frames and panels, and anchor securely in place.
- D. Fasten components securely in place, with provisions for thermal movement. Install with concealed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install components to drain and return water to tub or shower.
- F. Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
- G. Repair, refinish, or replace components damaged during installation.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust operating parts and hardware for smooth, quiet operation and watertight closure. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
- B. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 102819

SECTION 104413 - FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fire protection cabinets for fire extinguishers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated, Fire Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.
- B. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- B. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:
 - 1. Sheet: **ASTM B 209** (ASTM B 209M).
 - 2. Extruded Shapes: **ASTM B 221** (ASTM B 221M).
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

- D. Break Glass: Clear annealed float glass, ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, 1.5 mm thick, single strength.

2.2 FIRE PROTECTION CABINET I

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

- 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Fire End & Croker Corporation;** Insert product name or designation.
 - b. **J. L. Industries, Inc., a division of Activar Construction Products Group;** Insert product name or designation.
 - c. **Kidde Residential and Commercial Division, Subsidiary of Kidde plc;** Insert product name or designation.
 - d. **Larsen's Manufacturing Company;** Insert product name or designation.
 - e. **Modern Metal Products, Division of Technico Inc.;** Insert product name or designation.
 - f. **Moon-American;** Insert product name or designation.
 - g. **Potter Roemer LLC;** Insert product name or designation.
 - h. **Watrous Division, American Specialties, Inc.;** Insert product name or designation.
 - i.

- B. Cabinet Construction: 1-hour fire rated

- 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from **0.0428-inch- (1.1-mm-)** thick, cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** thick, fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

- C. Cabinet Material: Stainless-steel sheet.

- D. Semirecessed Cabinet: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated; with one-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend). Provide where walls are of insufficient depth for recessed cabinets but are of sufficient depth to accommodate semirecessed cabinet installation.

- 1. Rolled-Edge Trim: **4-inch (102-mm)** backbend depth.

- E. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim. Provide where walls are of insufficient depth for semirecessed cabinet installation.

- F. Cabinet Trim Material: Extruded-aluminum shapes Stainless-steel sheet

- G. Door Material: Stainless-steel sheet

- H. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame

- I. Door Glazing: Break glass

- J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
- K. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 - 2. Break-Glass Strike: Manufacturer's standard metal strike, complete with chain and mounting clip, secured to cabinet.
 - 3. Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle
 - 4. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated as directed by Architect Insert location.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet glazing on Drawings.
 - 2) Application Process: Silk-screened Engraved Etched Decals
 - 3) Lettering Color: Red
 - 4) Orientation: Horizontal
- L. Finishes:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel paint for the following:
 - a. Exterior of cabinet , door, and trim, except for those surfaces indicated to receive another finish.
 - b. Interior of cabinet and door.
 - 2. Stainless Steel: No. 2B
 - a. Color: Match Architect's sample.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub), with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated. Miter and weld joints and grind smooth.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed and prepare recesses as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

- B. Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Fire Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
- D. Identification: Apply decals at locations indicated.
- E. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- F. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."

- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Amerex Corporation.
 - b. Ansul Incorporated.
 - c. Badger Fire Protection.
 - d. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
 - e. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
 - f. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - g. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
 - h. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division; Subsidiary of Kidde plc.
 - i. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - j. Moon American.
 - k. Nystrom Building Products.
 - l. Pem All Fire Extinguisher Corp.
 - m. Potter Roemer LLC.
 - n. Pyro-Chem; Tyco Safety Products.
 - o. Strike First Corporation of America.
 - 2. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Stored-Pressure Antifreeze Water Type UL-rated 2-A, 2.5-gal. (9.5-L) nominal capacity, with water and approved antifreeze solution mixed for temperatures as low as minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C) in stainless-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.
- C. Regular Dry-Chemical Type Insert drawing designation: UL-rated Insert capacity nominal capacity, with sodium bicarbonate-based dry chemical in manufacturer's standard enameled container.
- D. Clean-Agent Type in Steel Container UL-rated 1-A:10-B:C, 10-lb (4.5-kg) nominal capacity, with HFC blend agent and inert material in enameled-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Amerex Corporation.
 - b. Ansul Incorporated.
 - c. Badger Fire Protection.
 - d. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
 - e. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
 - f. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - g. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
 - h. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - i. Nystrom Building Products.
 - j. Potter Roemer LLC.
 - k. Strike First Corporation of America.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
 - a. Orientation: Vertical

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Mounting Brackets: 54 inches (1372 mm) above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- C. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

SECTION 105113 - METAL LOCKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Knocked-down corridor lockers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product data.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and locker identification system and numbering sequence.

C. Samples: For each color specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Knocked-Down Metal Lockers: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Requirements: For lockers indicated to be accessible, comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC A117.1.

2.2 KNOCKED-DOWN CORRIDOR LOCKERS

- A. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. **Art Metal Products**; Artisan Quiet K.D. Heavy-Duty Corridor Heavy-Duty Corridor Elite Magnum Student K.D. Standard K.D. Standard Quiet.
 2. **ASI Storage Solutions Inc**; Traditional Traditional Plus.
 3. **DeBourgh Mfg. Co**; Worley SAT Knock Down.
 4. **General Storage Systems Ltd**; Decor Tri-Lok Corona Decor Tri-Lok Eclipse Decor Tri-Lok Eclipse II Decor Tri-Lok Smart Line Decor Tri-Lok Titan Decor Tri-Lok Titan II.
 5. **Hadrian Manufacturing, Inc**; Emperor.
 6. **List Industries Inc**; Classic Superior KD Heavy Duty Corridor Heavy Duty Corridor Deluxe Heavy Duty Corridor Premier Marquis Student KD Standard Quiet KD Whisper Quiet.
 7. **Lyon Workspace Products, LLC**; Standard Heavy Duty.
 8. **Olympus Lockers & Storage Products, Inc**; Standard KD Heavy Duty Corridor Athena.
 9. **Penco Products, Inc**; Guardian Guardian Plus Guardian Medallion Vanguard.
 10. **Republic Storage Systems Company**; Heavy Duty Corridor Quiet Single Point II Corridor Standard.
 11. **Shanahan's Limited**; Archette Deluxe-16 Deluxe-20.
- B. **Doors:** One piece; fabricated from **0.060-inch (1.52-mm)** **0.075-inch (1.90-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet; formed into channel shape with double bend at vertical edges and with right-angle single bend at horizontal edges.
1. Doors less than **12 inches (305 mm)** wide may be fabricated from **0.048-inch (1.21-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet.
 2. Doors for box lockers less than **15 inches (381 mm)** wide may be fabricated from **0.048-inch (1.21-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet.
 3. Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard reinforcing angles, channels, or stiffeners for doors more than **15 inches (381 mm)** wide; welded to inner face of doors.
 4. Stiffeners: Manufacturer's standard full-height stiffener fabricated from **0.048-inch (1.21-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to inner face of doors.
 5. Door Style: Unperforated panel.
- C. **Body:** Assembled by riveting or bolting body components together. Fabricate from unperforated steel sheet with thicknesses as follows:
1. Tops, Bottoms, and Intermediate Dividers: **0.024-inch (0.61-mm)** nominal thickness, with single bend at sides.
 2. Backs and Sides: **0.024-inch (0.61-mm)** nominal thickness, with full-height, double-flanged connections.
 3. Shelves: **0.024-inch (0.61-mm)** nominal thickness, with double bend at front and single bend at sides and back.
- D. **Frames:** Channel formed; fabricated from **0.060-inch (1.52-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet; lapped and factory welded at corners; with top and bottom main frames factory welded into vertical main frames. Form continuous, integral, full-height door strikes on vertical main frames.

- E. Hinges:
 - 1. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard, steel, continuous or knuckle type.
- F. Recessed Door Handle and Latch: Stainless-steel cup with integral door pull, recessed so locking device does not protrude beyond door face; pry and vandal resistant.
 - 1. Single-Point Latching: Nonmoving latch hook designed to engage bolt of built-in combination or cylinder lock with steel padlock loop that projects through recessed cup and is finished to match metal locker body. Equip each door with one latch hook.
- G. Door Handle and Latch for Box 16-Person Lockers: Stainless-steel strike plate with integral pull; with steel padlock loop that projects through metal locker door.
- H. Locks: Digital keypad locks.
- I. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plastic plates, with numbers and letters at least **3/8 inch (9 mm)** high.
- J. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed type hooks, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.
- K. Coat Rods: Manufacturer's standard.
- L. Legs: **6 inches (152 mm)** high; formed by extending vertical frame members, or fabricated from **0.075-inch (1.90-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to bottom of locker with closed front and end bases.
- M. Individual Sloping Tops: Fabricated from **0.024-inch (0.61-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- N. Recess Trim: Fabricated from **0.048-inch (1.21-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- O. Filler Panels: Fabricated from **0.036-inch (0.91-mm)** **0.048-inch (1.21-mm)** manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than **0.036-inch (0.91-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- P. Finished End Panels: Fabricated from **0.024-inch (0.61-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- Q. Center Dividers: Fabricated from **0.024-inch (0.61-mm)** nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- R. Materials:
 - 1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
 - 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with **A60 (ZF180)** zinc-iron, alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.
- S. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate metal lockers square, rigid, without warp, and with metal faces flat and free of dents or distortion. Make exposed metal edges safe to touch and free of sharp edges and burrs.
- B. Fabricate each metal locker with an individual door and frame; individual top, bottom, and back; and common intermediate uprights separating compartments. Factory weld frame members of each metal locker together to form a rigid, one-piece assembly.
- C. Equipment: Provide each locker with an identification plate and the following equipment:
 - 1. Single-Tier Units: Shelf, one double-prong ceiling hook, and two single-prong wall hooks.
 - 2. Double-Tier Units: One double-prong ceiling hook and two single-prong wall hooks.
 - 3. Triple-Tier Units: One double-prong ceiling hook.
- D. Knocked-Down Construction: Fabricate metal lockers using nuts, bolts, screws, or rivets for nominal assembly at Project site preassembly at plant prior to shipping.
- E. Accessible Lockers: Fabricate as follows:
 - 1. Locate bottom shelf no lower than 15 inches (381 mm) above the floor.
 - 2. Where hooks, coat rods, or additional shelves are provided, locate no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor.
- F. Continuous Base: Formed into channel or zee profile for stiffness, and fabricated in lengths as long as practical to enclose base and base ends of metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
- G. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated in lengths as long as practical, without visible fasteners at splice locations; finished to match lockers.
- H. Individual Sloping Tops: Fabricated in width to fit one locker frame in lieu of flat locker tops; with integral back; finished to match lockers. Provide wedge-shaped divider panels between lockers.
- I. Recess Trim: Fabricated with minimum 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) face width and in lengths as long as practical; finished to match lockers.
- J. Filler Panels: Fabricated in an unequal leg angle shape; finished to match lockers. Provide slip-joint filler angle formed to receive filler panel.
- K. Boxed End Panels: Fabricated with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide edge dimension, and designed for concealing fasteners and holes at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
- L. Finished End Panels: Designed for concealing unused penetrations and fasteners, except for perimeter fasteners, at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
- M. Center Dividers: Full-depth, vertical partitions between bottom and shelf; finished to match lockers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install lockers level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.
 - 1. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than **36 inches (910 mm)** o.c. Using concealed fasteners, install anchors through backup reinforcing plates, channels, or blocking as required to prevent metal distortion.
 - 2. Anchor single rows of metal lockers to walls near top and bottom of lockers of lockers and to floor.
 - 3. Anchor back-to-back metal lockers to floor.
- B. Knocked-Down Lockers: Assemble with standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on door faces or face frames.
- C. Welded Lockers: Connect groups together with standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on face frames.
- D. Trim: Fit exposed connections of trim, fillers, and closures accurately together to form tight, hairline joints, with concealed fasteners and splice plates.
 - 1. Attach recess trim to recessed metal lockers with concealed clips.
 - 2. Attach filler panels with concealed fasteners.
 - 3. Attach sloping-top units to metal lockers, with closures at exposed ends.
- E. Fixed Locker Benches: Provide no fewer than two pedestals for each bench, uniformly spaced not more than **72 inches (1830 mm)** apart.

END OF SECTION 105113

SECTION 107516 - GROUND-SET FLAGPOLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes ground-set flagpoles made from aluminum

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operating characteristics, fittings, accessories, and finishes for flagpoles.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For flagpoles.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flagpoles to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flagpoles as complete units, including fittings, accessories, bases, and anchorage devices, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design flagpole assemblies.
- B. Structural Performance: Flagpole assemblies, including anchorages and supports, shall withstand design loads indicated within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine according to NAAMM FP 1001. Basic wind speed as noted on the structural drawings.

2.3 ALUMINUM FLAGPOLES

- A. Aluminum Flagpoles: Cone Entasis-tapered flagpoles fabricated from seamless extruded tubing complying with ASTM B 241/B 241M, Alloy 6063, with a minimum wall thickness of **3/16 inch (4.8 mm)**.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Acme/Lingo Flagpoles LLC.**
 - b. **American Flagpole; a Kearney-National Inc. company.**
 - c. **Baartol Company.**
 - d. **Concord Industries, Inc.**
 - e. **Eder Flag Manufacturing Company, Inc.**
 - f. **Ewing Flagpoles.**
 - g. **Morgan-Francis Flagpoles and Accessories.**
 - h. **Pole-Tech Company Inc.**
 - i. **U.S. Flag & Flagpole Supply, LP.**
- B. Exposed Height: **40 feet (12 m)**
- C. Metal Foundation Tube: Manufacturer's standard corrugated-steel foundation tube, **0.060-inch (1.52-mm)** wall thickness with **3/16-inch (4.8-mm)** steel bottom plate and support plate; **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** diameter, steel ground spike; and steel centering wedges welded together. Galvanize foundation tube after assembly. Furnish loose hardwood wedges at top of foundation tube for plumbing pole.
- D. Sleeve for Aluminum Flagpole: Fiberglass or PVC pipe foundation sleeve, made to fit flagpole, for casting into concrete foundation.

2.4 FITTINGS

- A. Finial Ball: Flush-seam ball, sized as indicated or, if not indicated, to match flagpole-butt diameter.
1. **0.063-inch (1.6-mm)** spun aluminum, with gold anodic finish.
- B. Internal Halyard, Winch System: Manually operated winch with control stop device and removable handle, stainless-steel cable halyard, and concealed revolving truck assembly with plastic-coated counterweight and sling. Furnish flush access door secured with cylinder lock. Finish truck assembly to match flagpole.
1. Halyard Flag Snaps: Stainless-steel swivel snap hooks with neoprene or vinyl covers. Furnish two per halyard.
- C. Internal Halyard, Cam Cleat System: **5/16-inch- (8-mm-)** diameter, braided polypropylene halyard; cam cleat; and concealed revolving truck assembly with plastic-coated counterweight and sling. Furnish flush access door secured with cylinder lock. Finish truck assembly to match flagpole.

1. Halyard Flag Snaps: Stainless-steel swivel snap hooks with neoprene or vinyl covers. Furnish two per halyard.
- D. External Halyard: Ball-bearing, nonfouling, revolving truck assembly of cast metal with continuous ~~5/16-inch-~~ (8-mm-) diameter, braided polypropylene halyard Insert type and ~~9-inch~~ (228-mm) cast-metal cleats with fasteners. Finish exposed metal surfaces to match flagpole.
 1. Halyards and Cleats: One at each flagpole.
 2. Halyard Flag Snaps: Stainless-steel swivel snap hooks with neoprene or vinyl covers. Furnish two per halyard.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Drainage Material: Crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; coarse aggregate.
- B. Sand: ASTM C 33/C 33M, fine aggregate.
- C. Elastomeric Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane joint sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Natural Satin Finish: AA-M32, fine, directional, medium satin polish; buff complying with AA-M20; seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare uncoated metal flagpoles that are set in foundation tubes by painting below-grade portions with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Foundation Excavation: Excavate to neat clean lines in undisturbed soil. Remove loose soil and foreign matter from excavation and moisten earth before placing concrete. Place and compact drainage material at excavation bottom.
- C. Foundation Tube: Place foundation tube, center, and brace to prevent displacement during concreting. Place concrete. Plumb and level foundation tube and allow concrete to cure.
- D. Sleeves: Locate and secure sleeves in forms by bracing to reinforcement and forms.
- E. Place concrete, as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete." Compact concrete in place by using vibrators. Moist-cure exposed concrete for no fewer than seven days or use nonstaining curing compound.

- F. Trowel exposed concrete surfaces to a smooth, dense finish, free of trowel marks, and uniform in texture and appearance. Provide positive slope for water runoff to perimeter of concrete base.

3.2 FLAGPOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install flagpoles where indicated and according to Shop Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Foundation Tube: Place flagpole in tube, seated on bottom plate between steel centering wedges, and install hardwood wedges to secure flagpole in place. Place and compact sand in foundation tube and remove hardwood wedges. Seal top of foundation tube with a 2-inch (50-mm) layer of elastomeric joint sealant and cover with flashing collar.

END OF SECTION 107516

SECTION 115213 - PROJECTION SCREENS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Electrically operated, front-projection screens and controls.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 115213.19 "Rear Projection Screens."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts and types of front-projection screens. Include the following:
 - 1. Location of seams in viewing surfaces.
 - 2. Anchorage details, including connection to supporting structure for suspended units.
 - 3. Location of wiring connections for electrically operated units.
 - 4. Wiring diagrams for electrically operated units.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTRICALLY OPERATED, FRONT-PROJECTION SCREENS

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard units consisting of case, screen, motor, controls, mounting accessories, and other components necessary for a complete installation.
 - 1. Controls: Remote, key-operated, three-position control switch.
 - a. Provide locking cover plates for switches.
 - b. Provide key-operated, power-supply switch.
 - c. Provide infrared remote control consisting of battery-powered transmitter and receiver.
 - d. Provide video interface control for connecting to projector. Projector provides signal to raise or lower screen.
 - 2. Motor in Roller: Instant-reversing motor of size and capacity recommended by screen manufacturer; with permanently lubricated ball bearings, automatic thermal-overload protection, and positive-stop action to prevent coasting.
 - 3. Screen Mounting: Top edge securely anchored to rigid metal roller and bottom edge formed into a pocket holding a 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter metal rod with ends of rod protected by plastic caps.

4. Tab Tensioning: Provide units that have a durable low-stretch cord, such as braided polyester, on each side of screen that is connected to edge of screen by tabs to pull screen flat horizontally.
- B. Suspended, Electrically Operated Screens with Automatic Ceiling Closure and with Tab Tensioning: Motor-in-roller units designed and fabricated for suspended mounting; with bottom of case composed of two panels, fully enclosing screen, motor, and wiring; one panel hinged and designed to open and close automatically when screen is lowered and fully raised, the other removable or openable for access to interior of case.
 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Da-Lite Screen Company**; Tensioned Advantage Deluxe Electrol.
 - b. **Draper Inc**; Signature/Series V Ultimate Access/Series V.
 - c. **Stewart Filmscreen Corporation**; ABT Trap Door ElectriScreen Stealth Trap Door ElectriScreen.
 - d. Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation.
 2. Provide screen case with trim flange to receive ceiling finish constructed to be installed with underside flush with ceiling constructed to be installed with ceiling finish applied to underside.

2.2 FRONT-PROJECTION SCREEN MATERIAL

- A. Multipurpose Reflective Viewing Surface: Peak gain of not less than 1.8, and half-gain angle of at least 25 degrees from the axis of the screen surface.
 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Stewart Filmscreen Corporation**; Ultramatte 200.
 - b. Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation.
- B. High-Gain Reflective Viewing Surface: Peak gain of not less than 2.4, and half-gain angle of at least 20 degrees from the axis of the screen surface.
 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Da-Lite Screen Company**; High Power.
 - b. Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation.
- C. Material: Vinyl-coated, glass-fiber fabric
- D. Edge Treatment: Without black masking borders.
- E. Size of Viewing Surface: **84 by 84 inches (2133 by 2133 mm)**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install front-projection screens at locations indicated to comply with screen manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install front-projection screens with screen cases in position and in relation to adjoining construction indicated. Securely anchor to supporting substrate in a manner that produces a smoothly operating screen with vertical edges plumb and viewing surface flat when screen is lowered.
 - 1. Install low-voltage controls according to NFPA 70 and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - a. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Use UL-listed plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 2. Test electrically operated units to verify that screen controls, limit switches, closures, and other operating components are in optimum functioning condition.

END OF SECTION 115213

SECTION 122200 - CURTAINS AND DRAPES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes draperies and drapery tracks.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Tracks: Include maximum weights of draperies that can be supported.
 - 2. Fabrics and textile treatments.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Tracks: Show installation and anchorage details and locations of controls.
 - 2. Draperies: Show sizes, locations, and details of installation.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificate for each fabric treated with flame retardant.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTAL

- A. Maintenance data.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions by field measurements before drapery fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRAPERY TRACKS

- A. Manually Operated Track

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Forest Group USA, Inc.**
 - b. **Kirsch.**
 - c. **Silent Gliss USA Inc.**
 - d. **Springs Window Fashions.**
2. Corded Window Covering Product Standard: Provide drapery tracks operated by pull cords complying with WCMA A 100.1.
3. Construction: Extruded aluminum, slotted for mounting at interval of not more than **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c., and bendable to radii indicated.
 - a. Support Capability: **60 lb (27 kg)** mounted on track length indicated.
 - b. Finish: Manufacturer's standard
4. Mounting Brackets: Aluminum, of type suitable for fastening track to surface indicated and designed to support weight of track assembly and drapery plus force applied to operate track.
 - a. Mounting Surface: Drapery pocket
 - b. Size: Adjustable
5. Installation Fasteners: Sized to support track assembly and drapery, and fabricated from metal compatible with track, brackets, and supporting construction. Provide two fasteners to fasten each bracket to supporting construction.
6. Operation: Baton
 - a. Draw: One way, stack as indicated on Drawings One way, stack left One way, stack right Two way, center opening.
 - b. Operating Hardware Location: On stack side
7. Carriers: Slides with hooks
 - a. Master Carriers: Overlap.
8. End Stops: Manufacturer's standard with track end cap.
9. Pulleys: Heavy duty.

2.2 DRAPERIES

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fabrics treated with fire retardants, provide products that pass NFPA 701 as determined by testing of fabrics that were treated using treatment-application method intended for use for this Project by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. **Barjan Manufacturing Ltd.**

2. Contract Shading Systems.
3. County Draperies, Inc.
4. Creative Draperies Inc.
5. DFB Sales Inc.
6. Fabricut.
7. Fabtex.
8. Quiltcraft Industries, Inc.
9. Standard Textile Co., Inc.
10. Wesco Fabrics, Inc.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each color and pattern of drapery fabric and trim from one dye lot.

D. Drapery

1. Heading: As selected by Owner and approved by Franchise.
1. Drapery Fabric: As selected by Owner and approved by Franchise.
2. Lining Fabric:
 - a. Lining Type: Water resistant
1. Manufacturer: As selected by Owner and approved by Franchise.
 - a. Textile Treatments: Stain repellent; and flame retardant, polymer type
2. Textile Trim: As selected by Owner and approved by Franchise.
3. Tiebacks: As selected by Owner and approved by Franchise.
4. Hem Weights: ~~1-inch-~~ (25-mm-) square lead weights

2.3 DRAPERY FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate draperies in heading styles and fullnesses indicated. Fabricate headings to stand erect. If less than a full width of fabric is required to produce panel of specified fullness, use equal widths of not less than one-half width of fabric located at ends of panel.
 1. One-Way-Stacking Draperies: Add ~~5 inches~~ (127 mm) to overall width for returns.
 2. Center-Opening Draperies: Add ~~10 inches~~ (254 mm) to overall width for overlap.
- B. Seams: Sew vertical seams with twin-needle sewing machine with selvage trimmed and overlocked. Join widths so that patterns match and vertical seams lay flat and straight without puckering. Horizontal seams are not acceptable.
- C. Side Hems: Double-turned, ~~1-1/2-inch-~~ (38-mm-) wide hems consisting of three layers of fabric, and blindstitched so that stitches are not visible on face of drapery.

- D. Bottom Hems: Double-turned, **4-inch-** (102-mm-) wide hems consisting of three layers of fabric, and weighted and blindstitched so that weights and stitches are not visible on face of drapery.
- E. Linings: Equal to widths of drapery fabric and joined to drapery fabric at top by inside invisible seam, and hand stitched at side hems and shadowed with **1-1/2-inch** (38-mm) return of face fabric.
 - 1. Bottom Hem: Blind stitch to drapery fabric.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DRAPERY TRACK INSTALLATION

- A. Install track systems according to manufacturer's written instructions, level and plumb, and at height and location in relation to adjoining openings as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Isolate metal parts of tracks and brackets from concrete, masonry, and mortar to prevent galvanic action. Use tape or another method recommended in writing by track manufacturer.

3.2 DRAPERY INSTALLATION

- A. Where draperies abut overhead construction, hang draperies so that clearance between headings and overhead construction is **1/4 inch** (6.4 mm).
- B. Where draperies extend to floor, install so that bottom hems clear finished floor by not more than **1 inch** (25 mm) and not less than **1/2 inch** (13 mm).
- C. Where draperies extend to windowsill, install so that bottom hems hang above sill line and clear sill line by not more than **1/2 inch** (13 mm).
- D. After hanging draperies, test and adjust each track to produce unencumbered, smooth operation.
- E. Steam and dress down draperies as required to produce crease- and wrinkle-free installation.
- F. Remove and replace draperies that are stained or soiled.

END OF SECTION 122200

SECTION 123640 - STONE COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes stone countertops.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and manufactured product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each stone type indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of stone countertops.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of construction to receive stone countertops by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain each variety of stone, regardless of finish, from a single quarry, whether specified in this Section or in another Section of the Specifications, with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
 - 1. Make stone slabs available for examination by Architect.

2.2 GRANITE Insert drawing designation

- A. Material Standard: Comply with ASTM C 615.
- B. Finish: Polished Honed Final selection to be made by Architect after samples are provided for approval.

2.3 ADHESIVES, GROUT, SEALANTS, AND STONE ACCESSORIES

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Boiardi Products; a QEP company.
 - b. Bonstone Materials Corporation.
 - c. Bostik, Inc.
 - d. C-Cure.
 - e. Custom Building Products.
 - f. Jamo Inc.
 - g. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - h. MAPEI Corporation.
 - i. Mer-Krete Systems; ParexLahabra, Inc.
 - j. Prospec; Bonsal American; a division of Oldcastle Architectural Products Group.
 - k. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - l. TEC, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc.; an H. B. Fuller company.
- B. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, chemical-resistant, water-cleanable, tile-setting and -grouting epoxy.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Boiardi Products; a QEP company.
 - b. Bostik, Inc.
 - c. C-Cure.
 - d. Custom Building Products.
 - e. Jamo Inc.
 - f. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - g. MAPEI Corporation.
 - h. Mer-Krete Systems; ParexLahabra, Inc.
 - i. Prospec; Bonsal American; a division of Oldcastle Architectural Products Group.
 - j. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - k. TEC, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc.; an H. B. Fuller company.
- C. Sealant for Countertops: Manufacturer's standard sealant of characteristics indicated below that complies with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and will not stain the stone it is applied to.
 1. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, mildew resistant, acid curing, silicone Insert joint sealant.
 2. Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, neutral curing, silicone; Class 25
 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Stone Sealer: Colorless, stain-resistant sealer that does not affect color or physical properties of stone surfaces, as recommended by stone producer for application indicated.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Bostik, Inc.**
 - b. **Custom Building Products.**
 - c. **Hillyard, Inc.**
 - d. **HMK Stone Care System.**
 - e. **Miracle Sealants Company.**
 - f. **Stone Care International Inc.**
 - g. **Summitville Tiles, Inc.**

2.4 STONE FABRICATION

- A. Select stone for intended use to prevent fabricated units from containing cracks, seams, and starts that could impair structural integrity or function.
- B. Fabricate stone countertops in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated.
 1. Dress joints straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Fabricate molded edges with machines having abrasive shaping wheels made to reverse contour of edge profile to produce uniform shape throughout entire length of edge and with precisely formed arris slightly eased to prevent snipping, and matched at joints between units. Form corners of molded edges as indicated with outside corners slightly eased unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Finish exposed faces of stone to comply with requirements indicated for finish of each stone type required and to match approved Samples and mockups. Provide matching finish on exposed edges of countertops, splashes, and cutouts.
- C. General: Comply with recommendations in MIA's "Dimension Stone - Design Manual VI."
- D. Nominal Thickness: Provide thickness indicated, but not less than **7/8 inch (22 mm)** Gage backs to provide units of identical thickness.
- E. Splashes: Provide **3/4-inch- (20-mm-)** thick backsplashes and end splashes unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints.
- G. Joints: Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field, with joints at locations indicated and **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** in width.
- H. Cutouts and Holes:
 1. Undercounter Fixtures: Make cutouts for undercounter fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 2. Counter-Mounted Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF COUNTERTOPS

- A. General: Install countertops over plywood subtops with full spread of water-cleanable epoxy adhesive.
- B. General: Install countertops by adhering to supports with water-cleanable epoxy adhesive.
- C. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated. Shim and adjust stone to locations indicated, with uniform joints of widths indicated and with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships
- D. Space joints with **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** gap for filling with grout. .Use temporary shims to ensure uniform spacing.
 1. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- E. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Use power saws with diamond blades to cut stone. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
- F. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall with water-cleanable epoxy adhesive. Leave **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** gap between countertop and splashes for filling with sealant. Use temporary shims to ensure uniform spacing.
- G. Grout joints to comply with ANSI A108.10. Remove temporary shims before grouting. Tool grout uniformly and smoothly with plastic tool.
- H. Apply sealant to joints and gaps specified for filling with sealant; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants." Remove temporary shims before applying sealant.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean countertops as work progresses. Remove adhesive, grout, mortar, and sealant smears immediately.
- B. Clean stone countertops no fewer than six days after completion of sealant installation, using clean water and soft rags. Do not use wire brushes, acid-type cleaning agents, cleaning compounds with caustic or harsh fillers, or other materials or methods that could damage stone.

- C. Sealer Application: Apply stone sealer to comply with stone producer's and sealer manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 123640

SECTION 131100 – SWIMMING POOL

GENERAL

1.01 Section Includes

- A. Shotcrete concrete (gunite) swimming pool and pool accessories.

GENERAL:

- A. The Contractor shall contract with a pool contractor who shall provide a design build pool. The drawings and specifications are general criteria only.
- B. CODES:
 - a. Comply with applicable requirements of regulatory agencies and governing bodies, including the payment of fees and cost for securing, coordinating, and executing the following: permits, approvals, inspections, tests, details, licenses, taxes, bonds, standards, codes, ordinances and statutes.
- C. THE WORK SHALL INCLUDE:
 - a. Construction of the complete swimming pool with the related construction, embracing all equipments accessories shown or implied and necessary to accomplish the complete operation of the pool and spa in accordance with the drawings, specifications, and as required by the stat and local coddles and health department, whether or not all minor items are shown or specified.

1.02 Submittals

- A. Product Data: Submit Manufacturer's product literature, samples and installation instructions.
- B. Shop drawings: Indicate pool layout, configuration, pool tank cross sections, lighting locations, equipment locations, dimensions, details of assembly, and utility rough-in locations.
- C. Provide sample of sand-blasted finish with three coats of epoxy corrosion-resistant paint finish on exposed joists in the pool ceiling.

1.03 Regulatory Requirements

- A. Conform to applicable code for pools and associated equipment.

1.04 Warranty

- A. In addition to equipment manufacturer's warranties and other guarantee provisions of the contract, submit a two (2) year written guarantee on all equipment and a ten (10) year warranty on the structure of the pool.

PRODUCTS

2.01 Components

- A. Gunitite concrete
- B. Marbelette finish, light blue.
- C. Decorative swimming pool tile immediately below coping 6" x 6".
- D. Bullnose brick or tile coping. Finger grip edge where required by code.
- E. Cementitious acrylic splatter-knockdown finish as manufactured by Spray-Crete Industries, Inc. Textured Deck System.
- F. Wall Tile: 12" x 12" and 6 feet high.
- G. Pumps, filters, automatic chemical feeds for turnkey system meeting local codes.
- H. Signage meeting local codes.

2.02 Equipment:

- A. PUMP: The circulation pump shall be a 220 Volts electrical supply 1.5 horse power capacity.
- B. CLEANER BOOSTER PUMP: 220 Volts
- C. FILTER: The filter shall have a filtration capacity of 4.9 sqft., with an overall tank diameter of 30 inches. The filter shall be equipped with a 2 inch ABS slide valve (backwash valve).
- D. HEATER: Gas heater 400,000 Btu/hr. capacity with 110/220 Volt electric supply for sparking and digital display. Contractor to provide gas plumbing line and connections as well as venting ducts and connections.
- E. FLOWMETER: The flowmeter shall be 2" in diameter and shall be located at a distance no less than 5 times the pipe diameter on the influent-side of the flowmeter, and no less than 10 times the pipe diameter on the effluent-side of the flowmeter.
- F. CHLORINATOR: The chlorinator shall be an offline feeder with a 29" capacity and a 1.41 mg/L erosion rate.
- G. VALVES: The valves shall be either the 2-port or 3-port CPVC Neverlube variety.
- H. PIPING: All piping shall be Schedule 40 PVC.
- I. AUTOFILL: The auto fill chamber is to be sunk below deck level with an 8 inches diameter access lid. Provide filled concrete access lid. The auto fill shall include an approved pressurized backflow prevention device for one-way feed of water to the auto fill device.
- J. WALL RETURNS: The wall returns shall be 1 ½" eyeball inlet type fittings, spaced no greater than 15 feet from each other, weighing 8 oz. Each.
- K. SKIMMERS: Quantity Two (2): The skimmers shall include a tan lid and frame 2" slip with 1 ½" slip reducers, including basket.
- L. MAIN DRAINS: The main drains shall be two drains, each 8 inches in diameter, with self-locking grates, a minimum of 48 inches apart. Each drain shall include an anti-vortex cover.
- M. LIGHT: The lights shall be 500 W, 120 V with a stainless steel niche, grounding screw, wired to time clock for light circuit only, wired to GFCI, and shall include 100 feet of cord. Each light shall include a junction box mounted a minimum of 18 inches above the water level.

2.03 Accessories:

- A. LADDER: Ladder shall be with cycloc treads and rubber bumpers. Ladder shall include two (2) compression anchors.
- B. HANDRAIL: Handrail shall include two (2) compression anchors.
- C. DECK: Deck shall be a minimum 3 ½" concrete slab. Drainage away from pool edge to be 2% slope. Pour control joints to eliminate cracking in deck pour.
- D. CANTILEVER EDGE: Cantilever edge must be poured continuously over the bond beam of the pool.
- E. HANDICAP LIFT: The pool handicap lift shall be installed to meet ADA requirements.
- F. START-UP EQUIPMENT
 - a. "Pool Rules" sign.
 - b. Thermometer
 - c. Test kit
 - d. Vacuum head
 - e. Vacuum hose
 - f. Brush
 - g. Shepherd hooks
 - h. Leaf skimmer
 - i. Telescoping Pole
 - j. "No Lifeguard on Duty" Sign
 - k. USCG Approved 30" Ring Buoy with 25 feet throw line, provide two (2) each in wall cabinets.

EXECUTION

3.01 Examination

- A. Verify excavation surfaces are clean, smooth, and without voids or irregularities.
- B. Verify grounding of electrical and metallic components before shotcreting. Electrician will be responsible for all the service, wiring, grounding as per equipment required in the pool and spa .

3.02 Installation – Guniting Concrete Pool

- A. Install mesh reinforcement and gun apply concrete to prepared excavation.
- B. Develop concrete average thickness recommended and Trowel smooth.
- C. Coordinate installation of mechanical and electrical components; connect to utilities.
- D. Install pool tank finish in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION 131100

SECTION 142400 - HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hydraulic passenger and service elevators.

1.2 UNIT PRICES

- A. Unit Prices: Rock excavation for cylinder well holes is paid for under the unit price indicated in the Contract and as specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include capacities, sizes, performances, operations, safety features, finishes, and similar information.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and large-scale details indicating service at each landing, machine room layout, coordination with building structure, relationships with other construction, and locations of equipment.
 - 2. Indicate maximum dynamic and static loads imposed on building structure at points of support, and maximum and average power demands.
- C. Samples: For exposed finishes.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For elevator equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by elevator manufacturer certifying that hoistway, pit, and machine room layout and dimensions, as shown on Drawings, and electrical service including standby power generator, as shown and specified, are adequate for elevator system being provided.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For elevators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Inspection and Acceptance Certificates and Operating Permits: As required by authorities having jurisdiction for normal, unrestricted elevator use.

- C. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: Submit a continuing maintenance proposal from Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard five-year maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair, restore, or replace elevator work that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 3 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. American Crescent Elevator Mfg., Corp.
 - 2. Fujitec America, Inc.
 - 3. KONE Inc.
 - 4. Minnesota Elevator, Inc.
 - 5. Mowrey Elevator Co.
 - 6. Otis Elevator Co.
 - 7. Schindler Elevator Corp.
 - 8. Schumacher Elevator Co.
 - 9. ThyssenKrupp Elevator.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with Section 407 in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC A117.1.

2.3 ELEVATORS

- A. Elevator System, General: Manufacturer's standard elevator systems. Unless otherwise indicated, manufacturers' standard components shall be used, as included in standard elevator systems and as required for complete system.
- B. Elevator Description:
 - 1. Elevator Number(s): As shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Emergency Elevator Number(s): As shown on Drawings.

3. Service Elevator Number(s): As shown on Drawings.
4. Type: Under-the-car single cylinder.
5. Type: Holeless, beside-the-car, single-acting, single cylinder.
6. Type: Holeless, beside-the-car, telescoping, single cylinder.
7. Type: Holeless, beside-the-car, roped hydraulic, single cylinder.
8. Rated Load: **2500 lb (1135 kg)** and **3500 lb (1589 kg)**
9. Freight Loading Class for Service Elevators: Class A.
10. Rated Speed: **150 fpm (0.76 m/s)**
11. Operation System: Single automatic
12. Auxiliary Operations:
 - a. Standby power operation.
 - b. Battery-powered lowering.
 - c. Automatic dispatching of loaded car.
 - d. Nuisance call cancel.
 - e. Emergency hospital Priority service at all floors.
13. Security Feature: Card-reader operation
14. Car Enclosures:
 - a. Inside Width: **As per drawings for Elevators 1 and 2;**
 - b. Inside Depth: **As per drawings for Elevators 1 and 2;**
 - c. Inside Height: **112 inches (2845 mm)** to underside of ceiling.
 - d. Front Walls (Return Panels): Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish with integral car door frames.
 - e. Car Fixtures: Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - f. Side and Rear Wall Panels: Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - g. Reveals: Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - h. Door Faces (Interior): No. 8 finish Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish
 - i. Ceiling: Reflective metallic-finish, plastic-laminate, bronze.
 - j. Handrails: **1/2 by 2 inches (13 by 50 mm)** rectangular satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish, at sides and rear of car.
 - k. Floor prepared to receive resilient flooring (specified in Section 096500 "Resilient Flooring").
15. Hoistway Entrances:
 - a. Width: **48 inches (1219 mm)** and **54 inches (1372 mm)**
 - b. Height: **96 inches (2438 mm)**
 - c. Type: Single-speed center opening
 - d. Frames all floors Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - e. Doors all floors Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish
16. Hall Fixtures Satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
17. Additional Requirements:
 - a. Provide inspection certificate in each car, mounted under acrylic cover with frame made from satin stainless steel, No. 4 finish.
 - b. Provide hooks for protective pads in all cars and one complete set(s) of full-height protective pads.

2.4 SYSTEMS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Pump Units: Positive-displacement type with a maximum of 10 percent variation between no load and full load and with minimum pulsations.
 - 1. Pump shall be submersible type with submersible squirrel-cage induction motor, and shall be suspended inside oil tank from vibration isolation mounts
 - 2. Motor shall have wye-delta or starting.
- B. Hydraulic Silencers: System shall have hydraulic silencer containing pulsation-absorbing material in blowout-proof housing at pump unit.
- C. Hydraulic Fluid: Elevator manufacturer's standard fire-resistant fluid with additives as needed to prevent oxidation of fluid, corrosion of cylinder and other components, and other adverse effects.
- D. Hydraulic Fluid: Nontoxic, biodegradable, fire-resistant fluid made from vegetable oil with antioxidant, anticorrosive, antifoaming, and metal-passivating additives and approved by elevator manufacturer for use with elevator equipment.
 - 1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Hydro Safe" by Hydro Safe Oil Division, Inc.
- E. Protective Cylinder Casing: PVC or HDPE pipe casing complying with ASME A17.1/CSA B44, of sufficient size to provide not less than **1-inch (25-mm)** clearance from cylinder and extending above pit floor. Casing shall have means of monitoring effectiveness to comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- F. Guides: Roller guides; polymer-coated, nonlubricated sliding guides; or sliding guides with guide-rail lubricators. Provide guides at top and bottom of car and counterweight frames.

2.5 OPERATION SYSTEMS

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard microprocessor operation system as required to provide type of operation indicated.
- B. Auxiliary Operations: In addition to primary operation system features, provide the following operational features for elevators where indicated:
 - 1. Single-Car Standby Power Operation: On activation of standby power, car is returned to a designated floor and parked with doors open. Car can be manually put in service on standby power, either for return operation or for regular operation, by switches in control panel located at main lobby. Manual operation causes automatic operation to cease.
 - 2. Single-Car Battery-Powered Lowering: When power fails, car is lowered to the lowest floor, opens its doors, and shuts down. System includes rechargeable battery and automatic recharging system.
 - 3. Group Standby Power Operation: On activation of standby power, cars are returned to lowest floor and parked with doors open. If a car cannot be returned, it is removed from the system. One car is selected for service on standby power by a switch located at main lobby

4. Group Battery-Powered Lowering: When power fails, cars are lowered to the lowest floor, open their doors, and shut down. System includes rechargeable battery and automatic recharging system.
5. Independent Service: Keyswitch in car-control station removes car from group operation and allows it to respond only to car calls.
6. Emergency Hospital Service: Service is initiated by a keyswitch at designated floors. One elevator is removed from group operation and directed to the floor where service was initiated. Car is placed in operation by selecting a floor and pressing door close button or by operating keyswitch to put car in independent service. After responding to floor selected or being removed from independent service, car is returned to group operation.

C. Security Feature: Security feature shall not affect emergency firefighters' service.

1. Card-Reader Operation: System uses card readers at car-control stations to authorize calls. Security system determines which landings and at what times calls require authorization by card reader. Provide stripe-swipe card reader integral with each car-control station.
 - a. Security access system equipment is specified in Section 281300 "Access Control." not in the Contract.
2. Keyswitch Operation: Push buttons are activated and deactivated by security keyswitches at car-control stations.

2.6 DOOR REOPENING DEVICES

- A. Infrared Array: Provide door reopening device with uniform array of 36 or more microprocessor-controlled, infrared light beams projecting across car entrance. Interruption of one or more light beams shall cause doors to stop and reopen.
- B. Nudging Feature: After car doors are prevented from closing for predetermined adjustable time, through activating door reopening device, a loud buzzer shall sound and doors shall begin to close at reduced kinetic energy.

2.7 CAR ENCLOSURES

- A. General: Provide steel-framed car enclosures with nonremovable wall panels, with removable car roof, access doors, power door operators, and ventilation.
- B. Materials and Finishes: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
 1. Enameled-Steel Wall Panels: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet. Provide with factory-applied enamel finish; colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 2. Stainless-Steel Wall Panels: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from stainless-steel sheet.
 3. Stainless-Steel Doors: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated by laminating stainless-steel sheet to exposed faces and edges of enameled cold-rolled steel doors using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.

4. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on car doors.
5. Sills: Extruded aluminum, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick.
6. Luminous Ceiling: Fluorescent light fixtures and ceiling panels of translucent acrylic or other permanent rigid plastic.
7. Ceiling: Flush panels, with incandescent downlights in the center of four low-voltage downlights in each panel. Align ceiling panel joints with joints between wall panels.
8. Handrails: Manufacturer's standard handrails, of shape, metal, and finish indicated.

2.8 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Hoistway Entrance Assemblies: Manufacturer's standard horizontal-sliding, door-and-frame hoistway entrances complete with track systems, hardware, sills, and accessories. Frame size and profile shall accommodate hoistway wall construction.
 1. Where gypsum board wall construction is indicated, frames shall be self-supporting with reinforced head sections.
- B. Fire-Rated Hoistway Entrance Assemblies: Door and frame assemblies shall comply with NFPA 80 and be listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction based on testing at as close-to-neutral pressure as possible according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.
 1. Fire-Protection Rating: 1-1/2 hours Insert rating with 30-minute temperature rise of 450 deg F (250 deg C).
- C. Materials and Fabrication: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
 1. Stainless-Steel Frames: Formed from stainless-steel sheet.
 2. Stainless-Steel Doors and Transoms: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from stainless-steel sheet or by laminating stainless-steel sheet to exposed faces and edges of enameled cold-rolled steel doors using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.
 3. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on doors matching door edges.
 4. Sills: Extruded aluminum, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick.
 5. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M.

2.9 SIGNAL EQUIPMENT

- A. General: Provide hall-call and car-call buttons that light when activated and remain lit until call has been fulfilled. Fabricate lighted elements with long-life lamps and acrylic or other permanent, non-yellowing translucent plastic diffusers or LEDs.
- B. Car-Control Stations: Provide manufacturer's standard recessed or semirecessed car-control stations. Mount in return panel adjacent to car door unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Provide "No Smoking" sign matching car-control station, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

- C. Emergency Communication System: Two-way voice communication system, with visible signal, which dials preprogrammed number of monitoring station and does not require handset use. System is contained in flush-mounted cabinet, with identification, instructions for use, and battery backup power supply.
- D. Firefighters' Two-Way Telephone Communication Service: Provide flush-mounted cabinet telephone jack in each car and required conductors in traveling cable for firefighters' two-way telephone communication service specified in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" Section 283112 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System."
- E. Car Position Indicator: Provide illuminated, digital-type car position indicator, located above car door or above car-control station. Also, provide audible signal to indicate to passengers that car is either stopping at or passing each of the floors served. Include travel direction arrows if not provided in car-control station.
- F. Hall Push-Button Stations: Provide hall push-button station at each landing as indicated.
- G. Hall Lanterns: Units with illuminated arrows; but provide single arrow at terminal landings. Provide one of the following:
 - 1. Units mounted in both jambs of entrance frame for each elevator.
- H. Hall Annunciator: With each hall lantern, provide audible signals indicating car arrival and direction of travel. Signals sound once for up and twice for down.
- I. Standby Power Elevator Selector Switches: Provide switches, as required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44, where indicated. Adjacent to switches, provide illuminated signal that indicates when normal power supply has failed. For each elevator, provide illuminated signals that indicate when they are operational and when they are at the designated emergency return level with doors open.
- J. Fire-Command-Center Annunciator Panel: Provide panel containing illuminated position indicators for each elevator, clearly labeled with elevator designation; include illuminated signal that indicates when elevator is operational and when it is at the designated emergency return level with doors open. Provide standby power elevator selector switch(es), as required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44, adjacent to position indicators. Provide illuminated signal that indicates when normal power supply has failed.
- K. Emergency Pictorial Signs: Fabricate from materials matching hall push-button stations, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide one sign at each hall push-button station unless otherwise indicated.

2.10 FINISH MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, Type B, exposed, matte finish.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel, Type B, pickled.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304.

- D. Stainless-Steel Bars: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- E. Stainless-Steel Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304.
- F. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221** (**ASTM B 221M**), Alloy 6063.
- G. Plastic Laminate: High-pressure type complying with NEMA LD 3, Type HGS or Type HGL.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Excavation for Cylinder: Drill well hole in each elevator pit to accommodate installation of cylinder; comply with applicable requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. If retaining first paragraph below, usually delete "waterproof" option and retain "as necessary" option. Well casing is essentially part of Contractor's means and methods unless required by authorities having jurisdiction; however, requiring a well casing helps prevent disputes if cylinder well-hole excavation is not being provided by elevator Installer.
- C. Provide waterproof well casing as necessary to retain well-hole walls.
- D. Install cylinder in protective casing within well hole. Before installing protective casing, remove water and debris from well hole and provide permanent waterproof seal at bottom of well casing.
 - 1. Align cylinders and fill space around protective casing with fine sand.
- E. Install cylinder plumb and accurately centered for elevator car position and travel. Anchor securely in place, supported at pit floor. Seal between well protective casing and pit floor with **4 inches (100 mm)** of nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
- F. Install cylinder plumb and accurately centered for elevator car position and travel. Anchor securely in place, supported at pit floor and braced at intervals as needed to maintain alignment. Anchor cylinder guides at spacing needed to maintain alignment and avoid overstressing guides.
- G. Sound Isolation: Mount rotating and vibrating equipment on vibration-isolating mounts to minimize vibration transmission to structure and structure-borne noise due to elevator system.
- H. Lubricate operating parts of systems as recommended by manufacturers.
- I. Leveling Tolerance: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, up or down, regardless of load and travel direction.
- J. Set sills flush with finished floor surface at landing. Fill space under sill solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
- K. Locate hall signal equipment for elevators as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. For groups of elevators, locate hall push-button stations between two elevators at center of group or at location most convenient for approaching passengers.

2. Place hall lanterns either above or beside each hoistway entrance.
3. Mount hall lanterns at a minimum of 72 inches (1829 mm) above finished floor.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing: On completion of elevator installation and before permitting elevator use (either temporary or permanent), perform acceptance tests as required and recommended by ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and by governing regulations and agencies.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Use: Limit temporary use for construction purposes to one elevator. Comply with the following requirements for each elevator used for construction purposes:
 1. Provide car with temporary enclosure, either within finished car or in place of finished car, to protect finishes from damage.
 2. Provide other protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, and procedures as needed to protect elevator and elevator equipment.
 3. Engage elevator Installer to provide full maintenance service.
 4. Engage elevator Installer to restore damaged work, if any, so no evidence remains of correction. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop, make required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate, adjust, and maintain elevator(s).

3.5 MAINTENANCE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 3 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of elevator Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper elevator operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

END OF SECTION 142400

SECTION 149133 - LAUNDRY AND LINEN CHUTES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes laundry and linen chutes.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Chase: The shaft that encloses a chute.
- B. Access Door: Door other than an intake or discharge door that penetrates the chase wall for service access to devices in the chase.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plan(s) and other details drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Product certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. **American Chute Systems, Inc.**

2. Century Chute & Supply.
3. Chute Source, LLC.
4. Chutes International.
5. Midland Chutes; a Shale-Inland, LLC company.
6. U.S. Chutes Inc.; Division of U.S.C. Group.
7. Valiant Products, Inc.
8. Western Chutes; Div. of Buchanan Company, Inc.
9. Wilkinson Hi-Rise.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing and inspecting agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated.
 1. Test Pressure: Test at atmospheric (neutral) pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.
 2. Intake Doors: Labeled, 1-1/2-hour fire-resistance rated with 30-minute temperature rise of 250 deg F (140 deg C).
 3. Discharge Doors: Labeled, 1-1/2-hour fire-resistance rated with 30-minute temperature rise of 250 deg F (140 deg C).
 4. Access Doors: Labeled, 1-1/2-hour fire-resistance rated with 30-minute temperature rise of 250 deg F (140 deg C).
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Standard: Provide chutes complying with NFPA 82.

2.3 CHUTES

- A. Chute Metal: Aluminum-coated, cold-rolled, commercial steel sheet; ASTM A 463/A 463M, Type 1, with not less than T1-40 (T1M-120) coating
 1. Thickness: 0.075 inch (1.9 mm).
- B. Chute Size: 24-inch (610-mm) diameter

2.4 DOORS

- A. Intake-Door Assemblies: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, stainless-steel self-closing units with positive latch and latch handle, with stainless-steel trim; constructed as required for performance requirements indicated; and with frame suitable for the enclosing chase construction.
 1. Door Type: Side hinged, 180-degree swing, square
 2. Size: Manufacturer's standard size for door type, chute type, and diameter indicated.
 3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard satin or No. 3 directional polish.
 4. Latchset: T-handle type that unlatches door

5. Accessible Automatic Door Operating System: Manufacturer's standard system complying with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1.
 6. Mechanical Interlocks: Interlock system for system servicing, operated from discharge door to automatically lock intake doors.
 7. Electrical Interlocks: Interlock system that is energized by opening one intake door; remaining intake doors automatically lock when system is energized.
- B. Discharge-Door Assemblies: Aluminum-coated-steel doors; horizontal-discharge, top-hinged, self-closing and latching, hopper-type door; constructed as required for performance requirements indicated; equipped with 165 deg F (74 deg C) fusible links that cause doors to close in the event of fire; with floor-mounted leg brace designed to absorb impact of material dropping against chute; and with minimum NPS 2 (DN 50) drain pipe connection.
- C. Detector System: Heat- and smoke-detecting interlock system with temperature-rise elements that locks chute doors when temperature in chute reaches a predetermined, adjustable temperature.
1. Locate smoke detector outside discharge door with solenoid to close discharge door.
 - 2.
- D. Manual Control System: Control system with manual switch that lock chute doors during shutdown hours and service operations.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Chute Fire Sprinklers: NFPA 13; manufacturer's standard, recessed, automatic, NPS 1/2 (DN 13) sprinklers; ready for piping connections.
- B. Flushing Spray Unit: NPS 3/4 (DN 19) spray-head unit located in chute above highest intake door, ready for hot-water piping connection, and with access door for spray-head and piping maintenance.
- C. Sanitizing Unit: NPS 3/4 (DN 19) disinfecting and sanitizing spray-head unit located in chute above highest intake door, including 1-gal. (3.8-L) tank and adjustable proportioning valve with bypass for manual control of sanitizing and flushing operation, ready for hot-water piping connection, and with access door for spray-head and piping maintenance.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Factory-assemble chutes to greatest extent practicable.
- B. Roof Vent: Extend vent to height above roofing surface as indicated on Drawings. Equip vent with full insect screening and metal explosion-release cap. Fabricate with roof-deck flange, counterflashing, and clamping ring of nonferrous metal compatible with chute metal.
- C. Chute Fire Sprinklers: Install internally within chute, recessed out of the chute area through which material travels, and according to NFPA 13.

- D. Equipment Access: Fabricate chutes with access for maintaining equipment located within the chute, such as flushing and sanitizing units, fire sprinklers, and plumbing and electrical connections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install and test chutes before installing enclosing chase construction.
- B. Install chutes according to NFPA 82 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install chutes plumb, without obstructions that might prevent materials from free falling within chutes.
- D. Anchor flanges of chute vents to roof curbs before installing roofing and flashing. Install chute-vent counterflashing after roofing and roof-penetration flashing are installed.
- E. Electrical Interlock System: Install according to applicable NECA 1 recommendations.
- F. Test and adjust chute components after installation. Operate doors, locks, and interlock systems to demonstrate that hardware operates properly and smoothly and electrical wiring is connected correctly.
- G. Test heat- and smoke-sensing devices for proper operation.
- H. Operate sanitizing unit through one complete cycle of chute use and cleanup, and replenish chemicals or cleaning fluids in unit containers.
- I. Do not remove labels of testing and inspecting agencies.

3.2 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain each chute and related equipment.

END OF SECTION 149133

SECTION 321713 - PARKING BUMPERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes wheel stops.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PARKING BUMPERS

- A. Concrete Wheel Stops: Precast, steel-reinforced, air-entrained concrete, 4000-psi (27.6-MPa) minimum compressive strength, 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) high by 9 inches (225 mm) wide by 72 inches (1800 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners, transverse drainage slots on underside, and a minimum of two factory-formed or -drilled vertical holes through wheel stop for anchoring to substrate.
 - 1. Mounting Hardware: Galvanized-steel lag screw, shield, and washers; 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter, 8-inch (203-mm) minimum length
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Checkers Industrial Safety Products, Inc.
 - b. GNR Technologies.
 - c. Plastic Safety Systems, Inc.
 - d. Scientific Developments, Inc.
 - e. Technoflex.
 - f. Traffic Logix.
 - 3. Embedded Markings: Molded-in, blue white yellow reflective markings, permanently inset in exposed surface.
 - 4. Mounting Hardware: Galvanized-steel lag screw, shield, and washers; 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter, 8-inch (203-mm) minimum length
 - 5. Adhesive: As recommended by wheel-stop manufacturer for adhesion to pavement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install wheel stops according to manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install wheel stops in bed of adhesive before anchoring.
- C. Securely anchor wheel stops to pavement with hardware in each preformed vertical hole in wheel stop as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 321713

SECTION 321726 - TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cast-in-place detectable warning tiles.
2. Cast-in-place detectable warning tiles.
3. Detectable warning mats applied to existing concrete paving.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for each type of exposed finish requiring color selection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TACTILE WARNING SURFACING, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for tactile warning surfaces.
1. For tactile warning surfaces composed of multiple units, provide units that when installed provide consistent side-to-side and end-to-end dome spacing that complies with requirements.

2.2 DETECTABLE WARNING TILES

- A. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Accessible truncated-dome detectable warning tiles with replaceable surface configured for setting flush in new concrete walkway surfaces, with slip-resistant surface treatment on domes and field of tile.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Access Products, Inc.
 - b. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
 - c. ADA Solutions, Inc.
 - d. Advanced Surface Systems, LLC.
 - e. AlertTile; a division of Cape Fear Systems, II, LLC.
 - f. Arcis Corp.
 - g. Armorcast Products Co.

- h. Detectable Warning Systems, Inc.
 - i. Detectile, Inc.
 - j. Engineered Plastics, Inc.; Armor-Tile.
 - k. Mingo Products, Inc.
 - l. StrongGo Industries, LLC.
 - m. Transpo Industries, Inc.
 2. Material: Molded glass- and carbon-fiber-reinforced polyester.
 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
 4. Shapes and Sizes:
 - a. Rectangular panel, 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm)
 - b. Radius panel, nominal 24 inches (610 mm) deep by 6-foot (1829-mm) outside radius.
 5. Dome Spacing and Configuration: Manufacturer's standard compliant spacing in manufacturer's standard pattern.
 6. Mounting:
 - a. Permanently embedded detectable warning tile wet-set into freshly poured concrete.
 - b. Detectable warning tile set into formed recess in concrete and adhered with mortar.
 - c. Replaceable detectable warning tile wet-set into freshly poured concrete and surface-fastened to permanently embedded anchors.
- B. Surface-Applied Detectable Warning Tiles: Accessible truncated-dome detectable warning concrete tiles configured for surface application on existing concrete walkway surfaces, with slip-resistant surface treatment on domes, field of tile, and beveled outside edges.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Access Products, Inc.
 - b. ADA Solutions, Inc.
 - c. AlertTile; a division of Cape Fear Systems, II, LLC.
 - d. Arcis Corp.
 - e. Armorcast Products Co.
 - f. Engineered Plastics, Inc.; Armor-Tile.
 - g. Transpo Industries, Inc.
 2. Material: Molded glass- and carbon-fiber-reinforced polyester.
 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
 4. Shapes and Sizes:
 - a. Rectangular panel, 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm)
 - b. Radius panel, nominal 24 inches (610 mm) deep by 6-foot (1829-mm) outside radius.
 5. Dome Spacing and Configuration: Manufacturer's standard compliant spacing manufacturer's standard pattern.
 6. Mounting: Adhered and fastened to existing concrete walkway.

2.3 DETECTABLE WARNING MATS

- A. Surface-Applied Detectable Warning Mats: Accessible truncated-dome detectable warning resilient mats, UV resistant, manufactured for adhering to existing concrete walkway surfaces, with slip-resistant surface treatment on domes, field of mat, and beveled outside edges.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **AlertTile; a division of Cape Fear Systems, II, LLC.**
 - 2. Material: Modified rubber compound, UV resistant.
 - 3. Color: Match Architect's sample As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range
 - 4. Shapes and Sizes:
 - a. Rectangular panel, **24 by 36 inches (610 by 914 mm)**
 - 5. Dome Spacing and Configuration: Manufacturer's standard compliant spacing in manufacturer's standard pattern.
 - 6. Mounting: Adhered to pavement surface with adhesive and fastened with fasteners.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of tactile warning surfaces, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Furnish Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use.
 - 2. Fastener Heads: For nonstructural connections, use flathead or oval countersunk screws and bolts with tamper-resistant heads, colored to match tile.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by manufacturer for adhering tactile warning surfacing unit to pavement.
- C. Sealant: As recommended by manufacturer for sealing perimeter of tactile warning surfacing unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF TACTILE WARNING SURFACING

- A. General: Prepare substrate and install tactile warning surfacing according to manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Place tactile warning surfacing units in dimensions and orientation indicated. Comply with location requirements of AASHTO MP 12.
- C. Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Set each detectable warning tile accurately and firmly in place and completely seat tile back and embedments in wet concrete by tamping or vibrating.

Set surface of tile flush with surrounding concrete and adjacent tiles. Remove concrete from tile surfaces and clean using methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.

- D. Removable Cast-in-Place Detectable Warning Tiles: Set each detectable warning tile accurately and firmly in place with embedding anchors and fasteners attached, and firmly seat tile back in wet concrete by tamping or vibrating. Set surface of tile flush with surrounding concrete and adjacent tiles. Remove concrete from tile surfaces and clean tiles using methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- E. Surface-Applied Detectable Warning Tiles: Prepare existing paving surface by grinding and cleaning as recommended by manufacturer. Apply adhesive to back of tiles in amounts and pattern recommended by manufacturer, and set tiles in place. Install anchor devices through face of tiles and into pavement using anchors located as recommended by manufacturer. Apply sealant in continuous bead around perimeter of installation.
- F. Surface-Applied Detectable Warning Mats: Prepare existing paving surface by grinding and cleaning as recommended by manufacturer. Apply adhesive to back of mat and set mat in place. Firmly seat mat in adhesive bed. Install anchor devices through face of mat and into pavement using anchors located as recommended by manufacturer. Set heads of anchors flush with mat surface. Apply sealant in continuous bead around perimeter of mat.
- G. Remove and replace tactile warning surfacing that is broken or damaged or does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect. Replace using tactile warning surfacing installation methods acceptable to Architect.
- H. Protect tactile warning surfacing from damage and maintain free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material.

END OF SECTION 321726

Division 16 - Electrical Specifications

- 16010 General Provisions
- 16015 Record Drawings & Documents
- 16020 Work Definitions
- 16030 Codes & Standards
- 16040 Temporary Power & Lighting
- 16050 Basic Materials and Methods
- 16055 Coordination Study
- 16060 Grounding & Bonding
- 16072 Supports & Seismic Restraints
- 16075 Identification
- 16120 Conductors & Cables
- 16130 Raceways & Boxes
- 16139 Cable Trays
- 16140 Wiring Devices
- 16145 Lighting Controls
- 16231 Packaged Engine Generator
- 16289 Transient Voltage Suppression
- 16400 Main Electrical Service
- 16410 Enclosed Switches & Circuit Breakers
- 16415 Transfer Switches
- 16441 Switchboards
- 16442 Panelboards
- 16491 Fuses
- 16511 Interior Lighting
- 16521 Exterior Lighting
- 16721 Fire Alarm
- 16753 Data Raceway System
- 16760 Audio Visual Telecommunications Systems
- 16765 Television Distribution Systems
- 16780 Background Music / Music on Hold System
- 16781 Television Accessories
- 16785 Closed Circuit Television System
- 16786 Meeting Room Systems
- 16787 Internet Access
- 16790 Terminations

SECTION 16010

GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GOVERNING CLAUSE

- A. These specifications will omit phrases such as "Contractor shall furnish and install", "unless otherwise indicated or specified", etc. for the sake of brevity, but these phrases are nevertheless implied. The Contractor is required to furnish and install materials, perform all operations, and complete the project to the satisfaction of the Architect.

1.2 GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The Architect's General, Special, and Supplementary Conditions for the construction of this project shall be a part of the Electrical Specifications. The Electrical Contractor shall examine the general, special, and supplementary conditions before submitting his or her proposal.
- B. The General Contractor shall be responsible for all work included in this section and the delegation of work to the Electrical Contractor shall not relieve him of this responsibility. The Electrical Contractor and his subcontractors who perform work under this section shall be responsible to the General Contractor.
- C. Where items of the General Conditions or of the Special Conditions are repeated in this section of the specifications, it is intended to call particular attention to or qualify them. It is not intended that any other parts of the General Conditions or Special Conditions shall be assumed to be omitted if not repeated herein.
- D. The naming of a certain brand or make or manufacturer in the specifications is to establish a quality standard for the article desired. The Contractor is not restricted to the use of the specified brand of the manufacturer named unless so indicated in the specifications. However, where a substitution is requested, a substitution will be permitted only with the written approval of the Engineer. No substitute material or equipment shall be ordered, fabricated, shipped or processed in any manner prior to the approval of the Architect/Engineer. The Contractor shall assume all responsibility for additional expenses as required in any way to meet changes from the original material or equipment specified. If notice of substitution is not furnished to the Engineer within 15 days after the General Contract is awarded, then equipment and materials named in the specifications are to be used.

- E. The Electrical Contractor shall examine drawings relating to work of all trades and become fully informed as to extent and character of work required and its relation to all other work in the project.
- F. Before submitting bid, Contractor shall visit the site and examine all adjoining existing buildings, equipment, and space conditions on which his or her work is in any way dependent for the best workmanship and operation according to the intent of specifications and drawings. He or she shall report to the Architect any condition, which might prevent him or her from installing his or her equipment in the manner intended.
- G. No consideration or allowance will be granted for failure to visit site, or for any alleged misunderstanding of materials to be furnished or work to be done.
- H. Contractor to contact and coordinate with all local utility companies for construction and service requirements of all utilities.
- I. Contractor shall secure and pay for all assessments, permits, electric utility companies' fees and charges, and inspections required on work performed under this section of the specifications and contract

END OF SECTION 16010

SECTION 16015

RECORD DRAWINGS AND DOCUMENTS

PART 1 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

1.1 DRAWINGS

- A. The Drawings are diagrammatic and indicate generally the locations of the material and equipment. These Drawings shall be followed as closely as possible. The Electrical Contractor shall coordinate the work under this section with the architectural, structural, plumbing, heating and air conditioning, and the drawings of other trades for exact dimensions, clearances and rough-in locations. The Contractor shall cooperate with all other trades in order to make minor field adjustments to accommodate the work of others.
- B. The Drawings and Specifications are complementary, each to the other, and the work required by either should be included in the Contract as if called for by both.
- C. If directed by the Architect, the Contractor shall, without extra charge, make reasonable modifications in the layout as needed to prevent conflict with work of other trades or for proper execution of the work.

1.2 SYMBOLS

- A. Electrical symbols used on this project are shown in a Symbol Legend on the accompanying working drawings. This list shows standard symbols and all may not appear on the project drawings; however, wherever the symbol on the project drawings occurs, the item shall be provided and installed

PART 2 SUBMITTALS

2.1 INSTRUCTIONS

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and present 10 (10) copies of shop drawings and/or brochures for all fixtures, equipment, and accessories to the Engineer/Architect for the Engineer's approval.
- B. No equipment shall be ordered, purchased or installed prior to approval of the shop drawings, brochures and schedules. Checking is only for general conformance with the design concept of the project and general compliance is subject to the requirements of the plans and specifications. Contractor is responsible for:

- 1. Dimensions which shall be confirmed and correlated at the job site;

2. Fabrication processes and techniques of construction;
 3. Coordination of his or her work with that of all other trades and the satisfactory performance of his or her work.
- C. If the submittals are rejected, the contractor will be allowed to resubmit on the rejected materials two (2) additional times. If the submittal for any material is rejected three times, then the originally specified piece of equipment shall be supplied at no extra cost.

PART 3 CLOSEOUT DOCUMENTS

3.1 INSTRUCTIONS

- A. The contractor shall furnish to the Architect at job acceptance the following:
1. Two sets of black line prints of same scale as original drawings marked in red showing all variations of the work actually installed related to the original drawings. This set of drawings shall include all of the following:
 - a. Addenda
 - b. Approved and Installed Change Orders
 - c. Field Condition Changes
 - d. All other Departures from the Original Plans and Specifications
 2. Three sets of shop drawings and other data required by the specifications reflecting the manufacturer's shop fabrication of the materials actually installed. These sets of data shall be post bound, indexed, and tabbed.
 3. Operation and Maintenance manuals and manufacturer's instructions for all equipment and components supplied and/or installed by the Electrical Contractor

END OF SECTION 16015

SECTION 16020

WORK DEFINITIONS

PART 1 WORK INCLUDED

1.1 INSTRUCTIONS

- A. The scope of work consists of the furnishing and installing of complete systems - exterior and interior - including miscellaneous systems. The Electrical Contractor shall provide all supervision, labor, materials, equipment, machinery, and any and all other items necessary to complete the system.
- B. It is the intention of the Specifications and Drawings to call for finished work, tested, and ready for operation.
- C. Any apparatus, appliance, material or work not shown on drawings but mentioned in the specifications, or vice versa, or any incidental accessories necessary to make the work complete and perfect in all respects and ready for operation, even if not particularly specified, shall be furnished, delivered and installed by the Contractor without additional expense to the Owner.
- D. Minor details not usually shown or specified, but necessary for proper installation and operation, shall be included in the Contractor's estimate, the same as if herein specified or shown.
- E. With submission of bid, the Electrical Contractor shall give written notice to the Architect of any materials or apparatus believed inadequate or unsuitable, in violation of laws, ordinances, rules; any necessary item work omitted. In the absence of such written notice, it is mutually agreed the Contractor has included the cost of all required items in his or her proposal, and that he or she will be responsible for the approved satisfactory functioning of the entire system without extra compensation.

1.2 DEMOLITION

- A. Demolition of existing equipment noted or required by the new work shall consist of removal of equipment, removal of exposed conduit, removal of wiring back to next in line junction or over-current protection device, and reconnection or rerouting of feed-through circuits. All equipment removed shall remain property of the Owner unless the Contractor is otherwise instructed in which case it shall be removed from the site.
- B. Remove, store, clean, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational components and equipment indicated for relocation.
- C. Disposal of materials removed from the job deemed hazardous shall be disposed of in compliance with the Resource Conservation

Recovery Act (RCRA) Subtitle C. These types of material include, but are not exclusively limited to, the following:

1. Fluorescent Lamps
2. Compact Fluorescent Lamps
3. H. I. D. Lamps
4. Electrical Power Transformers containing PCB's

PART 2 WORK NOT INCLUDED

2.1 INSTRUCTIONS

A. The following equipment items and work shall be the responsibility of others:

1. Motors and controls, unless indicated otherwise, shall be furnished by others, but shall be installed and connected by the Electrical Contractor as indicated on the drawings.
2. Elevator signal and control wiring beyond service feeder noted on drawings shall be provided and installed by others. (If Applicable)
3. Controls for motors on mechanical equipment unless otherwise indicated, will be furnished by others, but shall be installed and connected by the Electrical Contractor.

END OF SECTION 16020

SECTION 16030

CODES & STANDARDS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 INSTRUCTIONS

- A. All materials and workmanship shall comply with all applicable codes, specifications, local ordinances, industry standards, and utility company and fire insurance carrier's requirements.
- B. In case of difference between the building codes, specifications, state laws, local ordinances, industry standards, utility company regulations, fire insurance carrier's requirements, and the contract documents, the most stringent shall govern. The Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect in writing of any difference.
- C. Noncompliance: Should the Contractor perform any work that does not comply with the requirements of the applicable building codes, state laws, local ordinances, industry standards, fire insurance carrier's requirements, and utility company regulations, he or she shall bear the cost arising in correcting any such deficiency.
- D. Applicable codes and all standards shall include all state laws, local ordinances, utility company regulations, and the applicable requirements of the following nationally accepted codes and standards:

1. Building Codes

- a. International Building Code
- b. Local Building Code
- c. National Electrical Code
- d. State Electrical Code
- e. Local Municipal Electrical Code

2. Industry Standards, Codes and Specifications

- a. ANSI - American National Standard Institute
- b. AMCA - Air Moving and Conditioning Association
- c. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers

- d. ASME - American Society of Mechanical Engineers
- e. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials
- f. EIA - Electronic Industries Association
- g. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers' Association
- h. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
- i. IPCEA - Insulated Power Cable Engineers' Association
- j. NBS - National Bureau of Standards
- k. NEC - National Electrical Code (NFPA-70 1999)
- l. NESC - National Electrical Safety Code (ANSI - C2)
- m. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers' Association
- n. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association
- o. OSHA - Occupational Safety and Health Administration
- p. SBC - Standard Building Code
- q. UL - Underwriters' Laboratories
- r. USASI - United States of America Standards Institute
- s. USEPA - United States Environmental Protection Agency

3. Insurance Carriers

- a. FIA - Factory Insurance Association
- b. FMED - Factory Mutual Engineering Division

END OF SECTION 16030

SECTION 16040

TEMPORARY POWER AND LIGHTING

PART 1 EXECUTION

1.1 GENERAL

- A. Any light or power outlets required over the maximum quantity noted below shall be paid for by the Contractor requiring the same. The General Contractor shall pay for the power consumption.

1.2 TEMPORARY POWER

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for all arrangements and cost for providing temporary electrical metering, main switches, and distribution panels at the site as required for construction purposes. The distribution panels shall be located at a central point designated by the Architect. The General Contractor shall indicate prior to installation whether three-phase or single-phase service is required.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and install power outlets to total one for every 1500 square feet or part thereof of floor area and these shall be GFI, 20-amp, single-phase receptacles for either 110 or 220 volts as directed by the General Contractor.

1.3 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and install one OSHA approved pigtail socket with 150-watt lamp for every 500 square feet of floor space, evenly distributed throughout the building.

END OF SECTION 16040

SECTION 16050

BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
 - 2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
 - 3. Sleeve seals.
 - 4. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test Equipment Suitability and Calibration: Comply with NETA ATS, "Suitability of Test Equipment" and "Test Instrument Calibration."

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
 - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
 - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.

3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
 4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.
 - C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames."
 - D. Coordinate electrical testing of electrical, mechanical, and architectural items, so equipment and systems that are functionally interdependent are tested to demonstrate successful interoperability.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.138-inch (3.5-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

2.3 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to raceways and piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

- C. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- D. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- E. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
 - 2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
- F. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- G. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- H. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- I. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require a different clearance.
- J. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- K. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- L. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- M. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular

clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect installed sleeve and sleeve-seal installations and associated firestopping for damage and faulty work.

END OF SECTION 16050

SECTION 16055

OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes computer-based, fault-current and overcurrent protective device coordination studies, and the setting of these devices.
 - 1. Coordination of series-rated devices is permitted where indicated on Drawings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Product Certificates: For coordination-study and fault-current-study computer software programs, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.
- C. Qualification Data: For coordination-study specialist.
- D. Other Action Submittals:
 - 1. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Coordination-study report.
 - 3. Equipment evaluation report.
 - 4. Setting report.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are not acceptable.
- B. Coordination-Study Specialist Qualifications: An organization experienced in the application of computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association to supervise testing specified in Part 3.
- D. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- E. Comply with IEEE 242 for short-circuit currents and coordination time intervals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Available Computer Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, companies offering computer software programs that may be used in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. CYME International, Inc.
 - 2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
 - 3. Electrical Systems Analysis, Inc.
 - 4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

2.2 COMPUTER SOFTWARE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE 399.
- B. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall include "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399, Table 7-4.
- C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices.
 - 1. Optional Features:
 - a. Arcing faults.
 - b. Simultaneous faults.
 - c. Explicit negative sequence.
 - d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
- B. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices not submitted for approval with coordination study may not be used in study.

3.2 FAULT-CURRENT AND ARC-FAULT STUDIES

- A. Source Impedance: As an infinite bus on primary side of utility transformer.
- B. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project and use approved computer software program to calculate values. Include studies of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- C. Calculate momentary and interrupting duties on the basis of maximum available fault current.
- D. Calculate available Arc Fault current for each panel and identify level of protection required in relation to this calculation.
- E. Calculations to verify interrupting ratings of overcurrent protective devices shall comply with the following:
 - 1. Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE 1015 and IEEE C37.50.
 - 2. Low-Voltage Fuses: IEEE C37.46.
 - 3. Circuit Breakers: IEEE C37.13.
- F. Study Report: Enter calculated X/R ratios and interrupting (5-cycle) fault currents on electrical distribution system diagram of the report. List other output values from computer analysis, including momentary (1/2-cycle), interrupting (5-cycle), and 30-cycle fault-current values for 3-phase, 2-phase, and phase-to-ground faults.
- G. Equipment Evaluation Report: Prepare a report on the adequacy of overcurrent protective devices and conductors by comparing fault-current ratings of these devices with calculated fault-current momentary and interrupting duties.

3.3 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study:

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Division 16 Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Impedance of utility service entrance.
 3. Electrical distribution system diagram showing the following:
 - a. Load current that is the basis for sizing continuous ratings of circuits for cables and equipment.
 - b. Circuit-breaker and fuse-current ratings and types.
 - c. Relays and associated power and current transformer ratings and ratios.
 - d. Transformer kilovolt amperes, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, and X/R ratios.
 - e. Generator kilovolt amperes, size, voltage, and source impedance.
 - f. Cables. Indicate conduit material, sizes of conductors, conductor insulation, and length.
 - g. Busway ampacity and impedance.
 - h. Motor horsepower and code letter designation according to NEMA MG 1.
 4. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram:
 - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
 - b. Magnetic inrush current overload capabilities of transformers.
 - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
 - d. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
 - e. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
 - f. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
 - g. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
 - h. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
 - i. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical.
- B. Perform coordination study and prepare a written report using the results of fault-current study and approved computer software program. Comply with IEEE 399.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 for overcurrent protection of circuit elements and devices.

- D. Comply with IEEE 242 recommendations for fault currents and time intervals.
- E. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 - 1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
 - a. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
 - b. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
 - 2. Device shall protect transformer according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.
- F. Motors served by voltages more than 600 V shall be protected according to IEEE 620.
- G. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and conductor melting curves in IEEE 242. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents, equipment grounding conductors, and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents.
- H. Coordination-Study Report: Prepare a written report indicating the following results of coordination study:
 - 1. Tabular Format of Settings Selected for Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 - a. Device tag.
 - b. Relay-current transformer ratios; and tap, time-dial, and instantaneous-pickup values.
 - c. Circuit-breaker sensor rating; and long-time, short-time, and instantaneous settings.
 - d. Fuse-current rating and type.
 - e. Ground-fault relay-pickup and time-delay settings.
 - 2. Coordination Curves: Prepared to determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between series devices, including power utility company's upstream devices. Show the following specific information:
 - a. Device tag.
 - b. Voltage and current ratio for curves.
 - c. Three-phase and single-phase damage points for each transformer.
 - d. No damage, melting, and clearing curves for fuses.
 - e. Cable damage curves.
 - f. Transformer inrush points.
 - g. Maximum fault-current cutoff point.
 - 3. Completed data sheets for setting of overcurrent protective devices.

3.4 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE SETTING

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative, of electrical distribution equipment being set and adjusted, to set the overcurrent protective devices within equipment.
- B. Testing: Perform the following device setting and prepare reports:
 - 1. After installing overcurrent protective devices and during energizing process of electrical distribution system, perform the following:
 - a. Verify that overcurrent protective devices meet parameters used in studies.
 - b. Adjust devices to values listed in study results.
 - 2. Adjust devices according to recommendations in Chapter 7, "Inspection and Test Procedures," and Tables 10.7 and 10.8 in NETA ATS.

END OF SECTION 16055

SECTION 16060

GROUNDING AND BONDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications (when applicable):
 - 1. Overhead-lines grounding.
 - 2. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 3. Common ground bonding with lightning protection system.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in Part 3 "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings and grids.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 - 5. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include the following in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
 - 1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.
 - a. Tests shall be to determine if ground resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if they do not.
 - b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
 - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- C. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
 - 1. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
 - 2. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.
- D. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm) in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with insulators.

2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in

which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.

- 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m) in diameter.

- B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with non-hazardous electrolytic chemical salts. These may only be used when specifically called for on the plans.

- 1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches (1200 mm) long.
 - 2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.

- 1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.

- D. Grounding Bus: Install in all electrical and telephone/data equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

- 1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch (25 mm), minimum, from wall 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.

E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Grid: Exothermic Welded connectors.
4. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
5. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING OVERHEAD LINES

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Install 3 parallel ground rods if resistance to ground by a single, ground-rod electrode exceeds 25 ohms.
- C. Drive ground rods until tops are 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade in undisturbed earth.
- D. Ground-Rod Connections: Install bolted connectors for underground connections and connections to rods.
- E. Lightning Arrester Grounding Conductors: Separate from other grounding conductors.
- F. Secondary Neutral and Transformer Enclosure: Interconnect and connect to grounding conductor.
- G. Protect grounding conductors running on surface of wood poles with molding extended from grade level up to and through communication service and transformer spaces.

3.3 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields as recommended by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
 - 9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor

terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
 - 1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch (6-by-50-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
 - 2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- H. Metal and Wood Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
 - 2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Division 2 Section "Underground Ducts and Utility Structures," and shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.
1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service, unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column and indicated item (if shown on drawings), extending around the perimeter of building or area or item indicated (if shown on drawings).
1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 3/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.

2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building foundation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm.
5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.

C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect and Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 16060

SECTION 16072

ELECTRICAL SUPPORTS AND SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
 - 2. Seismic restraints for electrical equipment and systems.
 - 3. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. IBC: International Building Code.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- D. NBC: National Building Code.
- E. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development.
- F. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.
- G. SBC: Standard Building Code.
- H. Seismic Restraint: A structural support element such as a metal framing member, a cable, an anchor bolt or stud, a fastening device, or an assembly of these items used to transmit seismic forces from an item of equipment or system to building structure and to limit movement of item during a seismic event.
- I. UBC: Uniform Building Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of electrical support and seismic-restraint component used.

1. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials and dimensions and identify hardware, including attachment and anchorage devices, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Professional engineer qualification requirements are specified in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements." Include the following:
1. Fabricated Supports: Representations of field-fabricated supports not detailed on Drawings.
 2. Seismic Restraints: Detail anchorage and bracing not defined by details or charts on Drawings. Include the following:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Detail fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events.
 - c. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction], showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Testing of Seismic Anchorage Devices: Comply with testing requirements in Part 3 and in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Site Class as Defined by the Architect. Refer to architectural documents for classification.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed under this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.
- B. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-3, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cooper B-Line; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - b. ERICO International Corporation.
 - c. Allied Support Systems; Power-Strut Unit.
 - d. GS Metals Corp.
 - e. Michigan Hanger Co., Inc.; O-Strut Div.
 - f. National Pipe Hanger Corp.
 - g. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - h. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
 - i. Wesanco, Inc.
 - 2. Finishes:
 - a. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-3.
 - b. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-3.
 - c. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-3.
 - 3. Channel Dimensions: Selected for structural loading and applicable seismic forces.

- C. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., in at least 1 surface.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Allied Support Systems; Aickinstrut Unit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
 - d. Seasafe, Inc.
 2. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 3. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
 4. Rated Strength: Selected to suit structural loading and applicable seismic forces.
- D. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1.
- E. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- F. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- G. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- H. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - 1) Hilti, Inc.
 - 2) ITW Construction Products.
 - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co. Inc.
 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.

a. Manufacturers:

- 1) Cooper B-Line; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc
 - 3) Hilti, Inc.
 - 4) ITW Construction Products.
 - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 6) Powers Fasteners.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron slotted-support-system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-3 or MSS SP-58.
 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT COMPONENTS

- A. Rated Strength, Features, and Application Requirements for Restraint Components: As defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components used shall be at least five times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- B. Angle and Channel-Type Brace Assemblies: Steel angles or steel slotted-support-system components; with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end.
- C. Cable Restraints: ASTM A 603, zinc-coated, steel wire rope attached to steel or stainless-steel thimbles, brackets, swivels, and bolts designed for restraining cable service.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
 - b. Loos & Co., Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
 2. Seismic Mountings, Anchors, and Attachments: Devices as specified in Part 2 "Support, Anchorage, and Attachment Components" Article, selected to resist seismic forces.
 3. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod, of design recognized by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchors: Neoprene units designed for seismically rated rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs used.
 5. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for

seismically rated rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

2.4 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps or single-bolt conduit clamps using spring friction action for retention in support channel or by method approved by authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements, except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- C. Install seismic-restraint components using methods approved by the evaluation service providing required submittals for component.

- D. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- E. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- F. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and seismic criteria at Project.
- B. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so

expansion anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of the base.
2. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
5. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF SEISMIC-RESTRAINT COMPONENTS

- A. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- B. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- C. Restraint Cables: Provide slack within maximums recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

3.6 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Make flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross expansion and seismic-control joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to electrical equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing: Test pullout resistance of seismic anchorage devices.

1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
6. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

C. Record test results.

END OF SECTION 16072

SECTION 16075

ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Identification for raceway and metal-clad cable.
 - 2. Identification for conductors and communication and control cable.
 - 3. Underground-line warning tape.
 - 4. Warning labels and signs.
 - 5. Instruction signs.
 - 6. Equipment identification labels.
 - 7. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.
- B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.
- C. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and ANSI C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in the Contract Documents, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual, and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RACEWAY AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Color for Printed Legend:
 - 1. Power Circuits: Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate system or service and voltage, if applicable.
- C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- D. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- F. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches (50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.

2.2 CONDUCTOR AND COMMUNICATION- AND CONTROL-CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide.

- B. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- C. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels: Cut from 0.014-inch- (0.35-mm-) thick aluminum sheet, with stamped, embossed, or scribed legend, and fitted with tabs and matching slots for permanently securing around wire or cable jacket or around groups of conductors.
- D. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking nylon tie fastener.

2.3 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Description: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, polyethylene tape.
 - 1. Not less than 6 inches (150 mm) wide by 4 mils (0.102 mm) thick.
 - 2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
 - 3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
 - 4. Printed legend shall indicate type of underground line.

2.4 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs: Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
- E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
 - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

2.5 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.
 - 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
 - 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.6 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and ultraviolet-resistant seal for label.
- C. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- D. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- E. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch (25 mm).

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, 1-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 50 lb (22.6 kg), minimum.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- B. Paint: Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.
 - 1. Exterior Concrete, Stucco, and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Exterior concrete and masonry primer.

- 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
2. Exterior Concrete Unit Masonry:
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a block filler.
 - 1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
3. Exterior Ferrous Metal:
 - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
4. Exterior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
 - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Exterior zinc-coated metal primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
5. Interior Concrete and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
 - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Interior concrete and masonry primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss alkyd enamel.
6. Interior Concrete Unit Masonry:
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a block filler.
 - 1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
7. Interior Gypsum Board:
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
8. Interior Ferrous Metal:
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.

- 1) Primer: Interior ferrous-metal primer.
- 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.

9. Interior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):

- a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.

- 1) Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer.
- 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.

- C. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Raceways and Duct Banks More Than 600 V Concealed within Buildings: 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stencil legend "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- (75-mm-) high black letters on 20-inch (500-mm) centers. Stop stripes at legends. Apply to the following finished surfaces:
 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches (300 mm) of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- B. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables More Than 600 V: Identify with "DANGER-HIGH VOLTAGE" in black letters at least 2 inches (50 mm) high, with snap-around labels. Repeat legend at 10-foot (3-m) maximum intervals.
- C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A: Identify with orange self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands.
- D. Accessible Raceways and Cables of Auxiliary Systems: Identify the following systems with color-coded, self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands:
 1. Fire Alarm System: Red.
 2. Fire-Suppression Supervisory and Control System: Red and yellow.
 3. Combined Fire Alarm and Security System: Red and blue.
 4. Security System: Blue and yellow.
 5. Mechanical and Electrical Supervisory System: Green and blue.
 6. Telecommunication System: Green and yellow.

7. Control Wiring: Green and red.

- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For primary and secondary conductors No. 1/0 AWG and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes use color-coding conductor tape. Identify source and circuit number of each set of conductors. For single conductor cables, identify phase in addition to the above.
- F. Branch-Circuit Conductor Identification: Where there are conductors for more than three branch circuits in same junction or pull box, use color-coding conductor tape. Identify each ungrounded conductor according to source and circuit number.
- G. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source and circuit number.
- H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, signal, sound, intercommunications, voice, and data connections.
 - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
 - 2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 - 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- I. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
- J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 and apply baked-enamel warning signs. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 1. Equipment with Multiple Power or Control Sources: Apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
 - 2. Equipment Requiring Workspace Clearance According to NFPA 70: Unless otherwise indicated, apply to door or cover of equipment but not on flush panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- K. Instruction Signs:
 - 1. Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved

legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

2. Emergency Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer and load shedding (if applicable).

- L. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

- a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where 2 lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
- c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

- a. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
- b. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- c. Electrical switchgear and switchboards.
- d. Transformers.
- e. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
- f. Motor-control centers.
- g. Disconnect switches.
- h. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- i. Motor starters.
- j. Push-button stations.
- k. Power transfer equipment.
- l. Contactors.
- m. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- n. Power-generating units.
- o. Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
- p. Intercommunication and call system master and staff stations.
- q. Television/audio components, racks, and controls.
- r. Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
- s. Security and intrusion-detection control stations, control panels, terminal cabinets, and racks.
- t. Monitoring and control equipment.
- u. Uninterruptible power supply equipment.
- v. Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach nonadhesive signs and plastic labels with screws and auxiliary hardware appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. System Identification Color Banding for Raceways and Cables: Each color band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- G. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V and Less: Use the colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied or, for sizes larger than No. 10 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit, field applied.
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 4. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- H. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where

width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.

- I. Painted Identification: Prepare surface and apply paint according to Division 9 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 16075

SECTION 16120

CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes building wires and cables and associated connectors, splices, and terminations for wiring systems rated 600 V and less.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Field Quality-Control Test Reports: From a qualified testing and inspecting agency engaged by Contractor.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 or a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Alcan Aluminum Corporation; Alcan Cable Div.
 - 2. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
 - 3. General Cable Corporation.
 - 4. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
 - 5. Southwire Company.
- B. Refer to Part 3 "Conductor and Insulation Applications" Article for insulation type, cable construction, and ratings.
- C. Conductor Material: Copper complying with NEMA WC 5; solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Conductor Insulation Types: Type THHN-THWN complying with NEMA WC 5 or 7.
- E. Multiconductor Cable: Metal-clad cable, Type MC, Type SO and Type USE with ground wire.

2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 - 2. AMP Incorporated/Tyco International.
 - 3. Hubbell/Anderson.
 - 4. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
 - 5. 3M Company; Electrical Products Division.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR AND INSULATION APPLICATIONS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Feeders Exposed or Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and in Crawlspaces: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Branch Circuits Exposed or Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway or type MC cable (for 120V 20A circuits only).
- E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete and below Slabs-on-Grade: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Underground Feeders and Branch Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord.
- H. Fire Alarm Circuits: Type THHN-THWN or TFFN, in raceway.
- I. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN or TFFN, in raceway.
- J. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN or TFFN, in raceway.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Division 16 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- F. Seal around cables penetrating fire-rated elements according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

- G. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
 - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.3.1. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- B. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 16120

SECTION 16130

RACEWAYS AND BOXES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 2 Section "Underground Ducts and Utility Structures" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestopping materials and installation at penetrations through walls, ceilings, and other fire-rated elements.
 - 3. Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints" for seismic restraints and bracing of raceways, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 4. Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for devices installed in boxes and for floor-box service fittings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
- C. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- D. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- E. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- F. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- G. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.
- H. RMC: Rigid metallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of components for raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
- C. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
 - 2. Detail assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounted items. Show the following:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- E. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures, cabinets, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of raceways, boxes, enclosures, cabinets, and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Alflec Inc.
 - 3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
 - 4. Electri-Flex Co.
 - 5. Grinnell Co./Tyco International; Allied Tube and Conduit Div.
 - 6. LTV Steel Tubular Products Company.
 - 7. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
 - 8. O-Z Gedney; Unit of General Signal.
 - 9. Wheatland Tube Co.
- B. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- C. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.
- D. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- E. Plastic-Coated Steel Conduit and Fittings: NEMA RN 1.
- F. Plastic-Coated IMC and Fittings: NEMA RN 1.
- G. EMT and Fittings: ANSI C80.3.
 - 1. Fittings: Compression type.
- H. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.
- I. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.

J. Fittings: NEMA FB 1; compatible with conduit and tubing materials.

2.3 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Manufacturers:

1. American International.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
3. Arnco Corp.
4. Cantex Inc.
5. Certainteed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
6. Condux International.
7. ElecSYS, Inc.
8. Electri-Flex Co.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
11. RACO; Division of Hubbell, Inc.
12. Spiraldut, Inc./AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
13. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

B. ENT: NEMA TC 13.

C. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 PVC.

D. ENT and RNC Fittings: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

E. LFNC: UL 1660.

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Hoffman.
2. Square D.

B. Material and Construction: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 3R.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Select features, unless otherwise indicated, as required to complete wiring system and to comply with NFPA 70.

E. Wireway Covers: Flanged-and-gasketed type or as indicated on the plans.

F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.5 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS

A. Available Manufactures:

1. Hoffman.
2. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

B. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with no holes or knockouts. Cover is gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections are flanged, with stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.

C. Description: PVC plastic, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with snap-on cover and mechanically coupled connections with plastic fasteners.

D. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

E. Select features, unless otherwise indicated, as required to complete wiring system and to comply with NFPA 70.

F. All elbows 45 degrees or greater and all vertical risers coming out of the ground or slab shall be RMS or IMC type conduit.

2.6 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Finish with manufacturer's standard prime coating and as directed by the architect.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Airey-Thompson Sentinel Lighting; Wiremold Company (The).
- b. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- c. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
- d. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.

B. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two-piece construction, manufactured of rigid PVC compound with matte texture and color as directed by the architect.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Butler Manufacturing Co.; Walker Division.
- b. Enduro Composite Systems.
- c. Hubbell, Inc.; Wiring Device Division.
- d. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
- e. Panduit Corp.
- f. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
- g. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.

- C. Types, sizes, and channels as indicated and required for each application, with fittings that match and mate with raceways.

2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Emerson/General Signal; Appleton Electric Company.
3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Co.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell, Inc.; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co.
6. O-Z/Gedney; Unit of General Signal.
7. RACO; Division of Hubbell, Inc.
8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet-PLM Division.
10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Co.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.

B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

D. Floor Boxes: Cast metal, fully adjustable, rectangular, 2 or 3 gang type.

E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

F. Cast-Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

G. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous hinge cover and flush latch.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic, finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.

H. Cabinets: NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge. Key latch to match panelboards. Include metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage and include accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

2.8 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: For raceway, enclosure, or cabinet components, provide manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors:

1. Exposed: Rigid steel or IMC.
2. Concealed: Rigid steel or IMC.
3. Underground, Single Run: RNC.
4. Underground, Grouped: RMC.
5. Underground, 2" or greater: IMC or RMC.
6. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3.

B. Indoors:

1. Exposed: EMT.
2. Concealed: EMT.
3. Conduits 2" or greater: IMC or RMC.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC; except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit.
6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except as follows:

- a. Damp or Wet Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch trade size (DN 21).

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings approved for use with that material. Patch all nicks and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits.

E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

F. Do not install aluminum conduits embedded in or in contact with concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

B. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

- C. Support raceways as specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- D. Install temporary closures to prevent foreign matter from entering raceways.
- E. Protect stub-ups from damage where conduits rise through floor slabs. Arrange so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
- F. Make bends and offsets so ID is not reduced. Keep legs of bends in the same plane and keep straight legs of offsets parallel, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Install concealed raceways with a minimum of bends in the shortest practical distance, considering type of building construction and obstructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs: Install in middle 1/3 of slab thickness where practical and leave at least 2 inches (50 mm) of concrete cover.
 - 1. Secure raceways to reinforcing rods to prevent sagging or shifting during concrete placement.
 - 2. Space raceways laterally to prevent voids in concrete.
 - 3. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size (DN 27) parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
 - 4. Change from nonmetallic tubing to rigid steel conduit, or IMC before rising above the floor.
- I. Install exposed raceways parallel or at right angles to nearby surfaces or structural members and follow surface contours as much as possible.
 - 1. Run parallel or banked raceways together on common supports.
 - 2. Make parallel bends in parallel or banked runs. Use factory elbows only where elbows can be installed parallel; otherwise, provide field bends for parallel raceways.
- J. Join raceways with fittings designed and approved for that purpose and make joints tight.
 - 1. Use insulating bushings to protect conductors.
- K. Tighten set screws of threadless fittings with suitable tools.
- L. Terminations:
 - 1. Where raceways are terminated with locknuts and bushings, align raceways to enter squarely and install locknuts with dished part against box. Use two locknuts, one inside and one outside box.
 - 2. Where raceways are terminated with threaded hubs, screw raceways or fittings tightly into hub so end bears against wire protection

shoulder. Where chase nipples are used, align raceways so coupling is square to box; tighten chase nipple so no threads are exposed.

- M. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.
- N. Telephone and Signal System Raceways, 2-Inch Trade Size (DN 53) and Smaller: In addition to above requirements, install raceways in maximum lengths of 150 feet (45 m) and with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- O. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with UL-listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- P. Stub-up Connections: Extend conduits through concrete floor for connection to freestanding equipment. Install with an adjustable top or coupling threaded inside for plugs set flush with finished floor. Extend conductors to equipment with rigid steel conduit; FMC may be used 6 inches (150 mm) above the floor. Install screwdriver-operated, threaded plugs flush with floor for future equipment connections.
- Q. Flexible Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures; for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for all motors. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations. Install separate ground conductor across flexible connections.
- R. Surface Raceways: Install a separate, green, ground conductor in raceways from junction box supplying raceways to receptacle or fixture ground terminals.
- S. Set floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- T. Set floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
- U. Install hinged-cover enclosures and cabinets plumb. Support at each corner.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished raceways and boxes, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 16130

SECTION 16139

CABLE TRAYS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes aluminum cable trays and accessories.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestopping materials and installation at penetrations through walls, ceilings, and other fire-rated elements.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of cable tray.
 - 1. Show fabrication and installation details of cable tray, including plans, elevations, and sections of components and attachments to other construction elements. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, splice-plate connectors, expansion-joint assemblies, straight lengths, and fittings.
 - 2. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 3. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
 - b. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported cable trays.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and sections drawn to scale. Include scaled cable tray layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show the following:

1. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
 2. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
 3. Vertical elevation of cable trays above floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of cable tray, signed by product manufacturer.
- E. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that cable trays, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Cable Tray Units: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- F. Field Test Reports: Written reports specified in Part 3.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cable trays to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain cable tray components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. Comply with NEMA VE 1, "Metal Cable Tray Systems," if cable tray types specified are defined in the standard.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of cable trays and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. B-Line Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Chalfant Cable Trays.
 - 3. GS Metals Corp.
 - 4. Mono-Systems, Inc.
 - 5. MPHusky.
 - 6. P-W Industries, Inc.
 - 7. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

2.2 MATERIALS AND FINISHES

- A. Cable Trays, Fittings, and Accessories: Aluminum, complying with Aluminum Association's alloy 6063-T6 for rails, rungs, and cable trays, and alloy 5052-H32 or alloy 6061-T6 for fabricated parts.
- B. Protect steel hardware against corrosion by galvanizing according to ASTM B 633 or cadmium plating according to ASTM B 766.
- C. Fabricate cable tray products with rounded edges and smooth surfaces.
- D. Sizes and Configurations: Refer to the Cable Tray Schedule on Drawings for specific requirements for types, materials, sizes, and configurations.

2.3 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

- A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- B. Covers: Ventilated-hat type of same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- C. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- D. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

2.4 WARNING SIGNS

- A. Lettering: 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) high, black letters on yellow background with legend "WARNING! NOT TO BE USED AS WALKWAY, LADDER, OR SUPPORT FOR LADDERS OR PERSONNEL."
- B. Materials and fastening are specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform design and production tests according to NEMA VE 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

- A. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.
- B. Fasten cable tray supports securely to building structure as specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints," unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Locate and install supports according to NEMA VE 1.
- C. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable tray and to equipment. Support cable tray independently of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable tray on equipment enclosure.
- D. Install expansion connectors where cable tray crosses building expansion joint and in cable tray runs that exceed 90 feet (27 m). Space connectors and set gaps according to NEMA VE 1.
- E. Make changes in direction and elevation using standard fittings.
- F. Make cable tray connections using standard fittings.
- G. Locate cable tray above piping unless accessibility to cable tray is required or unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

- I. Sleeves for Future Cables: Install capped sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.
- J. Workspace: Install cable trays with sufficient space to permit access for installing cables.
- K. Install barriers to separate cables of different systems, such as power, communications, and data processing; or of different insulation levels, such as 600, 5000, and 15 000 V.
- L. Install covers after installation of cable is completed.
- M. After installation of cable trays is completed, install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground cable trays according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
 - 1. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform the following electrical test and visual and mechanical inspections:
 - a. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity.
 - b. Measure ground resistance of each system of cable tray from the most remote element to the point where connection is made to service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal. Record resistance in ohms.
 - 3. Report results in writing.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure cable tray is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 16139

SECTION 16140

WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Single and duplex receptacles, ground-fault circuit interrupters, integral surge suppression units, and isolated-ground receptacles.
 - 2. Single- and double-pole snap switches and dimmer switches.
 - 3. Device wall plates.
 - 4. Pin and sleeve connectors and receptacles.
 - 5. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

- D. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
 - 1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Service/Power Poles: One for every 10 , but no fewer than one.
 - 2. Floor Service Outlet Assemblies: One for every 10, but no fewer than one.
 - 3. Poke-Through, Fire-Rated Closure Plugs: One for every five floor service outlets installed, but no fewer than two.
 - 4. TVSS Receptacles: One for every 10 of each type installed, but no fewer than two of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Wiring Devices:
 - a. Bryant Electric, Inc./Hubbell Subsidiary.
 - b. Eagle Electric Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - d. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
 - e. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices Div.
 - 2. Wiring Devices for Hazardous (Classified) Locations:

- a. Crouse-Hinds/Cooper Industries, Inc.; Arrow Hart Wiring Devices.
 - b. EGS/Appleton Electric Company.
 - c. Killark Electric Manufacturing Co./Hubbell Incorporated.
- 3. Multioutlet Assemblies:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Wiremold Company (The).
- 4. Poke-Through, Floor Service Outlets and Telephone/Power Poles:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices Div.
 - c. Square D/Groupe Schneider NA.
 - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - e. Wiremold Company (The).

2.2 RECEPTACLES

- A. Straight-Blade-Type Receptacles: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, DSCC W-C-596G, and UL 498.
- B. Straight-Blade and Locking Receptacles: Heavy-Duty grade.
- C. GFCI Receptacles: Straight blade, non-feed-through type, Heavy-Duty Specification grade, with integral NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R duplex receptacle; complying with UL 498 and UL 943. Design units for installation in a 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) deep outlet box without an adapter.
- D. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Straight blade, Heavy-Duty Specification grade, duplex receptacle, with equipment grounding contacts connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap.
 - 1. Devices: Listed and labeled as isolated-ground receptacles.
 - 2. Isolation Method: Integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- E. TVSS Receptacles: Straight blade, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R, with integral TVSS in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground.
 - 1. TVSS Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp level rating of 500 volts and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 140 J line to neutral, and 70 J line to ground and neutral to ground.
 - 2. Active TVSS Indication: Visual and audible with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
 - 3. Receptacle Type: Heavy-Duty Specification grade, with isolated-ground terminal.
 - 4. Identification: Distinctive marking on face of device to denote TVSS-type unit.

- F. Industrial Heavy-Duty Pin and Sleeve Devices: Comply with IEC 309-1.
- G. Hazardous (Classified) Location Receptacles: Comply with NEMA FB 11.

2.3 PENDANT CORD/CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector, NEMA WD 6, Configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, Heavy-Duty grade.
 - 1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
 - 2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

2.4 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
 - 1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
 - 2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.5 SWITCHES

- A. Single- and Double-Pole Switches: Comply with DSCC W-C-896F and UL 20.
- B. Snap Switches: Heavy-Duty Specification grade, quiet type.
- C. Combination Switch and Receptacle: Both devices in a single gang unit with plaster ears and removable tab connector that permit separate or common feed connection.
 - 1. Switch: 20 A, 120/277-V ac.
 - 2. Receptacle: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
- D. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on/off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters.
 - 1. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching to suit connections.
 - 2. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: Modular, 120 V, 60 Hz with continuously adjustable rotary knob, toggle switch, or slider; single pole with soft tap or other quiet switch; EMI/RFI filter to eliminate interference; and 5-inch (130-mm) wire connecting leads.
 - 3. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming;

dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 10 percent of full brightness.

2.6 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
 - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished stainless steel.
 - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Material for Wet Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."

2.7 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.
- B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
- C. Service Plate: Rectangular, die-cast aluminum with satin finish.
- D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 Category 6 jacks for UTP cable.

2.8 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service outlet assembly.
 - 1. Service Outlet Assembly: Flush type with four simplex receptacles and space for four RJ-45 jacks.
 - 2. Size: Selected to fit nominal 3-inch (75-mm) cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
 - 3. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
 - 4. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 3-inch (75-mm) cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
 - 5. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors; and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 6 voice and data communication cables.

2.9 MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

- A. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
- B. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Wire: No. 12 AWG.

2.10 FINISHES

- A. Color:
 - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Gray or as selected by Architect, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70.
 - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
 - 3. TVSS Devices: Blue.
 - 4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install devices and assemblies level, plumb, and square with building lines.
- B. Install wall dimmers to achieve indicated rating after derating for ganging according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical, and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- E. Remove wall plates and protect devices and assemblies during painting.
- F. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
 - 1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. After installing wiring devices and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for proper polarity, ground continuity, and compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Test GFCI operation with both local and remote fault simulations according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 16140

SECTION 16145

LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:
 - 1. Time switches.
 - 2. Outdoor and indoor photoelectric switches.
 - 3. Switch-box occupancy sensors.
 - 4. Indoor occupancy sensors.
 - 5. Outdoor motion sensors.
 - 6. Multipole contactors.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 13 Section "Lighting Controls" for low-voltage, manual and programmable lighting control systems.
 - 2. Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers and manual light switches.
 - 3. Division 16 Section "Dimming Controls" for architectural dimming system equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- B. PIR: Passive infrared.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.
 - 1. Lighting plan showing location, orientation, and coverage area of each sensor.
 - 2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.

- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 GENERAL LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line-Voltage Surge Protection: An integral part of the devices for 120- and 277-V solid-state equipment. For devices without integral line-voltage surge protection, field-mounting surge protection shall comply with IEEE C62.41 and with UL 1449.

2.3 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Area Lighting Research, Inc.
 - 2. Fisher Pierce.
 - 3. Grasslin Controls Corporation.
 - 4. Intermatic, Inc.
 - 5. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
 - 6. Lightolier Controls; a Genlyte Company.
 - 7. Lithonia Lighting.
 - 8. Paragon Electric Co.
 - 9. Square D.

10. TORK.
11. Touchplate Technologies, Inc.
12. Watt Stopper (The).

B. Digital Time Switches: Electronic, solid-state programmable units with alphanumeric display complying with UL 917.

1. Contact Configuration: DPST or as indicated on the drawings.
2. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac.
3. Programs: 12 channels.
 - a. For each channel, 40 on-off operations per week, plus 4 seasonal schedules that modify the basic program, and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
4. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on and off function of a program on selected channels.
5. Astronomical Time: All channels.
6. Battery Backup: For schedules and time clock.

2.4 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Area Lighting Research, Inc.
2. Fisher Pierce.
3. Grasslin Controls Corporation.
4. Intermatic, Inc.
5. Lithonia Lighting.
6. Novitas, Inc.
7. Paragon Electric Co.
8. Square D.
9. TORK.
10. Touchplate Technologies, Inc.
11. Watt Stopper (The).

B. Description: Solid state, with DPST dry contacts rated for 1800 VA to operate connected load, relay, or contactor coils; and complying with UL 773.

1. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16 to 108 lx), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
2. Time Delay: 15-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
3. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor type, complying with IEEE C62.41 for Category A1 locations.
4. Mounting: Twist lock complying with IEEE C136.10, with base. Provide with stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the North sky exposure.

2.5 SWITCH-BOX OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Bryant Electric; a Hubbell Company.
2. Hubbell Lighting Inc.
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
4. Lightolier Controls; a Genlyte Company.
5. Lithonia Lighting.
6. MYTECH Corporation.
7. Novitas, Inc.
8. RAB Electric Manufacturing, Inc.
9. Sensor Switch, Inc.
10. TORK.
11. Unenco Electronics; a Hubbell Company.
12. Watt Stopper (The).

B. Description: PIR type with integral power-switching contacts rated for 800 W at 120-V ac, suitable for incandescent light fixtures, flourescent light fixtures with magnetic or electronic ballasts, or 1/6-hp motors; and rated for 1000 W at 277-V ac, suitable for incandescent light fixtures, flourescent light fixtures with magnetic or electronic ballasts, or 1/3-hp motors, minimum.

1. Include ground wire.
2. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (215 to 2150 lx); keeps lighting off when selected lighting level is present.

2.6 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Hubbell Lighting Inc.
2. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
3. Lithonia Lighting.
4. MYTECH Corporation.
5. Novitas, Inc.
6. RAB Electric Manufacturing, Inc.
7. Sensor Switch, Inc.
8. TORK.
9. Unenco Electronics; a Hubbell Company.
10. Watt Stopper (The).

B. General Description: Wall- or ceiling-mounting, solid-state units with a separate relay unit.

1. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when covered area is occupied and off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
2. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.

3. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
 4. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 5. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
 6. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
 7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (215 to 2150 lx); keeps lighting off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by using a combination of PIR and ultrasonic detection methods in area of coverage. Particular technology or combination of technologies that controls on and off functions shall be selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch (150-mm) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of at least 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving at least 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.

2.7 OUTDOOR MOTION SENSORS (PIR)

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Bryant Electric; a Hubbell Company.
 2. Hubbell Lighting Inc.
 3. Lithonia Lighting.
 4. Paragon Electric Co.
 5. RAB Electric Manufacturing, Inc.
 6. TORK.
 7. Watt Stopper (The).
- B. General Description: Suitable for operation in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 deg F (40 deg C) to 130 deg F (54 deg C), UL 773A rated as raintight.

1. Operation: Turn lights on when sensing infrared energy changes between background and moving body in area of coverage; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 2. Sensor Output: Suitable for switching 300 W of tungsten load at 120- or 277-V ac. Lampholders shall comply with UL 1598 for wet locations.
 3. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
 4. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outdoor junction box.
 - b. Relay: Internally mounted in a standard weatherproof electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 5. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
 6. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
 7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 1 to 20 fc (11 to 215 lx); keeps lighting off during daylight hours.
- C. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch (150-mm) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of at least 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm)
- D. Detection Coverage: Up to 35 feet (11 m), with a field of view of 180 degrees.

2.8 MULTIPOLE CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
 2. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; a division of Emerson Electric Co.
 3. Cutler-Hammer; Eaton Corporation.
 4. Fisher Pierce.
 5. GE Industrial Systems; Total Lighting Control.
 6. Grasslin Controls Corporation.
 7. Hubbell Lighting Inc.
 8. Lithonia Lighting.
 9. MicroLite Corporation.
 10. TORK.
 11. Touchplate Technologies, Inc.
 12. Watt Stopper (The).
- B. Description: Electrically operated and **mechanically** held, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.

1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
2. Control-Coil Voltage: Match control power source.

2.9 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG, complying with Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables".
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, complying with Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG, complying with Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- D. Install unshielded, twisted-pair cable for control and signal transmission conductors, complying with Division 16 Section "Voice and Data Communication Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve at least 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install field-mounting transient voltage suppressors for lighting control devices in Category A locations that do not have integral line-voltage surge protection.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

- F. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Operational Test: Verify actuation of each sensor and adjust time delays.
- B. Remove and replace lighting control devices where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site outside normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 16145

SECTION 16289

TRANSIENT VOLTAGE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes TVSSs for low-voltage power, control, and communication equipment.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for devices with integral TVSSs.
 - 2. Division 16 Section "Switchboards" for factory-installed TVSSs.
 - 3. Division 16 Section "Panelboards" for factory-installed TVSSs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
- B. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- C. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Product Certificates: For transient voltage suppression devices, signed by product manufacturer certifying compliance with the following standards:
 - 1. UL 1283.
 - 2. UL 1449 2nd Edition (2005).
- C. Field quality-control test reports, including the following:
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.

3. Failed test results and corrective action taken to achieve requirements.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transient voltage suppression devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

E. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain suppression devices and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, dimensional requirements, and electrical performance of suppressors and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with IEEE C62.41, "IEEE Guide for Surge Voltages in Low Voltage AC Power Circuits," and test devices according to IEEE C62.45, "IEEE Guide on Surge Testing for Equipment Connected to Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits."

E. Comply with NEMA LS 1, "Low Voltage Surge Protection Devices."

F. Comply with UL 1283, "Electromagnetic Interference Filters," and UL 1449 2nd Edition, "Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

B. Service Conditions: Rate surge protection devices for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage: Not less than 115 percent of nominal system operating voltage.
2. Operating Temperature: 30 to 120 deg F (0 to 50 deg C).
3. Humidity: 0 to 85 percent, noncondensing.
4. Altitude: Less than 20,000 feet (6090 m) above sea level.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location of field-mounted surge suppressors to allow adequate clearances for maintenance.
- B. Coordinate surge protection devices with Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" (if present).

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of surge suppressors that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Cord-Connected, Plug-in Surge Suppressors: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electronic equipment connected to circuits protected by surge suppressors.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Replaceable Protection Modules: One of each size and type installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advanced Protection Technologies, Inc.
 - 2. Atlantic Scientific.
 - 3. Current Technology, Inc.
 - 4. Cutler-Hammer, Inc.; Eaton Corporation.
 - 5. Entrelec International.
 - 6. General Electric Company.
 - 7. Innovative Technology, Inc.
 - 8. Intermatic, Inc.
 - 9. LEA International.
 - 10. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
 - 11. Liebert Corporation; a division of Emerson.
 - 12. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 13. Square D; Schneider Electric.
 - 14. Surge Suppression Incorporated.
 - 15. United Power Corporation.

2.2 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSORS

- A. Surge Protection Device Description: Non-modular, sine-wave-tracking type with the following features and accessories:
1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
 2. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
 3. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
- B. Surge Protection Device Description: Modular design with field-replaceable modules, sine-wave-tracking type with the following features and accessories:
1. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
 2. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
 3. Integral disconnect switch.
 4. Redundant suppression circuits.
 5. Redundant replaceable modules.
 6. Arrangement with copper bus bars and for bolted connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
 7. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
 8. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
 9. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
 10. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
 11. Surge-event operations counter.
- C. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 320 kA per phase.
- D. Connection Means: Permanently wired.
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with voltages of 208Y/120, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
 2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- F. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, 3-wire circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
 2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- G. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for voltages of 240, 480, or 600, 3-phase, 3-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
1. Line to Line: 1000 V for 240 V.
 2. Line to Ground: 1000 V for 240 V.

2.3 PANELBOARD SUPPRESSORS

- A. Surge Protection Device Description: Non-modular, sine-wave-tracking type with the following features and accessories:
 - 1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
 - 2. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
 - 3. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
- B. Surge Protection Device Description: Modular design with field-replaceable modules, sine-wave-tracking type with the following features and accessories:
 - 1. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
 - 2. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
 - 3. Integral disconnect switch.
 - 4. Redundant suppression circuits.
 - 5. Redundant replaceable modules.
 - 6. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
 - 7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
 - 8. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
 - 9. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V, ac, for remote monitoring of protection status. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
 - 10. Surge-event operations counter.
- C. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per phase.
- D. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with voltages of 208Y/120, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
 - 1. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
 - 2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
 - 3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, 3-wire circuits shall be as follows:
 - 1. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
 - 2. Line to Ground: 400 V.
 - 3. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- F. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for voltages of 240, 480, or 600, 3-phase, 3-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
 - 1. Line to Line: 1000 V for 240 V.
 - 2. Line to Ground: 800 V for 240 V.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. NEMA 250, with type matching the enclosure of panel or device being protected.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

- A. Install devices at service entrance on load side, with ground lead bonded to service entrance ground.
- B. Install devices for panelboard and auxiliary panels with conductors or buses between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.
 - 1. Provide multipole, 100-A circuit breaker as a dedicated disconnect for suppressor, unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 PLACING SYSTEM INTO SERVICE

- A. Do not energize or connect service entrance equipment to their sources until surge protection devices are installed and connected.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust equipment installation, including connections and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
 - 1. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.
- B. Testing: Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. After installing surge protection devices, but before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS, "Surge Arresters, Low-Voltage Surge Protection Devices" Section. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transient voltage suppression devices. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 16289

SECTION 16400

MAIN ELECTRICAL SERVICE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and install an electric service entrance and related distribution equipment as indicated on the floor plan, diagrams, schedules, specifications, and notes. All equipment shall be new and UL listed.

1.2 ELECTRICAL SERVICE

- A. Secondary service will be 120/208 volts, 3 phase, 4 wire, 60 hertz AC.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall make all arrangements with the electric utility company and pay all charges made by the electric utility for permanent electric service to the project. In the event that the electric utility's charges are not available at the time the project is bid, the Electrical Contractor shall include a \$10,000 allowance in his bid price to cover any possible utility charges and shall state this in his bid proposal.
- C. The Electrical Contractor shall properly ground the electrical system as required by the National Electrical Code. The ground wire for the service entrance shall be run in conduit and made to the main water service and connected ahead of any valve or cutoff.
- D. The conduit used for service entrance shall be galvanized rigid steel unless otherwise noted on the drawings.
- E. Conductors for the service entrance shall be copper dual rated types THHN/THWN unless otherwise noted. The use of Aluminum conductors in any capacity is strictly prohibited on this contract without the express written permission of the engineer.
- F. The Power Company will furnish and install the primary service cable and the pad mounted transformer, as well as make final connections to the transformer. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and install the secondary service, the pad for the pad mounted transformer, and the conduit for the primary cable.

1.3 METERING

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall provide and install raceway, and install current transformer cabinet and/or meter trim for metering facilities as required by the electric utility serving the project.

The electric utility will provide the meter installation including meter, current transformers, and connections.

- B. Metering will be by the Power Company. Provide one 1¼-inch empty conduit from CT cabinet to the meter base. The Electrical Contractor will provide and install the appropriately sized meter base and CT cabinet. The Power Company will run control wires to the meter. The CT's will be furnished by the Power Company and will be installed by the Electrical Contractor.
- C. The Electrical Contractor shall verify all requirements for the metering, and furnish all miscellaneous components not provided by the utility company at no additional cost to the Owner.

1.4 GROUNDING

- A. The conduit systems, neutral conductors and busses for the wiring system, and the telephone system shall be securely grounded. The ground connections shall be National Electrical Code grounds in each case. A ground shall be established and tests carried out to indicate that satisfactory ground has been established in accordance with the National Electrical Code. Written results of this test shall be presented to the Architect immediately upon request if asked for.

END OF SECTION 16400

SECTION 16410

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following individually mounted, enclosed switches and circuit breakers:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers.
 - 4. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GD: General duty.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. HD: Heavy duty.
- D. RMS: Root mean square.
- E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 3. Short-circuit current rating.
 - 4. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Field quality-control test reports including the following:
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's field service report.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures," include the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of circuit breaker.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with other construction, including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Spares: For the following:
 - a. Potential Transformer Fuses: Six.
 - b. Control-Power Fuses: Six.
 - c. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Six.
 - d. Fuses for Fusible Switches: Three of each size.
 - e. Fuses for Fused Power Circuit Devices: Six.
 - 2. Spare Indicating Lights: Six of each type installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FUSIBLE AND NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
 - 2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D/Group Schneider.

- B. Fusible Switch, 600 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Nonfusible Switch, 600 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded, and bonded; and labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Auxiliary set of contacts arranged to open before switch blades open.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS AND SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
 - 2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D/Group Schneider.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: NEMA AB 1, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic Trip-Unit Circuit Breakers: RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
 - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with [5] [30]-mA trip sensitivity.
- C. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories:
 - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.

2. Lugs: Mechanical style with compression lug kits suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 3. Application Listing: Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 5. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 6. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
 8. Auxiliary Switch: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 9. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 10. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
- D. Molded-Case Switches: Molded-case circuit breaker with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- E. Molded-Case Switch Accessories:
1. Lugs: Mechanical style with compression lug kits suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and material of conductors.
 2. Application Listing: Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
 3. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage. Provide "dummy" trip unit where required for proper operation.
 4. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay. Provide "dummy" trip unit where required for proper operation.
 5. Auxiliary Switch: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 6. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. NEMA AB 1 and NEMA KS 1 to meet environmental conditions of installed location.
1. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 2. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 3. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

4. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7C.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Verify structural requirements with structural engineer.
- B. Concrete base is specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints," and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 3.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 1, NEMA PB 1.1, and NEMA PB 2.1 for installation of enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
- B. Mount individual wall-mounting switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor floor-mounting switches to concrete base.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. Enclosure Nameplates: Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate as specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Prepare for acceptance testing as follows:
 - 1. Inspect mechanical and electrical connections.
 - 2. Verify switch and relay type and labeling verification.
 - 3. Verify rating of installed fuses.
 - 4. Inspect proper installation of type, size, quantity, and arrangement of mounting or anchorage devices complying with manufacturer's certification.
- C. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Test mounting and anchorage devices according to requirements in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
 - 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 4. Infrared Scanning:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Open or remove doors or panels so connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-Up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each unit 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments, Equipment and Reports:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 2) Prepare a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers included and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, vacuum dirt and debris from interiors; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.
- B. Inspect exposed surfaces and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 16410

SECTION 16415

TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:
 - 1. Automatic transfer switches.
 - 2. Non-automatic transfer switches.
 - 3. Remote annunciation system.
 - 4. Remote annunciation and control system.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 13 Section "Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" for automatic transfer switches for fire pumps.
 - 2. Division 13 Section "Electric-Drive, Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps" for automatic transfer switches for fire pumps.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Single-line diagram. Show connections between transfer switch, bypass/isolation switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transfer switches, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

- a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures," include the following:

1. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
2. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintain a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs within a response period of less than eight hours from time of notification.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic transfer switches, bypass/isolation switches, nonautomatic transfer switches, remote annunciators, and remote annunciator and control panels through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, for emergency service under UL 1008, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Comply with NFPA 99.

G. Comply with NFPA 110.

H. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Contactor Transfer Switches:

- a. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
- b. Emerson; ASCO Power Technologies, LP.
- c. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
- d. GE Zenith Controls.
- e. Kohler Co.; Generator Division.
- f. Onan Corp./Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
- g. Russelectric, Inc.
- h. Spectrum Detroit Diesel.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFER-SWITCH PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
- C. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels have communication capability matched with remote device.
- D. Solid-State Controls: Repetitive accuracy of all settings is plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- E. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- F. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.

- H. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 3R, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.
- J. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, either by color code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable tape markers at terminations.
 - 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 - 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 - 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
- K. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions.
- L. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are not acceptable.
 - 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 - 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Conventional automatic transfer-switch units, rated 225 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.

2.3 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- B. Switching Arrangement: Double-throw type, incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during normal functioning, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- D. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- E. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval is adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.

- F. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- G. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so it occurs only when the two sources are synchronized in phase. Relay compares phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiates transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer is initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
- H. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay: Controls designate starters so they disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters is through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Time delay for reconnecting individual motor loads is adjustable between 1 and 60 seconds, and settings are as indicated. Relay contacts handling motor-control circuit inrush and seal currents are rated for actual currents to be encountered.
- I. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator has a programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Pause is adjustable from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum and factory set for 0.5 second, unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Pause is disabled unless both sources are live.

2.4 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER-SWITCH FEATURES

- A. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Senses low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage is adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage is adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
- B. Time delay for override of normal-source voltage sensing delays transfer and engine start signals. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
- C. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevents premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage is adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency is adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
- D. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Provides automatic defeat of delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
- E. Test Switch: Simulates normal-source failure.

- F. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
- G. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - 1. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - 2. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
- H. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
- I. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
- J. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
- K. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- L. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- M. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods are adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings are for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - 1. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - 2. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - 3. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is not available.

2.5 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR SYSTEM

- A. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel annunciates conditions for indicated transfer switches. Annunciation includes the following:
 - 1. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.

2. Switch position.
3. Switch in test mode.
4. Failure of communication link.

B. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.

1. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
2. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
3. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Enclosures: Manufacturer's standard enamel over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and primer.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Four-Pole Switches: Where four-pole switches are indicated, install neutral switching.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."

B. Floor-Mounted Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.

1. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 2 inches (50 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switch, unless otherwise indicated. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Comply with Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall, unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Identify components according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

3.3 WIRING TO REMOTE COMPONENTS

- A. Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.22.3. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
 - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.

4. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
 - f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
5. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
 - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
 - b. Observe reaction of circuit-interrupting devices when simulated fault current is applied at sensors.

- C. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- D. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment as specified below. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."
1. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 16415

SECTION 16441

SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- D. RMS: Root mean square.
- E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of switchboard, overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
 - a. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - c. Short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.

- d. Descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
 - e. Utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
 - f. Mimic-bus diagram.
 - g. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
- 2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified finish, for color selection.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Field quality-control test reports including the following:
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures," include the following:
 - 1. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
 - 2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 - 3. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards and panelboards through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 2, "Deadfront Distribution Switchboards."
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
- B. Store indoors in clean dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
- C. If stored in areas subjected to weather, cover switchboards to provide protection from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards; install electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.
- D. Handle switchboards according to NEMA PB 2.1 and NECA 400.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- C. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- D. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted

under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's and Owner's written permission.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size and type, but no fewer than 2 of each size and type.
 2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size and type, but no fewer than 2 of each size and type.
 3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size and type, but no fewer than 3 of each size and type.
 4. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size and type, but no fewer than 3 of each size and type.
 5. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size and type, but no fewer than 3 of each size and type.
 6. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size and type, but no fewer than 1 of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Protection Div.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D.

B. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboard: Fixed, individually mounted main device, panel-mounted branches, and sections rear aligned.

C. Front- and Side-Accessible Switchboard: Fixed, individually mounted main device; panel-mounted branches; and sections rear aligned.

D. Nominal System Voltage: 208Y/120 V.

E. Main-Bus Continuous: As indicated on Switchboard Schedule.

F. Fabricate and test switchboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."

G. Enclosure: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.

H. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.

I. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.

J. Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.

1. Space-Heater Control: Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point.
2. Space-Heater Power Source: Transformer, factory installed in switchboard.

K. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.

L. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.

M. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:

1. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
2. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.

3. Removable covers shall form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear shall be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
4. Bottom shall be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
5. Cable supports shall be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.

N. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity with feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
2. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, silver-plated, copper runback bus extensions equipped with pressure connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
3. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-2-inch- (6-by-50-mm-) minimum-size, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with pressure connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors. For busway feeders, extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.
4. Contact Surfaces of Buses: Silver plated.
5. Main Phase Buses, Neutral Buses, and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
6. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
7. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses, unless otherwise indicated, equipped with pressure connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus are braced.

O. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

2.3 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Electronic trip-unit circuit breakers (400A and larger) shall have RMS sensing, field-replaceable rating plug, and the following field-adjustable settings:

- a. Instantaneous trip.

- b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
 - 3. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 4. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 5-mA trip sensitivity.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories: Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
- 1. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - 2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
 - 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - 4. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - 5. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - 6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
 - 7. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - 8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - 9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.

2.4 INSTRUMENTATION

- A. Instrument Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1, IEEE C57.13, and the following:
 - 1. Potential Transformers: Secondary voltage rating of 120 V and NEMA accuracy class of 0.3 with burdens of W, X, and Y.
 - 2. Current Transformers: Ratios shall be as indicated with accuracy class and burden suitable for connected relays, meters, and instruments.
 - 3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kV.
 - 4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondaries to ground overcurrent relays to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker ground-fault protection.

B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:

1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:
 - a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - e. Megavars: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - h. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 2 percent; demand interval programmable from 5 to 60 minutes.
 - i. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 2 percent. Accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.

C. Ammeters, Voltmeters, and Power-Factor Meters: ANSI C39.1.

1. Meters: 4-inch (100-mm) diameter or 6 inches (150 mm) square, flush or semiflush, with antiparallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.
2. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.

D. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.

1. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and, where a neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
2. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.

2.5 CONTROL POWER

- A. Control Circuits: 120 V, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.
- B. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.
- C. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Furnish accessory set including tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Furnish portable test set to test functions of solid-state trip devices without removal from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.
- C. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.
- D. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for switchboard interior, including instruments and instrument transformers.

2.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Mimic Bus: Continuously integrated mimic bus factory applied to front of switchboard. Arrange in single-line diagram format, using symbols and letter designations consistent with final mimic-bus diagram. Coordinate mimic-bus segments with devices in switchboard sections to which they are applied. Produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchboard components and connections.
- B. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components, complete with lettered designations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 2.1 and NECA 40.

- B. Install and anchor switchboards level on concrete bases, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Concrete base is specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints," and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 3.
 - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
 - 2. For switchboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.
- D. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.
- E. Install overcurrent protective devices, transient voltage suppression devices, and instrumentation.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- F. Install spare-fuse cabinet.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Sections 7.1, 7.5, 7.6, 7.9, 7.10, 7.11, and 7.14 as appropriate. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments, Equipment, and Reports:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 2) Prepare a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of switchboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 16441

SECTION 16442

PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Load centers.
 - 4. Transient voltage suppression panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- D. RMS: Root mean square.
- E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
 - a. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.

- b. Bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
- c. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
- d. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints." Include the following:

- 1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
- 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Field quality-control test reports including the following:

- 1. Test procedures used.
- 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
- 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

E. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures," include the following:

- 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
- 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.

- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of panelboards and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's, and Owner's written permission.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, and encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Keys: Six spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Panelboards, Overcurrent Protective Devices, Controllers, Contactors, and Accessories:
 - a. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
 - b. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Protection Div.
 - c. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - d. Square D.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets. NEMA PB 1, Type 1.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - b. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - d. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7C.
 - 2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
 - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
 - 4. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
 - 5. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 - 6. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.
 - 7. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer coat.
 - 8. Directory Card: With transparent protective cover, mounted in metal frame, inside panelboard door.

C. Phase and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; bonded to box.
3. Isolated Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; insulated from box.
4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
5. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material.

1. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
2. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Compression type.
3. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

E. Service Equipment Label: UL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with main service disconnect switches.

F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

2.3 PANELBOARD SHORT-CIRCUIT RATING

- A. Series rating of equipment or devices is strictly prohibited.
- B. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.4 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS (xDPx designation)

- A. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Omit for fused-switch panelboards.
- B. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Circuit breaker.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 1. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
 2. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.

2.5 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS (xLx designation)

- A. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- B. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.6 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic trip-unit circuit breakers shall have RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; and with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
 - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 5-mA trip sensitivity.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories: Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 1. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - 2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
 - 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - 4. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - 5. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - 6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
 - 7. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.

8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
10. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory-assembled to operate as a single unit.

2.7 CONTROLLERS

- A. Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, combination controller equipped for panelboard mounting and including the following accessories:
 1. Individual control-power transformers.
 2. Fuses for control-power transformers.
 3. Bimetallic-element overload relay.
 4. Indicating lights.
 5. Seal-in contact.
 6. Six convertible auxiliary contacts.
 7. Push buttons.
 8. Selector switches.
- B. Contactors: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, combination controller equipped for panelboard mounting and including the following accessories:
 1. Individual control-power transformers.
 2. Fuses for control-power transformers.
 3. Indicating lights.
 4. Seal-in contact.
 5. Six convertible auxiliary contacts.
 6. Push buttons.
 7. Selector switches.
- C. Controller Disconnect Switches: Adjustable instantaneous-trip circuit breaker integrally mounted and interlocked with controller.
 1. Auxiliary Contacts: Integral with disconnect switches to de-energize external control-power source.
- D. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held general-purpose controller.
 1. Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.

2.8 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Furnish accessory set including tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

- B. Furnish portable test set to test functions of solid-state trip devices without removal from panelboard.
- C. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for panelboard interior, including overcurrent protective devices and other components.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- C. Mount top of trim 74 inches (1880 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mount plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish.
- E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- G. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- H. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
 - 1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
 - 2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 - 3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
 - 4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 15 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.
- D. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scanning of each panelboard. Remove panel fronts so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies panelboards checked and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

END OF SECTION 16442

SECTION 16511

INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
- 2. Emergency lighting units.
- 3. Exit signs.
- 4. Lighting fixture supports.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 13/16 Section "Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.
- 2. Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for manual wall-box dimmers for incandescent lamps.
- 3. Division 16 Section "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
- 4. Division 16 Section "Dimming Controls" for architectural dimming systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BF: Ballast factor.
- B. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- C. CU: Coefficient of utilization.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

- G. RCR: Room cavity ratio.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
 - 1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
 - 2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
 - 3. Ballast.
 - 4. Energy-efficiency data.
 - 5. Air and Thermal Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Furnish data required in "Submittals" Article in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 - 6. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 - 7. Life, output, and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
 - 8. Photometric data, in IESNA format, based on laboratory tests of each lighting fixture type, outfitted with lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
 - a. For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by the manufacturer.
 - b. Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show details of nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Indicate dimensions, weights, methods of field assembly, components, features, and accessories.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Lighting fixtures.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.
 - 4. Other items in finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Air outlets and inlets.
 - b. Speakers.
 - c. Sprinklers.
 - d. Smoke and fire detectors.
 - e. Occupancy sensors.

- f. Access panels.
- 5. Perimeter moldings.
- D. Samples for Verification: Interior lighting fixtures designated for sample submission in Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule. Each sample shall include the following:
 - 1. Lamps: Specified units installed.
 - 2. Accessories: Cords and plugs.
- E. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, signed by product manufacturer.
- F. Qualification Data: For agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
- G. Field quality-control test reports.
- H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- I. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. FMG Compliance: Lighting fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FMG.
- E. Mockups: Provide interior lighting fixtures for room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of fixtures for mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approved fixtures in mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is

supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining nine years.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.
- B. Special Warranty for Ballasts: Manufacturer's standard form in which ballast manufacturer agrees to repair or replace ballasts that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Electronic Ballasts: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Electromagnetic Ballasts: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Warranty for T5 and T8 Fluorescent Lamps: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by lamp manufacturer agreeing to replace lamps that fail in materials or workmanship, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 2. Plastic Diffusers and Lenses: 1 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 3. Battery and Charger Data: One for each emergency lighting unit.
 - 4. Ballasts: 1 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 5. Globes and Guards: 1 for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
- B. In Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule where titles below are column or row headings that introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
- B. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
- C. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
- D. HID Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
- E. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- F. Sheet Metal Components: Steel, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- G. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- H. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
 - 4. Laminated Silver Metallized Film: 90 percent.
- I. Plastic Diffusers, Covers, and Globes:
 - 1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

- a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless different thickness is indicated.
 - b. UV stabilized.
- 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic-interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.
- K. Air-Handling Fluorescent Fixtures: For use with plenum ceiling for air return and heat extraction and for attaching an air-diffuser-boot assembly specified in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 - 1. Air Supply Units: Slots in one or both side trims join with air-diffuser-boot assemblies.
 - 2. Heat Removal Units: Air path leads through lamp cavity.
 - 3. Combination Heat Removal and Air Supply Unit: Heat is removed through lamp cavity at both ends of the fixture door with air supply same as for air supply units.
 - 4. Dampers: Operable from outside fixture for control of return-air volume.
 - 5. Static Fixture: Air supply slots are blanked off, and fixture appearance matches active units.

2.3 BALLASTS FOR LINEAR FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Electronic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.11; programmed-start type, unless otherwise indicated, and designed for type and quantity of lamps served. Ballasts shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated.
 - 1. Sound Rating: A.
 - 2. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.
 - 3. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
 - 4. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
 - 5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
 - 6. BF: 0.85 or higher.
 - 7. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
 - 8. Parallel Lamp Circuits: Multiple lamp ballasts shall comply with ANSI C 82.11 and shall be connected to maintain full light output on surviving lamps if one or more lamps fail.
- B. Electronic Programmed-Start Ballasts for T5 and T5HO Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.11 and the following:
 - 1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit for T5 diameter lamps.
 - 2. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
 - 3. Sound Rating: A.
 - 4. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.
 - 5. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
 - 6. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.

7. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
 8. BF: 0.95 or higher, unless otherwise indicated.
 9. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
- C. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1; energy saving, high-power factor, Class P, and having automatic-reset thermal protection.
1. Ballast Manufacturer Certification: Indicated by label.
- D. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
1. Temperatures 0 Deg F (Minus 17 Deg C) and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
 2. Temperatures Minus 20 Deg F (Minus 29 Deg C) and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with indicated lamp types.
- E. Ballasts for Low Electromagnetic-Interference Environments: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for consumer equipment.
- F. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
1. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 2. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
 3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.
- G. Ballasts for Bi-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
1. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high-and low-level and off.
 - a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - b. Low-Level Operation: 50 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 2. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
 3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated.

2.4 BALLASTS FOR COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Description: Electronic programmed rapid-start type, complying with ANSI C 82.11, designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated. Ballast shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated:
1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
 2. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
 3. Sound Rating: A.
 4. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.

5. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
6. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
7. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
8. BF: 0.95 or higher, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
10. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
11. Ballast Case Temperature: 75 deg C, maximum.

B. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.

1. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
2. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.

2.5 EMERGENCY FLUORESCENT POWER UNIT

A. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate 1 fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
2. Night-Light Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously.
3. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
 - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
6. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

2.6 BALLASTS FOR HID LAMPS

- A. Electromagnetic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029. Include the following features, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
 2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C) for single-lamp ballasts.
 3. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 4. Open-circuit operation that will not reduce average life.
 5. Low-Noise Ballasts: Manufacturers' standard epoxy-encapsulated models designed to minimize audible fixture noise.
- B. Electronic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
 2. Sound Rating: A.
 3. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 15 percent.
 4. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
 5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
 6. Power Factor: .90 or higher.
 7. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
 8. Protection: Class P thermal cutout.
 9. Retain subparagraph and associated subparagraphs below for bi-level ballasts.
 10. Bi-Level Dimming Ballast: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated fixture between high- and low-level and off.
 - a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - b. Low-Level Operation: 50 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - c. Compatibility: Certified by ballast manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
 11. Continuous Dimming Ballast: Dimming range shall be from 100 to 35 percent of rated lamp lumens without flicker.
 - a. Ballast Input Watts: Reduced to a maximum of 50 percent of normal at lowest dimming setting.
 - b. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
- C. Auxiliary Instant-On Quartz System: Factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when power outages occur. System automatically turns

quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent light output.

- D. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type, with solid-state igniter/starter. Igniter-starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
 - 1. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
 - a. Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
 - b. Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac RMS.
 - 2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 40 deg F (Minus 40 deg C).
 - 3. Open-circuit operation shall not reduce average lamp life.

2.7 EXIT SIGNS

- A. Description: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
 - 1. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, 2 for each fixture, 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
 - 2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 70,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
 - 3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
 - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 - b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
 - c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 - f. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
 - g. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency

operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

2.8 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

A. Description: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.

1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
3. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
4. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
5. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
6. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures.
7. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of 15 minutes when power is restored after an outage.
8. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

2.9 FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Low-Mercury Lamps: Comply with EPA's toxicity characteristic leaching procedure test; shall yield less than 0.2 mg of mercury per liter when tested according to NEMA LL 1.
- B. T8 rapid-start low-mercury lamps, rated 32 W maximum, nominal length of 48 inches (1220 mm), 2800 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 4100 K, and average rated life 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. T8 rapid-start low-mercury lamps, rated 17 W maximum, nominal length of 24 inches (610 mm), 1300 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 4100 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. T5 rapid-start low-mercury lamps, rated 28 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches (1150 mm), 2900 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85

(minimum), color temperature 4100 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.

- E. T5HO rapid-start, high-output low-mercury lamps, rated 54 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches (1150 mm), 5000 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 4100 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Compact Fluorescent Lamps: 4-Pin, low mercury, CRI 80 (minimum), color temperature 4100 K, average rated life of 10,000 hours at 3 hours operation per start, and suitable for use with dimming ballasts, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. 13 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 900 initial lumens (minimum).
 - 2. 18 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 1200 initial lumens (minimum).
 - 3. 26 W: T4, double or triple tube, rated 1800 initial lumens (minimum).
 - 4. 32 W: T4, triple tube, rated 2400 initial lumens (minimum).
 - 5. 42 W: T4, triple tube, rated 3200 initial lumens (minimum).
 - 6. 55 W: T4, triple tube, rated 4300 initial lumens (minimum).

2.10 HID LAMPS

- A. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
 - 1. Dual-Arc Tube Lamps: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
- B. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.1372, with a minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- C. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- D. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 4000 K.

2.11 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.

- D. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
- E. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
- F. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- G. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

2.12 RETROFIT KITS FOR FLUORESCENT LIGHTING FIXTURES

- A. Comply with UL 1598 listing requirements.
 - 1. Reflector Kit: UL 1598, Type I. Suitable for two- to four-lamp, surface-mounted or recessed lighting fixtures by improving reflectivity of fixture surfaces.
 - 2. Ballast and Lamp Change Kit: UL 1598, Type II. Suitable for changing existing ballast, lamps, and sockets.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Lighting fixtures: Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls. Install lamps in each fixture.
- B. Support for Lighting Fixtures in or on Grid-Type Suspended Ceilings: Use grid as a support element.
 - 1. Install a minimum of four ceiling support system rods or wires for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from lighting fixture corners.
 - 2. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
 - 3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch (20-mm) metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
 - 4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
- C. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.

3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.

D. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.

E. Adjust aimable lighting fixtures to provide required light intensities.

F. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.

B. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

END OF SECTION 16511

SECTION 16521

EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
- 2. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
- 3. Poles and accessories.
- 4. Luminaire lowering devices.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 16 Section "Interior Lighting" for exterior luminaires normally mounted on exterior surfaces of buildings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- B. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- C. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
- D. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.
- E. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

1.4 STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS CRITERIA FOR POLE SELECTION

- A. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4.
- B. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2224 N), distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4.

- C. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (143.6 Pa), applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4.
- D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4.
 - 1. Wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding 50 feet (15 m) in height is 110 mph (177 km/h).
 - 2. Wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) or less in height is 70 mph (113 km/h).

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
 - 1. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
 - 2. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
 - 3. Details of installation and construction.
 - 4. Luminaire materials.
 - 5. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.
 - a. Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - 6. Photoelectric relays.
 - 7. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
 - 8. Lamps, including life, output, and energy-efficiency data.
 - 9. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
 - 10. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
 - 11. Anchor bolts for poles.
 - 12. Manufactured pole foundations.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
 - 2. Design calculations, certified by a qualified professional engineer, indicating strength of screw foundations and soil conditions on which they are based.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Verification: For products designated for sample submission in Exterior Lighting Device Schedule. Each sample shall include lamps and ballasts.
- D. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load

requirements in AASHTO LTS-4 and that load imposed by luminaire has been included in design.

- E. Qualification Data: For agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- H. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
- B. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- C. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Luminaires: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

2. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Lamps: Replace lamps and fuses that fail within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion; furnish replacement lamps and fuses that fail within the second 12 months from date of Substantial Completion.
5. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 2. Glass and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 3. Ballasts: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 4. Globes and Guards: 10 for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
- B. In Exterior Lighting Device Schedule where titles below are column or row headings that introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 LUMINAIRES, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
- C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- D. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
- G. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
- H. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- I. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.
- J. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- K. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- L. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- M. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

- a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

N. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

- a. Color: As selected by the architect.

2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.

B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx) and off at 4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx) with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.

1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with NEMA C136.10.
2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 FLUORESCENT BALLASTS AND LAMPS

A. Low-Temperature Ballast Capability: Rated by its manufacturer for reliable starting and operation of indicated lamp(s) at temperatures minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C) and higher.

B. Ballast Characteristics:

1. Power Factor: 90 percent, minimum.
2. Sound Rating: A.

3. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.
 4. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1, energy-saving, high power factor, Class P, automatic-reset thermal protection.
 5. Case Temperature for Compact Lamp Ballasts: 65 deg C, maximum.
 6. Transient-Voltage Protection: Comply with IEEE C62.41 Category A or better.
- C. Low-Temperature Lamp Capability: Rated for reliable starting and operation with ballast provided at temperatures minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C) and higher.
- D. Fluorescent Lamps: Low-mercury type. Comply with the EPA's toxicity characteristic leaching procedure test; shall yield less than 0.2 mg of mercury per liter when tested according to NEMA LL 1.

2.5 BALLASTS FOR HID LAMPS

- A. Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029 and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Include the following features, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
 2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C).
 3. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 4. Ballast Fuses: One in each ungrounded power supply conductor. Voltage and current ratings as recommended by ballast manufacturer.
- B. Auxiliary, Instant-On, Quartz System: Factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when momentary power outages occur. System automatically turns quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent of light output.
- C. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type with solid-state igniter/starter and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
1. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
 - a. Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
 - b. Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac RMS.
 2. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 40 deg F (Minus 40 deg C).

2.6 HID LAMPS

- A. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.

1. Dual-Arc Tube Lamp: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
 - B. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.1372, with a minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
 - C. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
 - D. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 4000 K.
- 2.7 POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
- A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4.
 1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in Part 1 "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article, with a gust factor of 1.3.
 2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
 - B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts, unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
 1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, unless stainless-steel items are indicated.
 3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
 - D. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - E. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.
 - F. Breakaway Supports: Frangible breakaway supports, tested by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, according to AASHTO LTS-4.

2.8 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex Receptacle: 120 V, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly complying with Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for ground-fault circuit-interrupter type.
 - 1. Recessed, 12 inches (300 mm) above finished grade.
 - 2. Nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass cover, that when mounted results in NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure.
 - 3. With cord opening.
 - 4. With lockable hasp and latch that complies with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
- B. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
- C. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.
- D. Transformer Type Base: Same material and color as pole. Coordinate dimensions to suit pole's base flange and accept ballast(s).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
 - 1. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources.

3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
 - 1. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: 60 inches (1520 mm).
 - 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet (3 m).
 - 3. Trees: 15 feet (5 m).

- C. Embedded Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
 - 1. Make holes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter larger than pole diameter.
 - 2. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) at 28 days, and finish in a dome above finished grade.
 - 3. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through concrete dome. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
 - 4. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
- D. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.
- E. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
- B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTING LUMINAIRES

- A. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
- B. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
 - 3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- B. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.
 - 1. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IESNA testing guide(s):
 - a. IESNA LM-5, "Photometric Measurements of Area and Sports Lighting."
 - b. IESNA LM-50, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Lighting Installations."
 - c. IESNA LM-52, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Sign Installations."
 - d. IESNA LM-64, "Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas."
 - e. IESNA LM-72, "Directional Positioning of Photometric Data."
- D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaire lowering devices. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 16521

SECTION 16721

FIRE ALARM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fire alarm systems.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 8 Section "Door Hardware" for door closers and holders with associated smoke detectors, electric door locks, and release devices that interface with the fire alarm system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. FACP: Fire alarm control panel.
- B. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- C. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- D. Definitions in NFPA 72 apply to fire alarm terms used in this Section.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Noncoded, addressable system; multiplexed signal transmission dedicated to fire alarm service only.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 72.
- B. Premises protection includes public area and private guest rooms.
- C. Fire alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:
 - 1. Manual stations.

2. Heat detectors.
3. Smoke detectors.
4. Verified automatic alarm operation of smoke detectors.
5. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
6. Fire extinguishing system operation.
7. Fire standpipe system.

D. Fire alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Alarm notification appliances shall operate continuously.
2. Identify alarm at the FACP and remote annunciators.
3. De-energize electromagnetic door holders.
4. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
5. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
6. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
7. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
8. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire alarm mode.
9. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of system serving zone where alarm was initiated.
10. Record events in the system memory.
11. Record events by the system printer.

E. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices or actions:

1. Operation of a fire-protection system valve tamper.

F. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices or actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts and grounds of wiring for initiating device, signaling line, and notification-appliance circuits.
2. Opening, tampering, or removal of alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of primary power at the FACP.
4. Ground or a single break in FACP internal circuits.
5. Abnormal ac voltage at the FACP.
6. A break in standby battery circuitry.
7. Failure of battery charging.
8. Abnormal position of any switch at the FACP or annunciator.
9. Fire-pump power failure, including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
10. Low-air-pressure switch operation on a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.

G. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Ring trouble bell and annunciate at the FACP and remote annunciators. Record the event on system printer.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire alarm system design.
 - b. Fire alarm certified by NICET, minimum Level III.
 2. System Operation Description: Detailed description for this Project, including method of operation and supervision of each type of circuit and sequence of operations for manually and automatically initiated system inputs and outputs. Manufacturer's standard descriptions for generic systems are not acceptable.
 3. Device Address List: Coordinate with final system programming.
 4. System riser diagram with device addresses, conduit sizes, and cable and wire types and sizes.
 5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Include diagrams for equipment and for system with all terminals and interconnections identified. Show wiring color code.
 6. Batteries: Size calculations.
 7. Duct Smoke Detectors: Performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for the complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
 8. Ductwork Coordination Drawings: Plans, sections, and elevations of ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating the installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, the detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
 9. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
 10. Floor Plans: Indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire alarm system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Comply with NFPA 72, Appendix A, recommendations for Owner's manual. Include abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at the FACP.
- F. Submittals to Authorities Having Jurisdiction: In addition to distribution requirements for submittals specified in Division 1 Section "Submittals," make an identical submittal to authorities having jurisdiction. To facilitate review, include copies of annotated Contract Drawings as needed to depict component locations. Resubmit if required to make clarifications or revisions to obtain approval. On receipt of comments from authorities having jurisdiction, submit them to Architect for review.

G. Documentation:

1. Approval and Acceptance: Provide the "Record of Completion" form according to NFPA 72 to Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Record of Completion Documents: Provide the "Permanent Records" according to NFPA 72 to Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction. Format of the written sequence of operation shall be the optional input/output matrix.
 - a. Hard copies on paper to Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Electronic media may be provided to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel certified by NICET as Fire Alarm Level III.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but not less than 1 unit.
 2. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but not less than 1 unit.
 3. Smoke, Fire, and Flame Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but not less than 1 unit of each type.
 4. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to 2 percent of amount of each type installed, but not less than 1 unit of each type.
 5. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked and tamperproofed components.
 6. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.
 7. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. FACP and Equipment:
 - a. Edwards Systems Technology Inc.
 - b. Fire Control Instruments, Inc.; a GE-Honeywell Company.
 - c. Fire-Lite Alarms; a GE-Honeywell Company.
 - d. Gamewell Company (The).
 - e. Grinnell Fire Protection; a Tyco International Company.
 - f. NOTIFIER; a GE-Honeywell Company.
 - g. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.; a Cerberus Division.
 - h. Silent Knight; a GE-Honeywell Company.
 - i. SimplexGrinnell LP; a Tyco International Company.
2. Wire and Cable:
 - a. Comtran Corporation.
 - b. Helix/HiTemp Cables, Inc.; a Draka USA Company.
 - c. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corporation; a Marmon Group Company.
 - d. West Penn Wire/CDT; a division of Cable Design Technologies.
3. Audible and Visual Signals:
 - a. Amseco; a division of Kobishi America, Inc.
 - b. Commercial Products Group.
 - c. Gentex Corporation.
 - d. System Sensor; a GE-Honeywell Company.

2.2 FACP

A. General Description:

1. Modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, UL 864 listed.
2. Addressable initiation devices that communicate device identity and status.
 - a. Smoke sensors shall additionally communicate sensitivity setting and allow for adjustment of sensitivity at the FACP.
 - b. Temperature sensors shall additionally test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
3. Addressable control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment.

B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at the FACP and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, three line(s) of 80 characters, minimum.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands; and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.

C. Circuits:

1. Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A, Style 2.
 - a. System Layout: Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.
2. Notification-Appliance Circuits: NFPA 72, Class B, Style W.
3. Actuation of alarm notification appliances, annunciation, smoke control, elevator recall, and actuation of suppression systems shall occur within 10 seconds after the activation of an initiating device.
4. Electrical monitoring for the integrity of wiring external to the FACP for mechanical equipment shutdown and magnetic door-holding circuits is not required, provided a break in the circuit will cause doors to close and mechanical equipment to shut down.

D. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm verification" signal at the FACP.
2. Activate a listed and approved "alarm verification" sequence at the FACP and the detector.
3. Record events by the system printer.
4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
5. Cancel FACP indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

E. Notification-Appliance Circuit: Operation shall sound in a temporal pattern, complying with ANSI S3.41.

F. Elevator Controls: Heat detector operation shuts down elevator power by operating a shunt trip in a circuit breaker feeding the elevator.

G. Power Supply for Supervision Equipment: Supply for audible and visual equipment for supervision of the ac power shall be from a dedicated dc power supply, and power for the dc component shall be from the ac supply.

H. Alarm Silencing, Trouble, and Supervisory Alarm Reset: Manual reset at the FACP and remote annunciators, after initiating devices are restored to normal.

1. Silencing-switch operation halts alarm operation of notification appliances and activates an "alarm silence" light. Display of identity of the alarm zone or device is retained.
2. Subsequent alarm signals from other devices or zones reactivate notification appliances until silencing switch is operated again.
3. When alarm-initiating devices return to normal and system reset switch is operated, notification appliances operate again until alarm silence switch is reset.

I. Walk Test: A test mode to allow one person to test alarm and supervisory features of initiating devices. Enabling of this mode shall require the entry of a password. The FACP and annunciators shall display a test indication while the test is underway. If

testing ceases while in walk-test mode, after a preset delay, the system shall automatically return to normal.

- J. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and control of changes in those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and make a print-out of the final adjusted values on the system printer.
- K. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, trouble, and supervisory signals to a remote alarm station through a digital alarm communicator transmitter and telephone lines.
- L. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: A central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as a special module that is part of the FACP.
 - 1. Indicated number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones, or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall be UL 1711 listed.
 - a. Allow the application of and evacuation signal to indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
 - b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
 - c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
 - d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of the type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of the notification-appliance circuits of the FACP.
 - 2. Notification-Appliance Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A.
 - 3. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and the status of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
 - 4. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
- M. Service Modem: Ports shall be RS-232 for system printer and for connection to a dial-in terminal unit.
 - 1. The dial-in port shall allow remote access to the FACP for programming changes and system diagnostic routines. Access by a remote terminal shall be by encrypted password algorithm.
- N. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble), and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also print system reset event, including the same

information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.

- O. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signal, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be powered by the 24-V dc source.
 - 1. The alarm current draw of the entire fire alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
 - 2. Power supply shall have a dedicated fused safety switch for this connection at the service entrance equipment. Paint the switch box red and identify it with "FIRE ALARM SYSTEM POWER."
- P. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries and automatic battery charger and an automatic transfer switch.
 - 1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.
 - 2. Battery and Charger Capacity: Comply with NFPA 72.
- Q. Surge Protection:
 - 1. Install surge protection on normal ac power for the FACP and its accessories. Comply with Division 16 Section "Transient Voltage Suppression" for auxiliary panel suppressors.
- R. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.3 MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOXES

- A. Description: UL 38 listed; finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color. Station shall show visible indication of operation. Mounted on recessed outlet box; if indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
 - 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type. With integral addressable module, arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
 - 2. Station Reset: Key-operated switch.
 - 3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure, hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
 - 4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure, hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

2.4 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. General Description:

1. UL 268 listed, operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
3. Multipurpose type, containing the following:
 - a. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
 - b. Piezoelectric sounder rated at 88 dBA at 10 feet (3 m) according to UL 464.
 - c. Heat sensor, combination rate-of-rise and fixed temperature.
4. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a plug-in module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection of building wiring.
5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type. Indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be analog-addressable type, individually monitored at the FACP for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition, and individually adjustable for sensitivity from the FACP.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic shall be selectable at the FACP for 15 or 20 deg F (8 or 11 deg C) per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at the FACP to operate at 135 or 155 deg F (57 or 68 deg C).
 - c. Provide multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Sensor: LED or infrared light source with matching silicon-cell receiver.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Between 2.5 and 3.5 percent/foot (0.008 and 0.011 percent/mm) smoke obscuration when tested according to UL 268A.

C. Ionization Smoke Detector:

1. Sensor: Responsive to both visible and invisible products of combustion. Self-compensating for changes in environmental conditions.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Between 0.5 and 1.7 percent/foot (0.0016 and 0.0056 percent/mm) smoke obscuration when tested according to UL 268A.

D. Beam-Type Smoke Detector: Each detector shall consist of a separate transmitter and receiver, and shall have the following features:

1. UL 268 listed, operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 2. Adjustable Sensitivity: At least six sensitivity levels, settable at the receiver, measured as percent of obscuration.
 3. Two selectable alarm delay settings, allowing each to be associated with a corresponding sensitivity.
 4. Trouble signal delay, fixed at 20 seconds.
 5. Separate Color-Coded LEDs: Indicate normal, alarm, and trouble status with remote indicator panels.
- E. Remote Air-Sampling Detector System: Includes air-sampling pipe network, a laser-based photoelectric detector, a sample transport fan, and a control unit.
1. UL 268 listed, operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 2. Pipe Network: Electrical metallic tubing connects control unit with designated sampling holes.
 3. Smoke Detector: Particle-counting type with continuous laser beam. Sensitivity adjustable to a minimum of three preset values.
 4. Sample Transport Fan: Centrifugal type, creating a minimum static pressure of 0.05-inch wg (12.5 Pa) at all sampling ports.
 5. Control Unit: Single or multizone unit as indicated. Provides same system power supply, supervision, and alarm features as specified for the central FACP plus separate trouble indication for airflow and detector problems.
 6. Signals to the Central FACP: Any type of local system trouble is reported to the central FACP as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each system zone are individually reported to the central FACP as separately identified zones.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors:
1. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
 - a. Sensor: LED or infrared light source with matching silicon-cell receiver.
 - b. Detector Sensitivity: Between 2.5 and 3.5 percent/foot (0.008 and 0.011 percent/mm) smoke obscuration when tested according to UL 268A.
 2. Ionization Smoke Detectors:
 - a. Sensor: Responsive to both visible and invisible products of combustion. Self-compensating for changes in environmental conditions.
 - b. Detector Sensitivity: Between 0.5 and 1.7 percent/foot (0.0016 and 0.0056 percent/mm) smoke obscuration when tested according to UL 268A.
 3. UL 268A listed, operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 4. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
 5. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a plug-in module that connects to a fixed base. The fixed base shall be designed for mounting

directly to the air duct. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.

- a. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: UL listed for use with the supplied detector. The enclosure shall comply with NEMA 250 requirements for Type 4X.
6. Self-Restoring: Detectors shall not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
7. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type. Indicating detector has operated and power-on status. Provide remote status and alarm indicator and test station where indicated.
8. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be analog-addressable type, individually monitored at the FACP for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition, and individually adjustable for sensitivity from the FACP.
9. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
10. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for the specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
11. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.5 NONSYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. Single-Station Smoke Detectors:

1. UL 217 listed, suitable for NFPA 101, Section 9.6.2.10 occupancies, operating at 120-V ac, with 9-V dc battery as the secondary power source. Provide with "low" or "missing" battery chirping-sound device.
2. Auxiliary Relays: One Form A and 1 form C, both rated at 0.5 A.
3. Audible Notification Appliance: Piezoelectric sounder rated at 90 dBA at 10 feet (3 m) according to UL 464.
4. Visible Notification Appliance: 177 candela strobe.
5. Heat sensor, 135 deg F (57 deg C) combination rate-of-rise and fixed temperature.
6. Test Switch: Push-to-test, simulates smoke at rated obscuration.
7. Tandem Connection: Allow tandem connection of number of indicated detectors; alarm on one detector shall actuate notification on all connected detectors.
8. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a plug-in module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
9. Self-Restoring: Detectors shall not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
10. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type. Indicating detector has operated and power-on status.

B. Single-Station Duct Detectors:

1. UL 268A listed, operating at 120-V ac.

2. Sensor: LED or infrared light source with matching silicon-cell receiver.
 - a. Detector Sensitivity: Between 2.5 and 3.5 percent/foot (0.008 and 0.011 percent/mm) smoke obscuration when tested according to UL 268A.
3. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a plug-in module that connects to a fixed base. The fixed base shall be designed for mounting directly to the air duct. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 - a. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: UL listed for use with the supplied detector. The enclosure shall comply with NEMA 250 requirements for Type 4X.
4. Self-Restoring: Detectors shall not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
5. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type. Indicating detector has operated and power-on status. Provide remote status and alarm indicator and test station where indicated.
6. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for the specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
7. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. General: UL 521 listed.
- B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F (57 deg C) or rate-of-rise of temperature that exceeds 15 deg F (8 deg C) per minute, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Mounting: Plug-in base, interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F (88 deg C).
 1. Mounting: Plug-in base, interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.
- D. Continuous Linear Heat-Detector System: Consists of detector cable and control unit.
 1. Detector Cable: Rated detection temperature 155 deg F (68 deg C). Listed for "regular" service and a standard environment.

Cable includes two steel actuator wires twisted together with spring pressure, wrapped with protective tape, and finished with PVC outer sheath. Each actuator wire is insulated with heat-sensitive material that reacts with heat to allow the cable twist pressure to short circuit wires at the location of elevated temperature.

2. Control Unit: Two-zone or multizone unit as indicated. Provides same system power supply, supervision, and alarm features as specified for the central FACP.
3. Signals to the Central FACP: Any type of local system trouble is reported to the central FACP as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each detection zone are individually reported to the central FACP as separately identified zones.
4. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.

2.7 FLAME DETECTORS

- A. Ultraviolet type with solid-state amplifier-switching circuit set for 10-second delay, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Mounting: Plug-in base, interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to the FACP.

2.8 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. Description: Equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly.
- B. Bells: Electric-vibrating, 24-V dc, under-dome type; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind the bell. Bells shall produce a sound-pressure level of 94 dBA, measured 10 feet (3 m) from the bell. 10-inch (254-mm) size, unless otherwise indicated. Bells are weatherproof where indicated.
- C. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.
- D. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.
- E. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet (3 m) from the horn.
- F. Visible Alarm Devices: Xenon strobe lights listed under UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum

faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) high letters on the lens.

1. Rated Light Output: 75 candela.
2. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.

G. Voice/Tone Speakers:

1. UL 1480 listed.
2. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
3. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
4. Mounting: Flush, semirecessed, or surface mounted; bidirectional as indicated.
5. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to the acoustical environment of the speaker location.

2.9 SPRINKLER SYSTEM REMOTE INDICATORS

- A. Remote status and alarm indicator and test stations, with LED indicating lights. Light is connected to flash when the associated device is in an alarm or trouble mode. Lamp is flush mounted in a single-gang wall plate. A red, laminated, phenolic-resin identification plate at the indicating light identifies, in engraved white letters, device initiating the signal and room where the smoke detector or valve is located. For water-flow switches, the identification plate also designates protected spaces downstream from the water-flow switch.

2.10 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching door plate.
1. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf (111-N) holding force.
 2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted, unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
 4. Rating: 120-V ac.
- B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.11 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Duplicate annunciator functions of the FACP for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Also duplicate manual switching functions of the FACP, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Class 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display same as the FACP. Controls with associated LEDs permit acknowledging,

silencing, resetting, and testing functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals identical to those in the FACP.

2.12 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. Description: Microelectronic monitor module listed for use in providing a system address for listed alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- B. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to the elevator controller to initiate elevator recall, and to a circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.

2.13 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Listed and labeled according to UL 632.
- B. Functional Performance: Unit receives an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from the FACP, and automatically captures one or two telephone lines and dials a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with the central station(s), the signal is transmitted. The unit supervises up to two telephone lines. Where supervising 2 lines, if service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, the unit initiates a local trouble signal and transmits a signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. When telephone service is restored, unit automatically reports that event to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, the local trouble signal is initiated.
- C. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger. Battery capacity is adequate to comply with NFPA 72 requirements.
- D. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.14 SYSTEM PRINTER

- A. Listed and labeled as an integral part of the fire alarm system.

2.15 WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Wire and cable for fire alarm systems shall be UL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- B. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.
 - 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70 Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire alarm signal service. UL listed as Type FPL, and complying with requirements in UL 1424 and in UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.

- C. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
 - 1. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
 - 2. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70 Type MC, copper conductors, TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, UL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Smoke or Heat Detector Spacing:
 - 1. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet (9 m).
 - 2. Spacing of heat detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas, shall be determined according to Appendix A in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Spacing of heat detectors shall be determined based on guidelines and recommendations in NFPA 72.
- B. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 3 feet (1 m) from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
- C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of the duct.
- D. Heat Detectors in Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location.
- E. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
- F. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- G. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.
- H. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling.
- I. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- J. FACP: Surface mount with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.

- K. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring according to the following:
 - 1. NECA 1.
 - 2. TIA/EIA 568-A.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes."
 - 1. Fire alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated raceway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and a different color-code for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- F. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum 1-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- G. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the FACP and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

- B. Install instructions frame in a location visible from the FACP.
- C. Paint power-supply disconnect switch red and label "FIRE ALARM."

3.4 GROUNDING

- A. Ground the FACP and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to the FACP.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Before requesting final approval of the installation, submit a written statement using the form for Record of Completion shown in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection listed in NFPA 72. Certify compliance with test parameters. All tests shall be conducted under the direct supervision of a NICET technician certified under the Fire Alarm Systems program at Level III.
 - a. Include the existing system in tests and inspections.
 - 3. Visual Inspection: Conduct a visual inspection before any testing. Use as-built drawings and system documentation for the inspection. Identify improperly located, damaged, or nonfunctional equipment, and correct before beginning tests.
 - 4. Testing: Follow procedure and record results complying with requirements in NFPA 72.
 - a. Detectors that are outside their marked sensitivity range shall be replaced.
 - 5. Test and Inspection Records: Prepare according to NFPA 72, including demonstration of sequences of operation by using the matrix-style form in Appendix A in NFPA 70.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project outside normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- B. Follow-Up Tests and Inspections: After date of Substantial Completion, test the fire alarm system complying with testing and

visual inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Perform tests and inspections listed for three monthly, and one quarterly, periods.

- C. Semiannual Test and Inspection: Six months after date of Substantial Completion, test the fire alarm system complying with the testing and visual inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Perform tests and inspections listed for monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- D. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test the fire alarm system complying with the testing and visual inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Perform tests and inspections listed for monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the fire alarm system, appliances, and devices. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 16721

SECTION 16753

DATA RACEWAY SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. General Summary: Provide conduit and raceway systems for data and communications wiring where shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation.
- B. Related work: Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
- C. Notify Architect when work is scheduled to be installed. Provide a tentative schedule, divided into phases of installation. Use agreed schedule for installation and for field observation by Architect.

1.2 DEFINITION OF TERMS

- A. The following terms shall apply when referring to data raceway systems:
 - 1. Data system: Refers to the providing of a raceway system(s), equipment backboard, equipment rack(s), power to the equipment and other products as prescribed for use by other trades.
 - 2. Access provider: the operator of any facility that is used to convey telecommunications signals to and from the premises
 - 3. Adapter: a device that enables any or all of the following: different sizes or types of plugs to mate with one another or to fit into a telecommunications outlet; the rearrangement of leads; large cables with numerous wires to fan out into smaller groups of wires; and interconnection between cables.
 - 4. Attenuation: the decrease in magnitude of transmission signal strength between points, expressed in dB as the ratio of output to input signal level.
 - 5. Backbone: a facility, such as a pathway, cable or conductor, between telecommunications rooms or floor distribution terminals, entrance facilities, and the equipment rooms within or between buildings.
 - 6. Cable: an assembly of one or more insulated conductors or optical fibers within an enveloping sheath.
 - 7. Cable run: a length of installed media, which may include other components along its path.
 - 8. Cable sheath: a covering over the an optical fiber or conductor assembly that may include one or more metallic or petroleum-based reinforcing member.
 - 9. Channel: the end-to-end transmission path between two points at which application-specific equipment is connected.
 - 10. Connecting hardware: a device providing mechanical cable terminations
 - 11. Cross-connect: a facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
 - 12. Data: any electronically encoded information, including, but not limited to, internet traffic, computer data traffic, voice signals and any other electronic communications

13. End user: the user of the premises cabling system, or the end user who receives or sends data across the premises cabling system
14. Entrance facility: an entrance to a building for both public and private network service cables (including wireless) including the entrance point of the building and continuing to the entrance room or space.
15. Entrance point: the point of emergence for telecommunications cabling through an exterior wall, a floor or from a conduit.
16. Entrance room: a space in which the joining of inter or intra building telecommunications facilities
17. Equipment room: (see entrance room) a centralized space for telecommunications equipment that usually houses a main or intermediate cross-connect.
18. Horizontal cabling: the cabling between and including the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect
19. Horizontal cross-connect: a cross-connect of horizontal cabling to other cabling
20. Intermediate cross-connect: a cross-connect between the first level and second level backbone cabling
21. Main cross-connect: a cross-connect for first level backbone cables, entrance cables and equipment cables
22. Outlet/connector: a connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates
23. Patch cord: a length of cord with a plug on one or both ends
24. Patch panel: a connecting hardware system that facilitates cable termination and cabling administration using patch cords
25. Plenum: a compartment or chamber to which one or more air ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system; also used to describe cabling rated as safe to run through compartments or chambers to which one or more air ducts are connected and that form part of the air distribution system.
26. Star topology: a topology in which telecommunications cables are distributed from a central point.
27. Telecommunications: any transmission, emission, and reception of signs, signals, writings, images and sounds that is information of any nature by cable, radio, optical or other electromagnetic or optical systems.
28. Terminal: a point at which information may enter or leave a communications network; the input-output associated equipment; and a device by means of which wires may be connected to each other.
29. Wire: an individually insulated solid or stranded metallic conductor.
30. Data Raceway System: including, but not limited to, any necessary hardware, such as conduit, connectors, braces, terminators, caps, converters, tools and expertise necessary to provide a reliable, safe and sound system for carrying data wiring, as compliant with all applicable laws of governmental agencies having jurisdiction over said work, and with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-A standard (Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces) and its addenda and TIA/EIA-568-B standard (Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard) and its addenda, where it is not in conflict with those laws.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Process: Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
- B. Product data: Within 60 calendar days after the Contractor has received the Owner's Notice to Proceed, submit:
 - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this Section.
 - 2. Shop Drawings showing all details of fabrication, installation, and anchorage of the work of this Section, and its interface with the work of other trades.
- C. Drawings and Specifications: The contract drawings and these specifications shall be considered as complimentary each to the other. What is called for by one shall be considered binding as if called for by both. Where conflicts occur, secure clarification from the Architect/Engineer prior to submitting bids; otherwise, provide for the more costly quality or quantity. The drawings are diagrammatical and dimension figures should be followed in preference to scaling; verify dimensions with the architectural drawings and with field conditions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Workforce: Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- B. Experience: Use a subcontractor having not less than five years successful experience in installation of similar products, as approved by the Architect.
- C. Quality of work: All work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner so as to insure a high quality job and to present a neat and mechanical appearance when completed. All materials used shall be new and UL approved for their intended use where such standards have been established.
- D. Applicable Standards: Work included in this section shall comply with all applicable laws of governmental agencies having jurisdiction over said work, and with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-A standard (Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces) and its addendums and TIA/EIA-568-B standard (Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard) and its addendums, where it is not in conflict with those laws.
- E. Site Conditions: Before beginning work the contractor or subcontractor shall visit the project site and ascertain all existing conditions. Adjustment to the work made necessary by actual field conditions shall be made at no additional cost.

- F. Handle conduit, connectors, terminators, caps and other raceway system components with great care to prevent undesired bending, end damage and scoring the finish. Store conduit, connectors, terminators, caps and other raceway system components inside and protect from harsh environmental elements. When necessary to store outdoors, elevate the components well above grade and enclose with durable, watertight wrapping.

1.5 COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. Coordinate the work in this section so as to conform to the progress of the work of the other trades. Phasing of the work shall be done as soon as possible with the entire installation compiled as soon as the condition of the building permits. As well, review the equipment submittals of all other trades and any Owner-furnished equipment for physical connection requirements, maximum bend radius, minimum distance between electrical and data wiring, electrical voltage, phase, wiring and load characteristics and wiring details.

PART 2 - PRODUCT/MATERIAL/MANUFACTURER DESCRIPTION

2.1 GENERAL

- A. All materials are to be new and of the type and quality specified. Materials must be delivered by labeled, unopened containers. All electrical products must bear the U.L. label.

2.02 CONDUITS

- A. Comply with specifications as set out in Section 16130, Raceways & Boxes.
- B. Minimum trade size is 3/4" size conduit.
- C. Minimum bend radius of the conduit shall be no more than the lesser of ten times the diameter of the conduit or the minimum bend radius of the cable or transmission medium carried.
- D. Conduit will be of one of the following types and from one of the following manufacturers:
 - 1. Electrical Metallic Tubing: shall be galvanized with compression type fittings in damp or wet locations and steel setscrew type fittings in dry locations; Pittsburgh, Republic or equal type conduit is required.
 - 2. Flexible Steel: shall be galvanized with set screw fittings.
 - 3. Liquid-Tight Flexible Steel: Shall have a galvanized steel core covered by a liquid-tight PVC jacket and compression type liquid-type fittings; Anaconda or equal type is required.
 - 4. Rigid Aluminum Conduit: Shall be heavy-wall type with threaded fittings (not allowed in contact with concrete).
 - 5. Rigid Steel Conduit, Intermediate Grade Conduit: Shall be galvanized with threaded fittings; Pittsburgh, Republic or equal type conduit is required.

- E. Where substitution of required type is to be used, substitutes must be of the same style and/or quality level, as to be determined by the Architect. Substitutions should be submitted in accordance with Section 01630.

2.3 EQUIPMENT BACKBOARDS

- A. Provide 3/4" thick American Plywood Association A/D grade plywood, treated with a fire retardant and two coats of light grey paint.
- B. Backboard shall be started 6" above finished floor and extended 8'6" above finished floor, unless otherwise specified.
- C. The backboard shall cover all walls of the equipment room or closet, unless otherwise specified.

2.4 PULL TAPE

- A. Provide a pull tape in each empty conduit for use by others. Pull tapes shall have a minimum tensile strength of 130 pounds.
- B. Carlon Part No. TL38203 (5/8", 1800-pound tensile strength) is required, or equivalent when approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 01630.
- C. A "pull line," or rope-like pull tape may be approved by the Architect if it meets or exceeds the standards set forth above.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate with the data system installer and data system manufacturers as directed by the Owner, Architect, Data and Telecommunications Installer and/or Engineer.
- B. Coordinate mounting and connection details of equipment prior to equipment and electrical rough in. Provide sketches of these layouts as per shop drawing requirements, in compliance with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
- C. Install products as per Drawings and these specifications.
- D. Provide for maintenance of this work for one year following final approval by governing agencies. Maintenance includes all work required in manufacturer's instructions such as inspection, adjustment, repair and replacement of parts as required.
- E. After installation, inspect all work for improper installation or damage.
- F. Operating fixtures must perform smoothly. Repair or replace any defective work. Repair work shall be undetectable. Redo repairs if work is still defective, as directed by the Architect or governing regulatory agency.

- G. Clean the work area and remove all scrap and excess materials from the site.

3.02 INSTALLATION CONDITIONS

- A. Coated rigid steel or heavy-wall: Rigid steel conduit.
- B. Slab on grade and areas subject to moisture: Rigid steel conduit.
- C. Poured concrete and slabs other than on grade: Rigid steel or intermediate grade conduit.
- D. Overhead and in wall cavities in dry locations: Rigid steel, intermediate grade, electrical metallic tubing or rigid aluminum conduit.
- E. Final connections to end data outlet boxes: Flexible steel conduit (6'-0" maximum).
- F. Exposed conduit in areas subject to physical damage or harsh indoor environmental factors: Rigid steel or intermediate grade conduit.
- G. When possible, conduit shall be colored orange. If conduit, such as rigid steel or other metal-based conduits, the conduit shall be marked with fluorescent orange spray paint at an interval no less than every three feet. Cap terminators for conduit shall be either orange or marked with orange fluorescent spray paint. Other equipment not available in orange shall be marked with orange fluorescent spray paint as to indicate its function.
- H. Other connections, including endpoint connections to the entrance facility, entrance room, horizontal cross connect location, outlet/connector, intermediate cross connect location, terminal or premises endpoint for a cable run not exposed to harsh environmental conditions: Electrical metallic tubing, using compression type fittings or intermediate grade conduit.
- I. Outlet boxes shall be double gang plastic boxes with plaster rings as appropriate for the finished surface, regardless of the number of outlets terminating in the box. Double gang boxes are used to preserve proper bend radius for telecommunications cabling.
- J. Outlet boxes shall be manufactured by Carlon (Model No. A52151D), or other manufacturer and model number as approved according to Section 01630 and Section 01340.
- K. Plaster rings shall be manufactured by Carlon (Model No. A410, A411, A412, A413, A414, A420, A421 or A422) as necessary for wall finish and number of outlets.
- L. No communications outlet box may share the same outlet box as any electrical system.
- M. Plaster rings shall allow for the placement of a Decora-style faceplate.

- N. Outlet locations shown on the drawings are approximate unless a dimensioned location is specified. Obtain Architect's approval before relocating any outlet due to conflicts.
- O. Outlet boxes shall be installed at height above finished floor as specified on the dimensioned drawings. Otherwise, the outlet shall be installed 18" above finished floor or match the power outlet height.
- P. Every precaution should be taken to protect on site employees, the building, equipment and future occupants.

3.03 INSTALLATION EXECUTION

- A. General: Conduit is to be installed concealed except in equipment rooms and where exposed runs are specifically indicated. Exposed conduits shall be installed parallel with or at right angles to walls, ceilings, structural members, etc. The conduit layout shown on the drawings is diagrammatical only and must be adjusted for actual conditions. Offsets are not shown and must be furnished as required. Keep conduit runs at least 12 inches away from parallel runs of flues, steam pipes and other heat producing sources. Conduit sizes shall not be smaller than shown on the drawings and shall comply with Chapter 9 of the NEC where no size is indicated. The minimum trade size shall be 3/4". Conduit carrying any data wiring that crosses over fluorescent lighting fixtures must run at a ninety degree angle to the fixture and must not run parallel to the fixture except where placed six feet away. Conduit carrying any data wiring that crosses over other electrical wiring, exposed or in conduits, must run at a ninety degree angle to the wire or conduit and must not run parallel to the wire or conduit except where placed four feet away for 110V or 120V lines, and six feet for 220V.
- B. Support: All conduits shall be securely fastened and supported within three feet of each outlet box, junction box, pull box, cabinet, termination, fitting, and other conduit end points and at intervals not exceeding 8' between using a clamp, or when PVC conduit is used, a plastic tie. Conduit shall not be welded nor tied with metallic wires.
- C. Underground: Where rigid steel conduit is installed underground, the conduit and couplings shall be provided with a factory applied PVC coating or shall be painted with two coats of asphaltum paint. If plastic conduit is used for below ground runs the turn up through the floor shall be made with a rigid steel elbow. Plastic conduit used for underground service entrance shall be encased in two inches of concrete minimum. All runs of plastic conduit underground shall be provided with a properly sized ground wire. Underground conduit shall be a minimum of 2" in diameter. Underground conduit shall also contain two runs of pull line or pull tape whether empty or not as specified in this section.
- D. In Slab: The overall diameter of any conduit installed in a slab shall not exceed 1/3 the slab thickness. Run the conduit in the center of the slab and route to avoid displacing reinforcing steel.

- E. Conduit Care: Conduit ends shall be cut square, reamed smooth and fully inserted into fittings. Crushed, deformed, nicked or conduit that otherwise would allow for environmental elements to enter the conduit shall not be installed. Where damage occurs after installation, the damaged conduit is to be replaced at the contractors cost. Cap conduit ends with watertight plastic caps or plugs during construction to keep out debris. Maintain the integrity and cleanliness of the conduit's interior throughout the construction process until such time that wiring is to be pulled and conduit is to be terminated. Taping conduit ends is not acceptable. Failure to comply could result in Architect ordering replacement of said conduit at contractor's expense.
- F. Bushings and Grommets: Where raceway is terminated not in an enclosure, such as at a backboard or in a furred space, provide insulated throat bushings. Field-inserted throats are not acceptable.
- G. Conduit Seals: Where conduit passes through a wall, floor or partition that is fire rated, the conduit and its fittings shall meet or exceed fire ratings for walls the conduit passes through, and be U.L. labeled to match wall/barrier fire rating, but not less than 3 hours. The conduit shall have a flanged fitting to provide both fire and smoke stopping. The conduit and its fittings shall conform to ASTM E-119 fire endurance and hose stream criterion. All conduit runs that extend from the interior to the exterior of the building shall be sealed to prevent the circulation of air without damaging the conduit or cabling inside the conduit.
- H. Conduit runs: Conduit should be grouped into parallel runs where practical. Where two or more conduits are run parallel and adjacent they shall be installed on a multiple conduit support channel, or be securely fastened together and then fastened using a multi-conduit clamp or brace. Conduit concealed above a lay-in ceiling shall be supported independent of the ceiling construction with clearance to allow easy removal of ceiling panels and light fixtures. Where pull boxes are placed above lay-in ceilings.
- I. Below-grade runs: Use a thru wall waterproof seal on each conduit that penetrates a wall at or below grade level.
- J. Conduits shall be completely continuous from outlet to outlet, from outlet to cabinet, junction box and pull box. They shall enter and be secured to all boxes and other terminating locations in such a manner that each system will be continuous from service to all outlets. All conduit runs from cabinets and junction boxes shall terminate in approved outlet boxes or conduit fittings.
- K. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected. Failure to examine and/or correct existing conditions will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for the proper operation of this work nor be the basis for a claim for additional compensation by the Owner. Install the work of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's written

instructions, the approved submittals, and shop drawings.

- L. Coordinate with other trades to assure proper and adequate provisions in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this section.
- M. Install each item in its proper location, fire-caulked in all areas where required by the Code, firmly anchored into position, level, and plumb, and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 16760

AUDIO/VISUAL/TELECOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Items in this section shall apply to all sections regarding television signal distribuion, closed circuit television, background music system, audio/visual components of the meeting room and other video, audio and computer data delivery systems.
- B. All materials and equipment specified herein have been determined to provide an overall physical appearance and background of proven operation desired by the Owner, and therefore, to establish a standard of quality required for this project. If equipment or material other than that specified is proposed to be furnished, this Contractor shall be required to furnish the Architect with such samples as he reuires, the same to be submitted by the Architect to an independent testing laboratory selected by the Architect for tests to determine the actual equality of the propsed substitute items. The Architect reserves the right to examine, and where necessary, have additional tests made of the actual equipment delivered and installed on the jobsite to insure that the installed equipment is equal in fact to that specified. The Architect's decision, based on these test and other factors, shall be final.
- C. At the time of project closeout, subit a minimum of four sets of each product manual.
- D. Site Conditions: Before beginning work the contractor or sub-contractor shall visit the project site and ascertain all existing conditions. Adjustment to the work made necessary by actual field conditions shall be made at no additional cost.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Work under this contract shall include the furnishing of all labor, materials, tools, transportation services, supervision, and other related costs necessary to complete the installation of the audio, video and other systems as directed by this document, as illustrated on the accompanying documents or as directed by the Architect. Work is comprised of, but not limited to, the following principal items:
 - 1. Sound reinforcement system
 - 2. Portable audio and video equipment systems and accessories
 - 3. Audio cables, outlets, relays, connections and wiring
 - 4. Custom panels and equipment as required.
- B. All conduits, junction boxes (except as noted otherwise), power wire and power circuits, etc. for the aforementioned systems are provided under Section 16753. This does not, however, relieve the contractor from the responsibility for complete, working, overall systems and coordination with other trades. Failure to do so shall not be reason for addition to contract amount because of omission or error in installing conduits or boxes.

- C. Provide all necessary patch cables, power cables, power adaptors, cable, connecting hardware, cross-connects, intermediate cross-connects, outlets/connectors, patch panels, terminals and or wires that make the system operate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS/MATERIALS/MANUFACTURER DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND DATA CABLING

- A. Where horizontal telecommunications cable is specified for telephone or other electronic communications, unless otherwise specified, contractor should provide cable meeting or exceeding the following standards:

1. Cable shall be of Category 6 (CAT 6) grade, as specified by TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1, specifying CAT 6 grade cabling. Cable shall be 4-pair 100 ohm Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP).
2. The total horizontal distance of the cable path from the outlet to the telecommunications room shall not exceed 275 feet, including termination loss and slack.
3. For telephone purposes, cable color shall be blue.
4. Cable shall have an internal pull thread for ease in installation.
5. Cable shall have an internal plastic core that separates pairs into a four quadrant pattern.
6. Cable shall be manufactured by AMP Netconnect (Part No. 1499038-6 for blue telephone systems cabling), or Belden (Part No. 7881A-6 for blue telephone systems).

- B. Where horizontal telecommunications cable is specified for internet or computer data communications, unless otherwise specified, contractor should provide cable meeting or exceeding the following standards:

1. Cable shall be of Category 6 (CAT 6) grade, as specified by TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1, specifying CAT 6 grade cabling. Cable shall be 4-pair 100ohm Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP).
2. The total horizontal distance of the cable path from the outlet to the telecommunications room shall not exceed 275 feet, including termination loss and slack.
3. For data grade, cable shall be yellow.
4. Cable shall have an internal pull thread for ease in installation.
5. Cable shall have an internal plastic core that separates pairs into a four quadrant pattern.
6. Cable shall be manufactured by AMP Netconnect (Part No. 1499038-8 for yellow data cabling), or Belden (Part No. 7881A-4 for yellow data systems).

- C. Where telecommunications backbone cabling from an intermediate cross-connect or main cross-connect is specified for telephone or other electronic communications, not including cabling for internet or computer data communications, unless otherwise specified, contractor should provide cable meeting or exceeding the following standards:

1. Because of the limited amount of data transmitted over a telephone communications line, cable shall be of Category 5e (CAT 5e) grade, as specified by TIA/EIA-568-B.2, specifying CAT 5e grade cabling. Cable shall be 25-pair 100 ohm Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP).

2. The total vertical distance of the cable path from an intermediate cross-connect to the telecommunications room shall not exceed 275 feet, including termination loss and slack.
 3. For telephone purposes, cable shall be blue.
 4. Cable shall have an internal pull thread for ease in installation.
 5. Cable shall be manufactured by AMP Netconnect (Part No. 1499418-3 for blue telephone cabling).
- D. Where data backbone cabling from an intermediate cross-connect or main-cross connect is specified for internet or computer data communications, unless otherwise specified, contractor should provide cable meeting or exceeding the following standards:
1. Cable shall be of Category 6 (CAT 6) grade, as specified by TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1, specifying CAT 6 grade cabling. Cable shall be 4-pair 100 ohm Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP).
 2. The total vertical distance of the cable path from an intermediate cross-connect to the telecommunications room shall not exceed 275 feet, including termination loss and slack.
 3. For data purposes, cable shall be yellow.
 4. Cable shall have an internal pull thread for ease in installation.
 5. Cable shall have an internal plastic core that separates pairs into a four quadrant pattern.
 6. Cable shall be manufactured by AMP Netconnect (Part No. 1499038-8 for yellow data cabling), or Belden (Part No. 7881A-4 for yellow data systems).
- E. Under no circumstances shall cable or connecting equipment, including but not limited to punch blocks, patch panels, outlets, and connectors, be installed that is not consistent with the lowest common denominator of cabling grade from end-point to end-point, as in from outlet to telecommunications room. The minimum grade to be installed is CAT 5e for telephone backbone cabling and CAT 6 for all other data and telecommunications purposes, unless otherwise specified.

2.2 VIDEO/CCTV CABLING

- A. Where cabling for television signal distribution is specified for closed circuit television or cable television distribution wiring, unless otherwise specified, contractor should provide cable meeting or exceeding the following standards:
1. Cable shall be of RG-6/U grade. Cable shall have a core size of 18 AWG, as specified by the American Wire Gauge Standard for cable sizes. The core of said cable shall be solid-core, bare copper, with a diameter of 0.040". The core shall be surrounded by a gas-injected foam HDPE insulation. The foam core insulation shall be covered by a tinned copper braid shield. The entire cabling shall be encased in a PVC jacket.
 2. Cable shall be 75 ohms nominal impedance.
 3. Cable shall be sweep tested by the manufacturer before shipping and certified by the test as such.
 4. No discontinuities shall exist from 20 to 890 MHz on the cable.
 5. The total vertical distance of the cable path from the farthest outlet termination to the telecommunications room shall be so as to provide no more than 43dB signal to noise ratio, including termination signal loss and slack.

6. Cable shall be black.
7. Cable shall be UL listed.
8. No cable which shows bruises or shipping damages shall be installed in the system, nor shall any splices or connectors be installed in the conduit system.
9. Cable shall be manufactured by Belden (Part No. 9248) or West Penn (Part No. 815).

2.3 AUDIO/VIDEO/MONITOR CONNECTING CABLES

- A. Where cabling for connecting hardware related to audio/video/monitor distribution, unless otherwise specified, contractor should provide cable meeting or exceeding the following standards:
 1. Cables shall be supplied as approved by manufacturer of equipment to be connected.
 2. Cables shall have connectors exactly matching those on each endpoint of the cable. No splices or connector changers will be allowed.
 3. Cables shall not allow for interference from surrounding electrical and data cabling.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL CABLE INSTALLATION

- A. Contractor shall coordinate work with other trades.
- B. The Architect shall have access to all construction sites at all times for purposes of inspecting communications facilities and equipment and for direction on how to properly install all equipment specified in this and related Sections. To enable these inspections, contractors must:
 1. Provide a progress schedule with the installation of components in each individual section.
 2. Notify the Architect as per Section 01630 in writing of any change in mechanical drawings and specifications affecting systems covered under this specification.
 3. Provide proper access for facilities and inspections.
 4. Notify the Architect when the work is ready for inspection.
- C. The contractor shall provide a final checkout certification letter and inspection reports to the Architect on all aspects covered under this specification as per Section 01630. All systems installed by outside vendors will be required to provide a three year vendor warranty against mechanical failure due to faulty workmanship, as well as a 15 year performance warranty.
- D. The contractor shall submit to the Architect a detailed test procedure to be used for every section covered under this Section as per Section 01630. All cables shall be tested for maximum allowable length, attenuation, impedance, ground shorts, continuity of communications conductors, shields, NEXT and crosstalk.
- E. Cable shall be contained in conduit where subject to vandalism or physical or environmental abuse, compliant with Section 16753.
- F. All cabling shall be tested for compliance to meet ANSI/TIA/EIA standards for the cable level installed. A copy of the final test

results shall be delivered to the Architect in both written and electronic form within 10 days of the project turnover date. In the case an ANSI/TIA/EIA compliant code is not available for cabling grade, the Architect may visually inspect said system to insure compliance with general guidelines specified in this section.

- G. Take such precautions as are necessary to prevent and guard against electromagnetic and electrostatic hum on audio systems. Take such precautions as are necessary to prevent and guard against electromagnetic and electrostatic artifacts on video systems.
- H. Where cabling for television signal distribution is specified for closed circuit television or cable television distribution wiring above drop tile ceilings, unless otherwise specified, shall be exposed but strapped to structure above ceiling on a minimum of three foot centers. Cable shall be taut and shall not interfere with tile removal.
- I. Upon completion, copies of as built drawings related to communications work and all test results shall be submitted to the Architect for final approval and acceptance and made part of the document. The contractor shall guarantee 100 percent good pairs on all cables.
- J. Contractor will perform necessary testing before accepting a job. Failure during testing will result in re-pulling cables at contractor's expense.
- K. A high degree of excellence in installation and techniques and overall system operation is expected, therefore all work must be performed by trained technicians on the staff of the contractor and shall have direct control of the installation and maintenance personnel assigned to this work.
- L. Upon completion of the equipment installation, it shall be the responsibility of the contractor to perform the necessary mixing, matching, balancing and impedance matching of all signals for proper signal distribution.
- M. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected. Failure to examine and/or correct existing conditions will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for the proper operation of this work nor be the basis for a claim for additional compensation by the Owner. Install the work of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, the approved submittals, and shop drawings.
- N. Coordinate with other trades to assure proper and adequate provisions in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this section.
- O. Install each item in its proper location, fire-caulked in all areas where required by the Electrical Code, firmly anchored into position, level, and plumb, and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 16765

TELEVISION DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. General Summary: Furnish and install a complete Television Distribution System including wiring and TV distribution equipment.
- B. Related work: Documents affecting work of this section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these specifications.
- C. Work Schedule: Notify Architect when work is scheduled to be installed. Provide a tentative schedule, divided into phases of installation. Use agreed schedule for installation and for field observation by Architect.
- D. Sections Referenced: Follow guidelines outlined in Section 16753, 16760.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Provide a complete and operational system for the pick-up, amplification and reproduction of available cable channels.
- B. The system shall be designed for a 43dB signal to noise ratio and shall provide a signal level with a minimum of +5 dBmv and a maximum of 20 dBmv at each outlet.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Process: Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
- B. Product data: Within 60 calendar days after the Contractor has received the Owner's Notice to Proceed, submit:
 - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this Section.
 - 2. Shop Drawings showing all details of fabrication, installation, and anchorage of the work of this Section, and its interface with the work of other trades.
- C. Drawings and Specifications: The contract drawings and these specifications shall be considered as complimentary each to the other. What is called for by one shall be considered binding as if called for by both. Where conflicts occur, secure clarification from the Architect/Engineer prior to submitting bids; otherwise, provide for the more costly quality or quantity. The drawings are diagrammatical and dimension figures should be followed in preference to scaling; verify dimensions with the architectural drawings and with field conditions.
- D. As-built drawings shall be provided to the Architect no less than 10 days after the stop of work outlined in this section.

- E. A one line drawing of the entire system shall be included in the submittal package showing signal levels of dBmv at the input and output of each device, at the head end, splitters, amplifiers, room outlets, type of cable, and model number of all equipment shall be shown on a one line drawing. Submittals not having this drawing shall be rejected without further review.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Workforce: The contractor or an approved sub-contractor shall be an authorized distributor for the equipment supplied under this contract. He shall maintain his own service organization which shall be under his direct control, capable of furnishing service to the owner and provide the warranty as herein specified.
- B. An adequate number of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this section should be used.
- C. Experience: Use a subcontractor having not less than five years successful experience in the installation of similar products, as approved by the Architect.
- D. Quality of work: All work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner so as to insure a high quality job and to present a neat and mechanical appearance when completed. All materials used shall be new and UL approved for their intended use where such standards have been established.
- E. Applicable Standards: Work included in this section shall comply with all applicable laws of governmental agencies having jurisdiction over said work, and with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-A standard (Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces) and its addendums and TIA/EIA-568-B standard (Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard) and its addendums, where it is not in conflict with those laws.
- F. Site Conditions: Before submitting a bid the contractor or sub-contractor shall visit the project site and ascertain all existing conditions. Adjustment to the work made necessary by actual field conditions shall be made at no additional cost.
- G. Handle cable and components with great care to prevent undesired bending, end damage and scoring the finish. Store cable and components inside and protect from harsh environmental elements.

1.5 COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. Coordinate the work in this section so as to conform to the progress of the work of the other trades. Phasing of the work shall be done as soon as possible with the entire installation completed as soon as the condition of the building permits. As well, review the equipment submittals of all other trades and any Owner-furnished equipment for physical connection requirements, maximum bend radius, minimum distance between electrical and data wiring, electrical voltage, phase, wiring and load characteristics and wiring details.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. All Materials are to be new and of the type and quality specified. Materials must be delivered by labeled, unopened containers. All electrical products must bear the U.L. label.
- B. The equipment herein specified is based on equipment manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, Leviton Voice and Data Division or Atlas/Soundolier.

2.2 CHANNEL FILTER/CONVERSION FILTER

- A. Contractor shall provide a system that will allow for the filtering of stations 51-68.
- B. These channels must be rerouted to consecutive channels above channel 68 for viewing.
- C. Channels must not exceed the total number of CCTV channels viewable by the in-room televisions.

2.3 CHANNEL CONVERTER

- A. Contractor shall provide a solid state channel converter having 75 ohms coaxial inputs and outputs.
- B. The local oscillator shall be crystal controlled.
- C. Conversion shall be from UHF to VHF or VHF to VHF channel respectively with a gain of 14dB.
- D. The unit shall comply with FCC radiation regulations and be UL listed.
- E. The unit shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model MCX series.

2.4 AMPLIFIER

- A. Contractor shall provide a broadband amplifier of the push-pull type.
- B. Output capability shall be at least +49 dBmv with adjustable gain of 51 dBmv down to 41 dBmv through variable attenuator.
- C. Gain and slope controls shall be located on the front panel for easy setup and adjustment.

- D. Two -30 dB back-matched test points shall be provided to permit testing without interruption of service.
- E. The unit shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model type BIDA550-50. The unit shall also include a BIDA-RA model return amplifier.

2.5 CHANNEL REJECT FILTER

- A. Contractor shall provide a channel reject filter for the purpose of rejecting one low band channel.
- B. The filter shall provide at least 57 dB of attenuation to the audio and video carriers of the unwanted channel. The filter shall provide less than 2 dB of slope across either of the two adjacent channels with no more than 2 dB of thru loss of the other channels in the 50-300 Mhz range.
- C. The unit shall be supplied with appropriate associated circuitry to permit reinsertion of a locally originated channel from a crystal-controlled modulator.
- D. The filter shall permit rejection of one channel and reinsertion of a locally originating channel without visible interference of any other channel.
- E. The unit shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model type CEF.

2.6 AGILE PROCESSOR

- A. Contractor shall provide agile processors as required.
- B. Processors shall be rack-mountable.
- C. Processors shall be able to convert any sub-channel from T-9 to T-13 or any channel from 2 to 69.
- D. Processors shall provide synthesized tuning of output in 250 kHz increments to accommodate any traditional broadcast, CATV, HRC, or IRC channel alignment.
- E. Processor's input impedance shall be 75 ohms and shall incorporate a SAW filter design which provides an adjacent channel rejection.
- F. A frequency span of 550 MHz at an output level of +60 dBmv shall be provided.
- E. The processors shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model type AP-60-550.

2.7 HIGH Q TRAPS

- A. Contractor shall provide traps to be installed where required for the rejection of interfering carriers.

- B. Traps shall have an input and output impedance of 75 ohms and connection shall be made through standard F-style connectors.
- C. The traps shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model type MWT Series.

2.8 AGILE MODULATOR

- A. Contractor shall provide an audio/video modulator for the insertion of a locally generated channel.
- B. The modulator shall provide synthesized tuning of modulated visual and aural RF carrier output in 250 kHz increments to accommodate any traditional broadcast, CATV, HRC, or IRC channel alignment.
- C. A frequency span of 550 MHz at an output level of +60 dBmv shall be provided.
- D. Frequency changing shall be accomplished by using front panel DIP switches with a setting chart attached to the front cover.
- E. The modulators shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model type AM-60-550.

2.9 SPLITTER/COMBINER

- A. Contractor shall provide a splitter/combiner.
- B. The splitter/combiner shall be of a hybrid type, having essentially flat response across the frequencies utilized on the system.
- C. The splitter/combiner shall be housed in an environment-proof, radiation-proof housing.
- D. The splitter/combiner shall have F-type fittings.
- E. The modulators shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model type SUV, MSVM and MLHF series.

2.10 TV TAPOFF

- A. Contractor shall provide TV tap-offs where necessary.
- B. The tap-off shall be of a directional coupler type, mounted in trunk-line junction boxes in the ceiling of hallways.
- C. The tap-off shall have a feeder line running from the taps through conduit to outlets in rooms as shown on plans.
- D. The tap-offs shall exhibit five isolation factors and shall have F-type connectors.
- E. The modulators shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model type SUV, MSVM and MLHF series.

2.11 SELF-TERMINATING OUTLET

- A. Contractor shall provide modules for coaxial cabling media. They shall be individual snap-in style female-to-female bulkhead adapters, and shall fit all other installed telecommunications wall plates, outlets and field-configurable patch panels and patch blocks.
- B. Bulkhead modules shall be available in four colors (ivory, white, grey and black) to match the housings.
- C. Modules shall be UL listed. All plastics used in construction of the module bodies shall be fire-retardant with a UL flammability rating of 94V-0.
- D. A ten foot connecting cable shall be provided for each outlet.
- E. The connectors shall be manufactured by Leviton Voice and Data, and be of model type 41084-FIF.

2.12 TERMINATORS

- A. Contractor shall provide terminating resistors for the purpose of terminating coaxial lines.
- B. Terminators shall be placed on all end branches of the television distribution system.
- C. Terminators shall be products of the manufacturer of the amplifier and/or tap-off units used in this system and shall be approved by the manufacturer for use in the 54 MHz to 890 MHz range with a return loss of 30 dB minimum for VHF and 25 dB for UHF.
- D. The modulators shall be manufactured by Blonder-Tongue, and be of model type FBT series.

2.13 EQUIPMENT HOUSING

- A. Contractor shall provide a wall-mounted equipment cabinet for authorized personnel to gain easy access to components, and provide secure storage against vandalism.
- B. The cabinet shall be constructed of at least 16 gauge cold-rolled steel, heavily reinforced for maximum strength and durability.
- C. Cabinet shall be no more than 45" high and 22" deep with 28-1/8" total panel space.
- D. Cabinets shall be furnished with one left hand door and one right hand door.
- E. The equipment cabinet shall be manufactured by Atlas/Soundolier, and be of model type 300-28.

2.14 TV WALL-MOUNT

- A. Contractor shall provide a wall-mount device for suspending a television from the wall in the fitness center.
- B. The wall-mount shall have jointed arms to allow for 180 degree swing.
- C. The wall-mount shall have a comprehensive cable management system to hide cable(S).
- D. The wall-mount shall accommodate 19"-25" size televisions, handle a maximum load of 88 pounds and a maximum depth of 25-5/8".
- E. The wall-mount shall be manufactured by Pivotelli and be of model type Quartz.

2.15 ADD ALTERNATIVE HEARING ASSISTANCE SYSTEM

- A. Contractor shall provide an alternate hearing assistance system to be connected to the room televisions in ADA allocated guest rooms.
- B. The hearing assistance system shall operate on VHF frequencies between 72 and 76 MHz.
- C. The hearing assistance system signal shall be frequency modulated, with a deviation not to exceed 25 kHz. The overall system frequency response should be between 330-8000 Hz, plus 3 dB, with a signal-to-noise ratio of 48 dB un-weighted.
- D. The hearing assistance system shall be a rack mountable 117VAC powered unit measuring 1-3/4" high by 7-1/4" wide and 6-7/8" deep.
- E. The hearing assistance system shall have a 5-segment, input level, LED meter with independent controls for line and mic levels. The transmitter shall be equipped with a PL-259 connector on the rear panel for connection to the antenna.
- F. The hearing assistance system shall receive frequency modulated signals and have an integrated belt clip, with a top-mounted volume control.
- G. The hearing assistance system shall have a 1/8" combination earphone/power charge jack on the top panel.
- H. The hearing assistance system shall be manufactured by Telex and consist of model type AAT-1 transmitter and one AAR-10 receiver either tied directly into the television set or a custom built plate on the wall that is wired into the television.

2.16 OTHER MATERIALS

- A. All other materials and accessories, not specifically described or called for, but are necessary for a complete finished installation for the work of this section shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor at no additional cost. These materials shall be selected by the Contractor and approved by the Architect.

- B. All selected materials must be approved by the Architect, with information submitted to the Architect as pursuant to Section 01340.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Upon completion, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to perform the necessary mixing, matching and balancing of signals for a properly operating system as described here-in.
- B. A demonstration shall be performed in the presence of an authorized representative of the Architect. The Contractor shall forward a letter stating this has been carried out and name the person(s) in attendance for the demonstration.
- C. At the time of project closeout, submit a minimum of four sets each product manual.

3.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Protect finished installation from damage by other trades.
- B. Remove rubbish and left over materials from the site.
- C. Provide one year warranty on the entire system including on site labor during normal working hours at no cost to the Owner for a period of twelve months from the date of acceptance.
- D. Guarantee response to a trouble call within one normal business day after receipt of such call.
- E. Contractor shall provide a written agreement outlining warranty acceptance.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Follow guidelines for Data Raceway System installation, as pursuant to Section 16753.
- B. Follow guidelines for cable securing, installation, and termination, as pursuant to Section 16760.
- C. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected. Failure to examine and/or correct existing conditions will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for the proper operation of this work nor be the basis for a claim for additional compensation by the Owner. Install the work of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, the approved submittals, and shop drawings.

- D. Coordinate with other trades to assure proper and adequate provisions in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this section.
- E. Install each item in its proper location, fire-caulked in all areas where required by the Electrical Code, firmly anchored into position, level, and plumb, and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 16780

BACKGROUND MUSIC/MUSIC ON HOLD SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. General Summary: Provide a background music and music on hold system for entertainment and a pleasant customer and workplace experience as shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation. System shall provide background music in Pavilion area, lounges, dining area, retail space, restrooms, and circulation areas, except in the vicinity of telephone and front desk areas, as well as music on hold in coordination with the internal telecommunications system.
- B. Related work: Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
- C. Notify Architect when work is scheduled to be installed. Provide a tentative schedule, divided into phases of installation. Use agreed schedule for installation and for field observation by Architect.
- D. The intent of this specification is to provide a complete and satisfactory background music and music on hold system. The system shall include, but not be limited to, electronics, music source, AM/FM antenna, peripheral devices, conduit, wire, and accessories required to provide a complete and operational system

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Process: Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
- B. Product data: Within 60 calendar days after the Contractor has received the Owner's Notice to Proceed, submit:
 - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this Section.
 - 2. Shop Drawings showing all details of fabrication, installation, and anchorage of the work of this Section, and its interface with the work of other trades.
- C. Drawings and Specifications: The contract drawings and these specifications shall be considered as complimentary each to the other. What is called for by one shall be considered binding as if called for by both. Where conflicts occur, secure clarification from the Architect/Engineer prior to submitting bids; otherwise, provide for the more costly quality or quantity. The drawings are diagrammatical and dimension figures should be followed in preference to scaling; verify dimensions with the architectural drawings and with field conditions.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Workforce: Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.

- B. Experience: Use a subcontractor having not less than five years successful experience in installation of similar products, as approved by the Architect.
- C. Quality of work: All work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner so as to insure a high quality job and to present a neat and mechanical appearance when completed. All materials used shall be new and UL approved for their intended use where such standards have been established.
- D. Applicable Standards: Work included in this section shall comply with all applicable laws of governmental agencies having jurisdiction over said work, and with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-A standard (Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces) and its addendums and TIA/EIA-568-B standard (Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard) and its addendums, where it is not in conflict with those laws.
- E. Site Conditions: Before beginning work the contractor or sub-contractor shall visit the project site and ascertain all existing conditions. Adjustment to the work made necessary by actual field conditions shall be made at no additional cost.
- F. Handle conduit, connectors, terminators, caps, computer equipment, amplifiers, speakers, music sources and other background music and music on hold system components with great care to prevent undesired bending, damage and scoring the finish. Store conduit, connectors, terminators, caps, computer equipment, amplifiers, speakers, music sources and other background music and music on hold system components inside and protect from harsh environmental elements.

1.4 COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. Coordinate the work in this section so as to conform to the progress of the work of the other trades. Phasing of the work shall be done as soon as possible with the entire installation completed as soon as the condition of the building permits. As well, review the equipment submittals of all other trades and any Owner-furnished equipment for physical connection requirements, maximum bend radius, minimum distance between electrical and data wiring, electrical voltage, phase, wiring and load characteristics, wiring details and impedance matching.

1.5 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The background music and music on hold system specified herein shall be of a modular design and nature to facilitate both expansion and service and shall be completely of a solid-state design.
- B. All conduit, equipment and installation materials required to fulfill the above shall be furnished whether or not specified herein or on the drawings, and shall be subject to approval by the Architect as pursuant to Section 01630.
- C. The installation supervisor shall instruct designated personnel in the correct operation of the system.
- D. The contractor shall provide two complete sets of the following: Installation drawings, wiring diagrams, instruction manuals, schematic drawings and service manuals upon completion.

- E. The system shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from date of acceptance against defective materials, design and workmanship. Any defective materials shall be replaced at no cost to the owner.
- F. The contractor shall submit to the Architect a detailed test procedure to be used for every section covered under this Section as per Section 01630. All cables shall be tested for electrostatic and electromagnetic hum, and, if such noise is audible, shall be corrected to remove said electrostatic and electromagnetic hum.
- G. The contractor, if requested to do so by the Architect, shall be prepared to show by proof of performance test(s) that the equipment furnished and installed on the job is equal to or exceeds the equipment specifications as listed herein. This proof of performance shall be by actual tests and not by printed technical or sales literature on said products. To this end, the contract shall provide qualified technicians and such test equipment as necessary to perform these tests. The Architect has final approval of tests to be performed to meet these requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT RACK

- A. Contractor shall provide a sectional wall cabinet constructed of 16-gauge CRS.
- B. Equipment rack shall be bolted for strength. Rack may not be welded.
- C. Equipment rack shall have a rear section with knockouts at the bottom and the top to allow for cable routing.
- D. Equipment cabinet shall have a locking door and have bolted hinges, not welded. Lock shall be mounted on the front door and accessible only through a key-type lock.
- E. The unit shall be manufactured by Atlas/Soundolier, and be of model 300 Series.

2.2 POWER AMPLIFIERS

- A. Contractor shall provide power amplifiers necessary to provide 35 watts of continuous power with no less than 1 percent distortion from 20 to 20 kHz to each area specified in Section 1 of these specifications.
- B. Power amplifiers shall provide five main inputs, an auxiliary input, and a telephone/pager input.
- C. Power amplifiers shall have a signal-to-noise ratio greater than 70 dB for auxiliary inputs and telephone/pager inputs.
- D. Power amplifiers shall have a frequency response from 20 to 20 KHz, plus or minus 1 dB, at 9 dB below rated output per EIA SE-101A specifications.
- E. Power amplifiers shall provide electronic fold-back and thermal overload self-restoring protection circuits, with 30 dB of muting.
- F. Power amplifiers shall provide independent input controls for five main

inputs, as well as a power switch, on the front panel.

G. The unit shall be manufactured by Dukane, and be of model 1A1635.

2.3 AREA SPEAKER VOLUME CONTROL

- A. Contractor shall provide area speaker controls to each area specified in Section 1 of these specifications.
- B. Area speaker volume controls shall provide control of designated area's speaker(s) volume on 25 or 70 volt speaker distribution lines, controlling up to 35 watts of audio power per area.
- C. Area speaker volume controls shall accomplish attenuation in 10 steps, including "off".
- D. Area speaker volume controls shall provide 15 dB of attenuation with a decrease of 1.5 dB per step, except from top setting to next setting with a 3 dB attenuation step.
- E. Area speaker volume controls shall provide a finish of either satin aluminum or flat plastic, with color to be selected by Architect.
- F. Area speaker volume controls shall clearly display the current volume setting.
- G. Area speaker volume control shall fit into a single or dual gang box, 2 1/2" deep.
- H. The unit shall be manufactured by Dukane, and be of model 9A1550.

2.4 LOUDSPEAKERS

- A. Contractor shall provide loudspeakers in each area specified in Section 1 of these specifications and as drawn on associated plans.
- B. Loudspeakers shall be of the recessed type and self-supporting.
- C. Loudspeakers shall be 8" (20.3 cm), seamless cone type, with a ceramic magnet weighing at least 4.8 ounces (134 g).
- D. Loudspeakers shall have a frequency response range from 90 to 15,000 Hz, and be of a normal wattage rating of 8-15 watts with a program rating of 20 watts.
- E. Loudspeakers shall have a voice coil of diameter 3/4" (2 cm) and be of 8 ohms nominal impedance.
- F. Loudspeakers overall diameter shall be 8 1/32" (20.3 cm) and the speaker depth shall be no more than 2 3/4".
- G. Loudspeakers' components shall be cadmium plated and conform with EIA standards.
- H. Loudspeakers shall be equipped with a universal matching transformer suitable for use on a 25 volt output line with taps at 1/2, 1 or 2 watts or a 70 volt output line with taps at 1/2, 1, 2 or 4 watts.
- I. The unit shall be manufactured by Dukane, and be of model 5A606.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Upon completion, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to perform the necessary mixing, matching and balancing of signals for a properly operating system as described here-in.
- B. A demonstration shall be performed in the presence of an authorized representative of the Architect. The Contractor shall forward a letter stating this has been carried out and name the person(s) in attendance for the demonstration.
- C. At the time of project closeout, submit a minimum of four sets each product manual.

3.2 EQUIPMENT

- A. Protect finished installation from damage by other trades.
- B. Remove rubbish and left over materials from the site.
- C. Provide one year warranty on the entire system including on site labor during normal working hours at no cost to the Owner for a period of twelve months from the date of acceptance.
- D. Guarantee response to a trouble call within one normal business day after receipt of such call.
- E. Contractor shall provide a written agreement outlining warranty acceptance.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Follow guidelines for Data Raceway System installation, as pursuant to Section 16753.
- B. Follow guidelines for cable securing, installation, and termination, as pursuant to Section 16760.
- C. Head-end equipment shall be connected to a separate dedicated branch circuit, maximum 20 amperes. Circuit shall be labeled as "PUBLIC ADDRESS".
- D. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected. Failure to examine and/or correct existing conditions will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for the proper operation of this work nor be the basis for a claim for additional compensation by the Owner. Install the work of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, the approved submittals, and shop drawings.
- E. Coordinate with other trades to assure proper and adequate provisions in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this section.

F. Install each item in its proper location, fire-caulked in all areas where required by the Electrical Code, firmly anchored into position, level, and plumb, and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 16781

TELEVISION ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Provide television accessories where shown on the drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation.
- B. Related work:
 - 1. Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
 - a. Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
 - b. TIA specifications T568B;
 - c. Section 01720: Project Record Documents;
 - d. Section 01730: Operation and Maintenance;
 - e. Section 16753: Data Raceway Systems;
 - f. Section 16760: Audio/Visual/Telecommunications Systems;
 - g. Section 16765: Television Distribution System;
 - h. Section 16780: Background Music/Music On Hold Systems;
 - i. Section 16785: Closed Circuit Television Systems;
 - j. Section 16786: Meeting Room Systems;
 - k. Section 16787: High Speed Internet Access.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
- B. Product data: Within 35 calendar days after the Contractor has received the Owner's Notice to Proceed, submit:
 - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this Section;
 - 2. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with the specified requirements;
 - 3. Dimensioned drawings as needed to depict the space required for these items, and their interface with the work of other trades.
 - 4. Manufacturer's recommended installation procedures which, when approved by the Architect, will become the basis for accepting or rejecting actual installation procedures used on the Work.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section. All telecommunication wiring, network cabling and television distribution wiring installers shall be certified, have a minimum of five (5) years experience in dedicated telecommunication/data installation and shall furnish proof of qualification. Installer shall also provide a list of successful installations over the past three (3) years including contact name and phone number.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01620.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TELEVISION ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide and install television accessories with all required hardware, of the designs as specified and at the locations as indicated on the drawings.
 - 1. The ceiling mount shall be a yoke style mount of 14 GA steel with a 1" x 1-3/4" tubing for the telescoping center beam and 1/4" x 2" steel for the yoke arms. The mount shall allow for height and width adjustments to accommodate the monitor. The tray shall allow for the attachment of the monitor to the tray and shall match the width adjustment of the yoke brackets.
 - a. Model: TVCY35T-BK.
 - 2. Provide all appropriate mounting hardware for installation as indicated, including but not limited to:
 - a. Ceiling flange: TVCM;
 - b. Mounting brackets: TVUM;
 - c. Escutcheon ring: TVER;
 - d. Mounting plate: TVMP;
 - e. Extension pipe: TV18.
 - 3. Provide the following accessories for installation as indicated:
 - 1. VCR bracket: TVT27-BK tray;
 - 2. Webbed nylon security belt: SB.
- B. Television accessories shall have the following minimum attributes:
 - 1. Mounting installation: ceiling mount;
 - 2. Monitor size: 30"-35" diagonal;
 - 3. Height adjustment: 26"-32";
 - 4. Width adjustment: 30"-40";
 - 5. Swivel: 360°;
 - 6. Tilt: 0°-10°;
 - 7. Finish: textured powder paint, flat black;
 - 8. Accessories: VCR bracket and security belt.

2.2 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide all products of one manufacturer from the following list:
 - 1. Bretford Manufacturing;
 - 2. H. Wilson Company;
 - 3. Other manufacturers when approved in accordance with Section 01340.

2.3 OTHER MATERIALS

- A. Provide all other materials, not specifically described but required for a complete and proper installation, as selected by the Contract, subject to the approval of the Architect.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE CONDITIONS

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this Section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper

completion of the Work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION FOR STRUCTURED WIRING

A. TIA Structured Cabling Method

1. The cabling method shall be a star topology configuration using a hierarchical series of distribution frames.
 - a. The backbone includes the main distribution frame (MDF) and the intermediate distribution frame (IDF).
2. The first level, the MDF shall link to other levels via the backbone cabling. The MDF may link to the third and final level, the telecommunications room (TR) directly or in large installations it may link to some TRs via an optional second level, the intermediate distribution frame (IDF). The TR terminates the backbone cable and cross-connects to the horizontal cabling. The horizontal cabling terminates at the workstation (WS).
3. Horizontal cabling is the cabling from the TR to the workstation. It includes the cross-connects in the TR; horizontal cable and the outlet at the work areas.
4. Horizontal cabling shall be installed such that it will:
 - a. Facilitate ongoing maintenance, relocations and additions;
 - b. Accommodate future equipment and service changes;
 - c. Accommodate a diversity of user applications, including voice, data, LAN, switching and other building services.

B. Roughing-In

1. Always check for shorts, opens and ground when the rough-in is completed.
2. Never splice wires on cable runs. Spliced cable shall be removed and replaced at no additional cost to the owner.
3. Do not exert more than 25 pounds of pulling tension on 4-pair cables. Larger capacity cables should be pulled per the manufacturer's directions.
4. Do not run voice and data cables in parallel with power wiring. Consult industry standards for minimum separation of telecommunications cable from interference sources.
5. Do not bend cable sharply or nick the protective sheath covering the insulated wires.
6. Use plastic non-metallic staples to support wire, and leave the wire loose inside the staples - do not drive staples all the way in.
7. Always leave a pull cord in conduit to facilitate running new wire.

8. Never run power in the same conduit with telecommunications cable. Low-voltage monitor and control lines may share conduit with telecommunications.
9. Avoid under carpet runs.
10. Where possible, use inner walls for runs to avoid conflict with firebreaks and insulation. Handling shall be the same as for electrical wire. Firestopping shall be observed.
11. Do not run telecommunications cable parallel to power wiring without adequate separation, and do not share bore holes with power wires.
12. Keep wire away from sources of heat, such as hot water pipes and heater ducts.
13. Avoid running external cables.
14. Leave 18 inches of spare wire at outlets and connection points for connections and changes.
15. Firestopping, bonding and grounding shall be performed according to applicable fire, building and electrical codes.
16. When installing outlet boxes on wooded studs, maintain proper separation of communications and power cables. These two types of cables shall not share drill holes or stud spaces. Desk telephone connectors shall be located at the same distance from the floor as electrical outlets.
17. Each workstation shall be served by a minimum of three 100Ω UTP cables. Single or double outlets may be used.
18. Telecommunications outlets shall be placed at the same height as electrical outlets and near an electrical outlet.
19. Use the minimum number of connections to avoid degradation of system performance.
20. Never install components of unknown/questionable origin or quality.
21. Document all connections carefully, and keep installations neat and tidy.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate as required with other trades to assure proper and adequate provision in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this Section.
- B. Install the work of this Section in strict accordance with the original design, the approved Shop Drawings, pertinent requirements of governmental agencies having jurisdiction, and the manufacturer's recommended installation procedures as approved by the Owner, anchoring all components firmly into position for long life under hard use.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 16785

CLOSED CIRCUIT TELEVISION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. General Summary: Provide a closed circuit television system for monitoring and security purposes as shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation.
- B. Related work: Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
- C. Notify Architect when work is scheduled to be installed. Provide a tentative schedule, divided into phases of installation. Use agreed schedule for installation and for field observation by Architect.
- D. The intent of this specification is to provide a complete and satisfactory closed circuit television system.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Process: Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
- B. Product data: Within 60 calendar days after the Contractor has received the Owner's Notice to Proceed, submit:
 - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this Section.
 - 2. Shop Drawings showing all details of fabrication, installation, and anchorage of the work of this Section, and its interface with the work of other trades.
- C. Drawings and Specifications: The contract drawings and these specifications shall be considered as complimentary, each to the other. What is called for by one shall be considered binding as if called for by both. Where conflicts occur, secure clarification from the Architect/Engineer prior to submitting bids; otherwise, provide for the more costly quality or quantity. The drawings are diagrammatical and dimensional figures should be followed in preference to scaling; verify dimensions with the architectural drawings and with field conditions.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Workforce: Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- B. Experience: Use a subcontractor having not less than five years successful experience in the installation of similar products, as approved by the Architect.
- C. Quality of work: All work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner, so

as to insure a high quality job and to present a neat and mechanical appearance when completed. All materials used shall be new and UL approved for their intended use where such standards have been established.

- D. Applicable Standards: Work included in this section shall comply with all applicable laws of governmental agencies having jurisdiction over said work, and with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-A standard (Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces) and its addenda and TIA/EIA-568-B standard (Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard) and its addenda, where it is not in conflict with those laws.
- E. Site Conditions: Before beginning work, the contractor or sub-contractor shall visit the project site and ascertain all existing conditions. Adjustment to the work made necessary by actual field conditions shall be made at no additional cost.
- F. Handle conduit, connectors, terminators, caps, monitors, computer equipment, cameras and other closed circuit television system components with great care to prevent undesired bending, damage and scoring the finish. Store conduit, connectors, terminators, caps, monitors, computer equipment, cameras and other closed circuit television system components inside and protect from harsh environmental elements.

1.4 COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. Coordinate the work in this section so as to conform to the progress of the work of other trades. Phasing of the work shall be done as soon as possible with the entire installation completed as soon as the condition of the building permits. Additionally, Contractor shall review the equipment submittals of all other trades and any Owner-furnished equipment for physical connection requirements, maximum bend radius, minimum distance between electrical and data wiring, electrical voltage, phase, wiring and load characteristics and wiring details.

1.5 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The closed circuit television system specified herein shall be of a modular design and nature to facilitate both expansion and service and shall be completely of a solid-state design.
- B. All conduit, equipment and installation materials required to fulfill the above shall be furnished whether or not specified herein or on the drawings, and shall be subject to approval by the Architect as pursuant to Section 01630.
- C. The installation supervisor shall instruct designated personnel in the correct operation of the system.
- D. The contractor shall provide four complete sets of the following: Installation drawings, wiring diagrams, instruction manuals, schematic drawings and service manuals upon completion.
- E. The system shall be guaranteed by the Contractor for a period of one year from date of acceptance against defective materials, design and

workmanship. Any defective materials shall be replaced at no cost to the owner.

- F. The contractor shall submit to the Architect a detailed test procedure to be used for every section covered under this Section as per Section 01630. All cables shall be tested for maximum length allowance, attenuation, impedance, ground shorts, continuity of communications conductors, shields, NEXT and crosstalk.
- G. The contractor, if requested to do so by the Architect, shall be prepared to show by proof of performance test(s) that the equipment furnished and installed on the job is equal to or exceeds the equipment specifications as listed herein. This proof of performance shall be by actual tests and not by printed technical or sales literature on said products. To this end, the contractor shall provide qualified technicians and such test equipment as necessary to perform these tests. The Architect has final approval of tests to be performed to meet these requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BLACK AND WHITE TV CAMERA(S)

- A. Contractor shall provide 1/2" high-sensitivity solid-state black and white video cameras using an interline transfer charge-coupled device (CCD) image sensor.
- B. The pickup device shall have a 251,900 pixel array (512 horizontal, 492 vertical) and shall produce a standard EIA NTSC black and white video signal.
- C. The cameras shall have a composite video output that shall be 1.0 V p-p with 75 ohms impedance video and DC power connections shall be provided for an ES-type auto-iris lens, and an internal auto-iris circuit and external connector shall be provided for CS-G type auto-iris lenses. They shall accept CS-mount lenses, and adapters for C-mount lenses shall be provided.
- D. The units shall not exceed 1.4 pounds weight each. The cameras shall have an aluminum case to minimize radio frequency interference. Dimensions shall not exceed 6.7" wide, 2.6" high and 2.5" deep. The top and bottom of the cases shall provide a 1/4-20 threaded hole for mounting.
- E. The signal to noise ratio shall be typically 47 dB and provide a gray scale of 10 steps.
- F. Two modes for shutter speeds of 1/100 seconds and 1/1000 seconds shall be provided for detailed observation of fast-moving objects.
- G. The cameras shall have a sensitivity of .010 fc (1 lux), with an output level of 25 IRE (usable video). The cameras shall also have a sensitivity of 0.19 fc (2 lux), with an output level of 50 IRE (usable video).
- H. External synchronization shall include genlock and line locking with more than 180 degree V-phase adjustment.

- I. Internal synchronization shall be provided by crystal oscillation.
- J. Input power shall be of 24 VAC, at 60 Hz, with entry through a screw terminal. Current requirements shall not exceed 170 mA from an AC power source nor 320 mA from a DC power source.
- K. The units shall be manufactured by Vicon, and be of model VC2700-24.

2.02 LENSES

- A. Contractor shall provide lenses for above referenced cameras of a fixed-focal-length with an auto-iris in a fast, wide angle, 1/2" format.
- B. Lenses shall have a focal length of 6 mm with an effective aperture range (f-stop) of f/1.2 to f/360.
- C. The horizontal field angle shall be 56 degrees of 9'0".
- D. The units shall be manufactured by Vicon, and be of model V6-1.2ES.

2.03 CAMERA POWER SUPPLY

- A. Contractor shall provide power supplies sufficient for established power guidelines sufficient to power each camera.
- B. The camera supply shall provide one 24 VAC output for a total of 4 amps continuous supply current.
- C. Eight individually fused outputs shall be provided.
- D. The unit shall maintain camera synchronization.
- E. The unit shall be manufactured by Altroniz, and be of model ALTV248.

2.04 CAMERA WALL MOUNT

- A. Contractor shall provide a wall mount for each camera to be mounted to an interior wall.
- B. Wall mount shall be of the indoor type, rated for light duty, and constructed of high-impact, light gray plastic designed to support camera/housing combinations weighing up to 7 1/2 pounds.
- C. Wall mount shall have an adjustable head featuring individual locking knobs for horizontal and vertical movement.
- D. Wall mount shall mount to a standard outlet box for concealed cable as specified by Section 16753.
- E. Wall Mount shall weigh no more than 1 1/2 pounds.
- F. The unit shall be manufactured by Vicon, and be of model V1100AWM-LG.

2.05 CAMERA CEILING MOUNT

- A. Contractor shall provide a ceiling mount for each camera to be mounted to a ceiling.
- B. Ceiling mount shall be of the indoor type, rated for light duty, and constructed of high-impact, light gray plastic designed to support camera/housing combinations weighing up to 7 1/2 pounds.
- C. Wall mount shall have an adjustable head featuring individual locking knobs for horizontal and vertical movement.
- D. Ceiling mount shall have a body capable of 260 degrees rotation to adjust horizontal positioning.
- E. The unit shall be manufactured by Vicon, and be of model V8000ACM-LG.

2.06 CAMERA HOUSING

- A. Contractor shall provide a camera housing for each camera.
- B. Camera housing shall consist of an extruded tubular aluminum body and removable injection molded black ABS plastic end caps.
- C. Camera housing shall allow for the removal of the rear end cap as to allow for access to a slide out camera mount for installation of camera and lens, and removal of front end cap shall allow for lens adjustments without the need of removing the camera or lens.
- D. Camera housing shall contain a clear front end cap with a viewing window having a viewing area of 2 1/2" by 3 3/4".
- E. Camera housing shall contain a clear end cap with two adjustable compression glands to be used for cable entry with an opening that shall accommodate a 5/16" maximum cable diameter.
- F. Camera housing front and rear end caps shall allow for removal by using a standard-sized Phillips head screwdriver.
- G. Camera housing shall be designed for indoor use and be capable of withstanding temperatures of 120 degrees Fahrenheit.
- H. Camera housing shall be mountable to a ceiling, wall or pedestal mount.
- I. Camera housing body shall be self-textured, semi-gloss beige enamel paint.
- J. The unit shall be manufactured by Pelco, and be of model EH4010.

2.07 MONITOR

- A. Contractor shall provide a monitor for viewing camera transmissions.
- B. Monitor shall be of a high-resolution black and white type with a 17" picture tube.

- C. Monitor shall be designed to receive and display EIA NTSC standard composite video signals, and shall have a resolution of more than 500 television lines.
- D. Monitor shall not have a geometric distortion exceeding 3 percent.
- E. Monitor shall provide four input channels: two for composite video, one for separate Y and C inputs from an S-VHS source and one for professional editing VTR.
- F. Front panel controls shall include a power on/off button, vertical hold control, brightness control, contrast control, phase control, source selection button(s), preset select button(s) and aperture compensation selector. A slide switch for video termination shall be located on the rear panel, along with a channel A-B selection switch.
- G. Input power shall be 105-128 VAC at 60 Hz. Power consumption shall be 65 W, typical.
- H. Monitor weight shall not exceed 60 pounds.
- I. The unit shall be manufactured by Vicon, and be of model UM621-4.

2.08 QUAD DISPLAY SYTEM

- A. Contractor shall provide a quad display system for a high-resolution real-time digital image matrix viewing system that shall simultaneously display image information from four video sources on a single monitor by splitting the display into four quadrants.
- B. Quad display system shall be capable of holding digital information to create free frames on any or all quadrants.
- C. Quad display system shall be programmable with a set of push-button switches located on the front-panel. On screen menus shall provide information on progress, status and programming instructions. It shall incorporate on-screen programmable titles, time and date retention display and video loss detection, both visual and audible.
- D. Access to user-programmable features shall be password protected with a user definable password which shall consist of sequential activation of switches on the systems front panel.
- E. Quad display system shall accommodate video from a video cassette tape playback source by means of standard video and S-VHS input.
- F. Connections shall be made via corresponding BNC connectors located on the rear of the unit.
- G. Front panel controls of the quad display system shall be labeled in English with conceptually representative icons and resist fading and wear from frequent use.
- H. Quad display system shall generate 256-level gray scale resolution with eight chroma bits per channel. Pixel resolution shall be 720 by 484, as compliant with standard NTSC signals.

I. Quad display system back panel shall include four 75 ohm terminated camera inputs, one standard video cassette recorder playback input and one S-VHS video cassette recorder input made via BNC connectors.

J. The unit shall be manufactured by Pelco, and be of model PQ4C.

2.09 TIME-LAPSE VIDEO CASSETTE RECORDER

A. Contractor shall provide a time-lapse video recorder unit based on the VHS 1/2" video cassette standard.

B. Time-lapse video recorder shall be front loading, NTSC compatible, have eight time lapse modes (24, 48, 72, 120, 168, 240, 360 and 480h), a two-hour VHS compatible mode, four recording heads, three-motor direct-drive beltless system, audio recording and playback in 2-, 3-, 6- and 12-h modes.

C. Time-lapse video recorder shall have seven automatic alarm acknowledgements and one manual alarm acknowledgement, as well as alarm-indexing and scanning alarm search.

D. Time-lapse video recorder shall have speed search, forward and reverse, frame-by-frame search, forward and reverse, reverse play, blur-free playback, seven day memory backup, user-selectable auto tape stop or auto-rewind, remote tape-end alarm output and control lock-out switch.

E. Time-lapse video recorder display shall be positionable in any of the four corners of the monitor screen.

F. Time-lapse video recorder shall accept .5 to 2 v p-p composite video signal at 75 ohms.

G. Time-lapse video recorder shall output a 1 v p-p composite video signal at 75 ohms.

H. Time-lapse video recorder shall provide audio frequency response of 50 Hz to 10 kHz.

I. Time-lapse video recorder shall provide a horizontal resolution of no more than 320 lines black and white and no less than 240 lines.

J. Time-lapse video recorder head shall provide switching pulse output.

K. Time-lapse video recorder shall have an RS-232 interface available as an option.

L. The unit shall be manufactured by Vicon, and be of model VCR401.

2.10 POWER CABLE

A. Contractor shall provide a power cable for each camera.

B. Power cable shall be one twisted pair of 18 American Wire Gauge Standard stranded copper conductors with no less than 7x26 strands per conductor.

- C. Power cable insulation of each conductor shall be .01 inches of copolene, and the overall jacket shall .02 inches of poly-vinyl chloride.
- D. Power cable nominal outside diameter shall be .165 inches.
- E. The unit shall be manufactured by West Penn, and be of model 224.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Upon completion, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to perform the necessary mixing, matching and balancing of signals for a properly operating system as described here-in.
- B. A demonstration shall be performed in the presence of an authorized representative of the Architect. The Contractor shall forward a letter stating this has been carried out and name the person(s) in attendance for the demonstration.
- C. At the time of project closeout, submit a minimum of four sets each product manual.

3.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Protect finished installation from damage by other trades.
- B. Remove rubbish and left over materials from the site.
- C. Provide one year warranty on the entire system including on site labor during normal working hours at no cost to the Owner for a period of twelve months from the date of acceptance.
- D. Guarantee response to a trouble call within one normal business day after receipt of such call.
- E. Contractor shall provide a written agreement outlining warranty acceptance.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Follow guidelines for Data Raceway System installation, as pursuant to Section 16753.
- B. Follow guidelines for cable securing, installation, and termination, as pursuant to Section 16760.

- C. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected. Failure to examine and/or correct existing conditions will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for the proper operation of this work nor be the basis for a claim for additional compensation by the Owner. Install the work of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, the approved submittals, and shop drawings.
- D. Coordinate with other trades to assure proper and adequate provisions in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this section.
- E. Install each item in its proper location, fire-caulked in all areas where required by the Electrical Code, firmly anchored into position, level, and plumb, and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 16786

MEETING ROOM SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. General Summary: Provide a complete and functional meeting room audio/visual system where shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation.
- B. Related work: Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
- C. Notify Architect when work is scheduled to be installed. Provide a tentative schedule, divided into phases of installation. Use agreed schedule for installation and for field observation by Architect.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Process: Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
- B. Product data: Within 60 calendar days after the Contractor has received the Owner's Notice to Proceed, submit:
 - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this Section.
 - 2. Shop Drawings showing all details of fabrication, installation, and anchorage of the work of this Section, and its interface with the work of other trades.
- C. Drawings and Specifications: The contract drawings and these specifications shall be considered as complimentary each to the other. What is called for by one shall be considered binding as if called for by both. Where conflicts occur, secure clarification from the Architect/Engineer prior to submitting bids; otherwise, provide for the more costly quality or quantity. The drawings are diagrammatical and dimension figures should be followed in preference to scaling; verify dimensions with the architectural drawings and with field conditions.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Workforce: Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- B. Experience: Use a subcontractor having not less than five years successful experience in installation of similar products, as approved by the Architect.
- C. Quality of work: All work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner so as to insure a high quality job and to present a neat and mechanical appearance when completed. All materials used shall be new and UL approved for their intended use where such standards have been established.

- D. Applicable Standards: Work included in this section shall comply with all applicable laws of governmental agencies having jurisdiction over said work, and with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-A standard (Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces) and its addenda and TIA/EIA-568-B standard (Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard) and its addenda, where it is not in conflict with those laws.
- E. Site Conditions: Before submitting a bid the contractor or sub-contractor shall visit the project site and ascertain all existing conditions. Adjustment to the work made necessary by actual field conditions shall be made at no additional cost.
- F. Handle conduit, connectors, terminators, caps and other raceway system components with great care to prevent undesired bending, end damage and scoring the finish. Store conduit, connectors, terminators, caps and other raceway system components inside and protect from harsh environmental elements. When necessary to store outdoors, elevate the components well above grade and enclose with durable, watertight wrapping.

1.4 COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. Coordinate the work in this section so as to conform to the progress of the work of the other trades. Phasing of the work shall be done as soon as possible with the entire installation compiled as soon as the condition of the building permits. As well, review the equipment submittals of all other trades and any Owner-furnished equipment for physical connection requirements, maximum bend radius, minimum distance between electrical and data wiring, electrical voltage, phase, wiring and load characteristics and wiring details.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. All Materials are to be new and of the type and quality specified. Materials must be delivered by labeled, unopened containers. All electrical products must bear the U.L. label.

2.2 VISUAL PROJECTOR

- A. Contractor shall provide a visual projector capable of displaying no less than 2000 ANSI lumens.
- B. Projector shall provide an 800 pixel by 600 pixel minimum viewing resolution.
- C. Projector shall be capable of receiving a wireless signal using standard 802.11b radio frequency transmission protocol.
- D. The unit shall be manufactured by inFocus, and be the model type LP500. The unit shall also include a LP-LITESHOWCARD model wireless access system.

2.2 WIRELESS LAPEL MICROPHONE SYSTEM

- A. Contractor shall provide a wireless microphone system capable of broadcasting over the VHF frequency range.
- B. Transmitter shall have an on/off switch, mute switch, power indicator, low battery indicator and manual audio gain control.
- C. Receiver shall have a two telescoping antennas, a 1/4" unbalanced audio output connector and a volume control.
- D. Microphone shall be a wearable, lapel-type microphone of the supercardoid type. Microphone shall have a pick-up angle of 90-115 degrees.
- E. The receiver unit shall be manufactured by Shure, and be the model type T4A.
- F. The transmitter unit shall be manufactured by Shure, and be the model type T1.
- G. The microphone unit shall be manufactured by Shure, and be the model type WL184.
- H. The three components shall be purchased as a bundle, as manufactured by Shure, and be of the model type TPD/84.

2.3 POWER AMPLIFIERS

- A. Contractor shall provide power amplifiers necessary to provide 35 watts of continuous power with no less than 1 percent distortion from 20 to 20 kHz to each area specified in Section 1 of these specifications.
- B. Power amplifiers shall provide five main inputs, an auxiliary input, and a telephone/pager input.
- C. Power amplifiers shall have a signal-to-noise ratio greater than 70 dB for auxiliary inputs and telephone/pager inputs.
- D. Power amplifiers shall have a frequency response from 20 to 20 KHz, plus or minus 1 dB, at 9 dB below rated output per EIA SE-101A specifications.
- E. Power amplifiers shall provide electronic fold-back and thermal overload self-restoring protection circuits, with 30 dB of muting.
- F. Power amplifiers shall provide independent input controls for five main inputs, as well as a power switch, on the front panel.
- G. The unit shall be manufactured by Dukane, and be of model 1A1635.

2.04 ELECTRIC PROJECTION SCREEN

- A. Contractor shall provide an electric concealing glass-beaded projection screen.
- B. Projector screen shall be placed and installed as shown on the drawings and per manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Project shall be 50" in width and 50" in height.
- D. A controller with push-button switches for raising and lowering the screen shall be provided. Switch shall be manufactured by Da-Lite and be compatible with the projection screen system specified in this section.
- E. Project shall be manufactured by Da-Lite, and be of the model series Cosmopolitan Electrol meeting outlined specifications.

2.05 OTHER MATERIALS

- A. All other materials and accessories, not specifically described or called for, but are necessary for a complete finished installation for the work of this section shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor at no additional cost. These materials shall be selected by the Contractor and approved by the Architect.
- B. All selected materials must be approved by the Architect, with information submitted to the Architect as pursuant to Section 01340.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Upon completion, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to perform the necessary mixing, matching and balancing of signals for a properly operating system as described here-in.
- B. A demonstration shall be performed in the presence of an authorized representative of the Architect. The Contractor shall forward a letter stating this has been carried out and name the person(s) in attendance for the demonstration.
- C. At the time of project closeout, submit a minimum of four sets each product manual.

3.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Protect finished installation from damage by other trades.
- B. Remove rubbish and left over materials from the site.
- C. Provide one year warranty on the entire system including on site labor during normal working hours at no cost to the Owner for a period of twelve months from the date of acceptance.

- D. Guarantee response to a trouble call within one normal business day after receipt of such call.
- E. Contractor shall provide a written agreement outlining warranty acceptance.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Follow guidelines for Data Raceway System installation, as pursuant to Section 16753.
- B. Follow guidelines for cable securing, installation, and termination, as pursuant to Section 16760.
- C. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected. Failure to examine and/or correct existing conditions will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for the proper operation of this work nor be the basis for a claim for additional compensation by the Owner. Install the work of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, the approved submittals, and shop drawings.
- D. Coordinate with other trades to assure proper and adequate provisions in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this section.
- E. Install each item in its proper location, fire-caulked in all areas where required by the Code, firmly anchored into position, level, and plumb, and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Controller for projector screen shall be installed by the Electrical contractor according to manufacturer's specifications.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 16787

INTERNET ACCESS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. General Summary: Provide high speed internet access for guests to access email, the world wide web, and other publicly accessible internet information as shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation.
- B. Related work: Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
- C. Notify Architect when work is scheduled to be installed. Provide a tentative schedule, divided into phases of installation. Use agreed schedule for installation and for field observation by Architect.
- D. The intent of this specification is to provide a complete and satisfactory high speed internet access system.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Process: Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01340.
- B. Product data: Within 60 calendar days after the Contractor has received the Owner's Notice to Proceed, submit:
 - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this Section.
 - 2. Shop Drawings showing all details of fabrication, installation, and anchorage of the work of this Section, and its interface with the work of other trades.
- C. Drawings and Specifications: The contract drawings and these specifications shall be considered as complimentary each to the other. What is called for by one shall be considered binding as if called for by both. Where conflicts occur, secure clarification from the Architect/Engineer prior to submitting bids; otherwise, provide for the more costly quality or quantity. The drawings are diagrammatical and dimension figures should be followed in preference to scaling; verify dimensions with the architectural drawings and with field conditions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Workforce: Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- B. Experience: Use a subcontractor having not less than five years successful experience in installation of similar products, as approved by the Architect.

- C. Quality of work: All work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner so as to insure a high quality job and to present a neat and mechanical appearance when completed. All materials used shall be new and UL approved for their intended use where such standards have been established.
- D. Applicable Standards: Work included in this section shall comply with all applicable laws of governmental agencies having jurisdiction over said work, and with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code, ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-A standard (Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces) and its addenda and TIA/EIA-568-B standard (Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard) and its addenda, as well as generally considered quality standards for high speed internet access, where it is not in conflict with those laws.
- E. Site Conditions: Before submitting a bid the contractor or sub-contractor shall thoroughly familiarize himself with these specifications and drawings and ascertain all requirements. Adjustment to the work made necessary by actual field conditions shall be made at no additional cost.
- F. Handle conduit, connectors, terminators, caps, wireless access points, switches, hubs and other high speed internet access system components with great care to prevent undesired bending, damage and scoring the finish. Store conduit, connectors, terminators, caps, monitors, computer equipment, cameras and other closed circuit television system components inside and protect from harsh environmental elements.

1.5 COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. Coordinate the work in this section so as to conform to the progress of the work of the other trades. Phasing of the work shall be done as soon as possible with the entire installation completed as soon as the condition of the building permits. As well, review the equipment submittals of all other trades and any Owner-furnished equipment for physical connection requirements, maximum bend radius, minimum distance between electrical and data wiring, electrical voltage, phase, wiring and load characteristics and wiring details.

1.6 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The high speed internet access system specified herein shall be of a modular design and nature to facilitate both expansion and service and shall be completely of a solid-state design, with the exception of fans used for equipment cooling
- B. All conduit, equipment and installation materials required to fulfill the above shall be furnished whether or not specified herein or on the drawings, and shall be subject to approval by the Architect as pursuant to Section 01630.
- C. The installation supervisor shall instruct designated personnel in the correct operation of the system.

- D. The contractor shall provide four complete sets of the following:
Installation drawings, wiring diagrams, instruction manuals, schematic drawings and service manuals upon completion.
- E. The system shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from date of substantial completion against defective materials, design and workmanship. Any defective materials shall be replaced at no cost to the owner.
- F. The contractor shall submit to the Architect a detailed test procedure to be used for every section covered under this Section as per Section 01630. All cables shall be tested for length, attenuation, impedance, ground shorts, continuity of communications conductors, shields, NEXT and crosstalk.
- G. The contractor, if request to do so by the Architect, shall be prepared to show by proof of performance test(s) that the equipment furnished and installed on the job is equal to or exceeds the equipment specifications as listed herein. This proof of performance shall be by actual tests and not by printed technical or sales literature on said products. To this end, the contract shall provide qualified technicians and such test equipment as necessary to perform these tests. The Architect has final approval of tests to be performed to meet these requirements.
- H. Contractor shall provide the names of sub-contractors qualified to complete said work to the Architect as part of the bid package. Said sub-contractor shall be qualified to terminate cable in 110 and 66 style punch blocks, connectors and terminators, as well as be able to terminate and construct patch cables into RJ-45 and RJ-11 connectors.
- I. Contractor shall not be responsible for connecting PBX room equipment or backboard equipment. Contractor shall be responsible for terminating room outlets. HSIA provider and the Architect will provide continuity tests and signal degradation tests, as specified in Section 16760.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WIRELESS ACCESS POINTS

- A. Contractor shall provide wireless access points for the purpose of connecting wireless internet access clients to the local area network (LAN) contained within the hotel, and allowing for access from the LAN to a public switched wide area network (WAN), with access to the publicly switched Internet.
- B. Wireless access points shall provide 802.11b standard wireless access signals to clients. Wireless access points shall emit signals in the 2.54 GHz signal range.
- C. Wireless access points shall provide port-to-port security, such that no user may access another computer on the wireless network, another computer on the wired segment of the network, another computer within the hotel, nor can any other computer access another user's computer. Wireless access points shall also be able to block computers and users from initiating and creating "ad-hoc" wireless networks, or computer-to-computer network connections.

- D. Wireless access points shall provide a firmware upgrade function for updating the software that controls each wireless access point. Additionally, each wireless access point must be centrally administrable from the service providers or equipment providers network operations center (NOC).
- E. Wireless access points shall provide a 3-year equipment manufacturer's warranty, either included with the price of the equipment or as an add-on package, allowing for 2 business day turnaround on non-critical service calls, and on-site service within 1 business day for critical service calls. If on-site service is not available in the area of the site to be constructed, next-day shipment of a replacement product that is pre-configured for the said site shall be provided.
- F. Telephone support for non-critical problems that can be corrected via remote access by the service provider, equipment provider or manufacturer shall be provided. Hold times for said calls shall be less than 15 minutes.
- G. Telephone support for critical problems that cannot be corrected via remote and must be repaired by either be a replacement product or physical repair by the service provider, equipment provider or manufacturer shall be provided. Hold times for said calls shall be less than 15 minutes.
- H. Wireless access points shall provide bi-pole directional style antenna, except in the lobby and pool areas, where it shall have an omni-directional style antenna.
- I. Wireless access points shall be manufactured by Hewlett-Packard, and be model type HP WAP 420 NA (Manf. No. HPJ8130A), or shall be manufactured by Cisco Systems, and be model type Cisco Aironet 11000 AP 802.11b (Manf. No. AIR-AP1120B-A-K9).

2.02 POWER INJECTORS

- A. Contractor shall provide power injectors for providing power to WAPs where necessary.
- B. Any telecommunications or data distribution equipment not placed in the MDF shall be powered by the entering data or telecommunications backbone cabling.
- C. If contractor uses a solution that provides Power Over Ethernet, specified as equipment that adheres to the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (IEEE) 802.3af specifications, power injectors shall not be required for access points and other network equipment, requiring power that support this standard.
- D. Power injectors shall be manufactured by the manufacturer of the Wireless Access Point or other network solution requiring power.
- E. Contractor shall use, in the case of Cisco Systems Aironet Wireless Access Points, power injectors manufactured by Cisco, and be model type Cisco 1100-1200 Series Power Injectors (Manf. No. CIS-AIR-PWRINJ3).

2.03 SWITCH

- A. Contractor shall provide a switch for routing and connecting wireless access points, data outlets and other Ethernet-based communications systems.
- B. Switch shall provide 24 ports of 10/100 Mbps speed, and be of the intelligent routing type.
- C. Switch shall allow for remote access via HTTP from any standard internet web browser.
- D. Switch shall allow for virtual private network (VPN) pass-through, including, but not limited to, IPsec, LTPP, PPTP and other VPN access.
- E. If Switch is to be used with Wireless Access Points that provide Power Over Ethernet, as pursuant to IEEE 802.3af standards, switch shall provide said POE and be fully compliant with IEEE 802.3af standards.
- F. Contractor shall use, in the case of Cisco Systems Aironet Wireless Access Points, a switch manufactured by Cisco, and be model type Cisco 2950 Switch 24-port 10/100 (Manf. No. CIS-WS-C2950-24), or in the case of Hewlett Packard Procurve Wireless Access Points, contractor shall use a switch manufactured by Hewlett Packard, and be model type HP ProCurve Switch 2626-PWR (Manf. No. HP J8164A).

2.04 GATEWAY

- A. Contractor shall provide a Gateway server that will introduce a forced start page (FSP) upon guest connection to the internet, provide advanced routing and network monitoring capabilities, allow remote administration personnel to administer and troubleshoot the internal components of the network and provide firewall protection from the public switched internet to the hotel.
- B. Gateway shall be manufactured by Nomadix, and be model type HSG-100.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Upon completion, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to perform the necessary mixing, matching and balancing of signals for a properly operating system as described here-in.
- B. Contractor shall leave a minimum of 3'0" of cable at each cable end-point, as specified in the drawings, for termination by the HSIA provider.
- C. At the time of project closeout, submit a minimum of four sets each product manual.

3.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Protect finished installation from damage by other trades.

- B. Remove rubbish and left over materials from the site.
- C. Provide one year warranty on the entire system including on site labor during normal working hours at no cost to the Owner for a period of twelve months from the date of acceptance.
- D. Guarantee response to a trouble call within one normal business day after receipt of such call.
- E. Contractor shall provide a written agreement outlining warranty acceptance.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Follow guidelines for Data Raceway System installation, as pursuant to Section 16753.
- B. Follow guidelines for cable securing, installation, and termination, as pursuant to Section 16760.
- C. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected. Failure to examine and/or correct existing conditions will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for the proper operation of this work nor be the basis for a claim for additional compensation by the Owner. Install the work of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, the approved submittals, and shop drawings.
- D. Coordinate with other trades to assure proper and adequate provisions in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this section.
- E. Install each item in its proper location, fire-caulked in all areas where required by the Electrical Code, firmly anchored into position, level, and plumb, and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Contractor shall also provide data two data outlets in the meeting room, two data ports in the general manager's office, two data ports in the joint office, two data ports in the meeting room, two data ports behind the night desk workstation, four data ports behind the front desk, and other locations as deemed appropriate by the Owner and or Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 16790

TERMINATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Properly terminate all structured wiring cable in accordance with the following using special tools specifically designed for each type of termination.
- B. Related work:
 - 1. Documents affecting work of this Section include, but are not necessarily limited to, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Sections in Division 1 of these Specifications.
 - 2. TIA specifications T568B;
 - 3. Section 01720: Project Record Documents;
 - 4. Section 01730: Operation and Maintenance;
 - 5. Section 16753: Data Raceway Systems;
 - 6. Section 16760: Audio/Visual/Telecommunications Systems;
 - 7. Section 16765: Television Distribution System;
 - 8. Section 16780: Background Music/Music On Hold Systems;
 - 9. Section 16785: Closed Circuit Television Systems;
 - 10. Section 16786: Meeting Room Systems;
 - 11. Section 16787: High Speed Internet Access.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this section.
 - 1. Technicians shall furnish evidence of current certification by BICSI and/or RCDD.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(No products are required in this Section)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE CONDITIONS

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be performed. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and

proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 WORKMANSHIP

- A. Produce terminations which are properly punched down and secure with all members assembled in accordance with the drawings and specifications which fully allows for the specified transmission.

3.3 GENERAL TERMINATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not bend cable sharply or nick the protective sheath covering the insulated wires.
- B. Maintain polarity by carefully matching wire colors of the Tip (+) and Ring (-) pairs from the demarcation point to the outlets.
- C. Maintain the access line number correlation with the pair number when wiring connectors.
- D. Use the two inner pairs of a housing for telecommunication. Use the outer pairs of the connector for other purposed (if any) to provide compatibility with two-line telephones.
- E. Leave 18 inches of spare wire at outlets and connection points of connections and changes.
- F. Each workstation shall be served by a minimum of two, 100Ω UTP cables. Single or double outlets may be used.
- G. Never install components of unknown/questionable origin or quality.
- H. Document all connections carefully, and keep installations neat and tidy.
- I. Test all connections.

3.4 SPECIFIC TERMINATION REQUIREMENT

- A. Where data cabling is terminated into a snap-in connector module and/or 110-style punch block, contractor shall use a multi-pair punch down tool with a 4-pair head specified for use in terminating CAT 6 cabling to 110-style punch down devices.
- B. Where data cabling is terminated into a snap-in connector module and/or 110-style punch block, contractor shall allow no more than 1/2" of untwisting of conductor pairs from termination point downward the cable. Re-cut the cable and re-terminate all connections where more than 1/2" of conductor is untwisted still allowing for the 18" of spare wire at each outlet. Remove wire and re-pull new wire where these conditions are not met at no additional cost to the owner.
- C. Where data cabling is terminated into a snap-in connector module and/or 110-style punch block, contractor shall leave no more than 2" of exposed conductor pairs removed from sheathing.

- D. Where telecommunications cabling is terminated into a 66-style punch block, contractor shall use a punch down tool specified for use in terminating cabling to 66-style punch down devices.
- E. Contractor shall use care when removing sheathing from both data and telecommunications cabling. Where nicks or cuts are caused to conductors, contractor shall cut cabling 1/2" below nicked on cut conductor and remove sheathing again.
- F. Where video/CCTV cabling is terminated, the contractor shall use a crimping tool specified for use with the appropriate style of crimp-on F-type ends.
- G. Contractor shall install C-4 style clips onto the 110-style punch block using a multi-pair punch down tool with a 4-pair head, specified for use in terminating CAT6 IDC C-4 style clips to 110-style punch down devices.
- H. Contractor shall install 110-style patch cords from the 110-style punch block to the back of the 110-style patch panel.
- I. Contractor shall install 25-pair voice cable from each 66-style punch blocks to the voice grade patch panel.
- J. Contractor shall place unopened data patch cables in a secure, indoor environment location and shall hand them over to the Owner at time of project closeout.
- K. Contractor shall install bridging clips to ensure proper telephone service to each individual extension.
- L. Contractor shall coordinate with telephone service provider and telephone equipment installer to ensure proper operation of the entire telephone system.
- M. Contractor shall install punch block standoffs to each 66-style punch block prior to terminating conductors onto the 66-style punch block.
- N. Contractor shall terminate appropriate cables to appropriate snap-in connectors at each outlet prior to installing snap-in connectors to wall plate housing.
- O. Connectors shall be color coded and all connectors of each system shall be of one unique color throughout the entire installation.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF OTHER ITEMS

- A. Install all items in strict accordance with the Drawings, and the recommended methods of the manufacturer as approved by the Architect, anchoring firmly into position at the prescribed location, straight, plumb, and level.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Keep the premises in a neat, safe, and orderly condition at all times during execution of this portion of the work, free from accumulation of parts, tools, equipment or debris.

B. Sweeping:

1. At the end of each working day, and more often if necessary, thoroughly sweep surfaces where refuse from this portion of the work has settled.
2. Remove the refuse to the area of the job site set aside for its storage.
3. Upon completion of this portion of the work, thoroughly clean all surfaces removing deleterious and/or foreign materials including fingerprints, smudges, paint, dirt and/or grime.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 05 00 - FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM GENERAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. Design, fabricate, install, and secure required approvals for a complete fire protection automatic sprinkler [and standpipe] system where shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation in accordance with pertinent requirements of NFPA 13, [NFPA 14,] and local governmental agencies having jurisdiction.
- B. Work includes providing design services; furnishing all labor, material, equipment and installation as necessary and reasonably incidental to the proper completion and proper operation of the fire protection systems. The work shall consist of but shall not necessarily be limited to the following:
 - 1. Standpipe System as specified in Section 21 12 00
 - 2. Automatic wet-pipe sprinkler system as specified in Section 21 13 13.
 - 3. Automatic dry-pipe sprinkler system as specified in Section 21 13 16.
 - 4. Fire Pump system as specified in Section 21 30 00.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 (General Requirements) sections of the Project Manual apply to this Section.
- B. The General Conditions shall be carefully examined before proposals for any work are submitted. Division 21 shall not be interpreted as waiving or overruling any requirements expressed in the General Conditions unless Division 21 specifications contain statements more definitive or more restrictive.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Words and phrases used throughout the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as indicated below:
 - 1. Construction Documents – the basis for the work. It includes both the Drawings (plans) and Project Manual (specifications).
 - 2. Contractor – The person or organization awarded the contract for fire protection design and construction services.

In the case of a construction project administered as a multiple-prime contract, the term shall be further defined as the Contractor holding a prime contract for fire protection design and construction work.

The terms “Fire Protection Contractor” and “Sprinkler Contractor” may be used interchangeably with the term Contractor.

3. Provide – To furnish and install materials, equipment or systems.
4. Submittals – Submittals shall include Manufacturer's Catalog Data, Shop Drawings, Calculations, Certificates of Compliance, Testing Reports, Samples, and Operation and Maintenance Manuals.
5. Professional – The Architect and/or Engineer of record.
6. Work By Others – Work provided by a person or organization other than the Contractor.

1.4 CODES, REFERENCES, AND STANDARDS

- A. The Contractor shall comply with all laws, ordinances, and regulations of all Authorities Having Jurisdiction, including those of all applicable City, County, State, Federal and Public Utility entities. All licenses, permits, fees, inspection fees, etc., shall be obtained by the Contractor and the cost shall be included in the Contract price.
- B. The minimum standard of work under this contract shall be in accordance with the following model building codes and standards:
 1. International Code Council (ICC)
 - a. International Building Code with Louisiana Amendments
 - b. International Fire Prevention Code with Louisiana Amendments
 2. National Fire Protection Association
 - a. NFPA 13 – Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems
 - b. NFPA 14 – Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems
 - c. NFPA 20 – Standard for the Installation of Centrifugal Fire Pumps
 - d. NFPA 24 – Standard for the Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances
 - e. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
 - f. Requirements for Automatic Sprinkler Systems, latest edition.
- C. Other publications listed throughout Division 22 form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. All publications shall be the latest edition as adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE, WORKMANSHIP AND COORDINATION

- A. The Contractor must coordinate his work with that of the other trades so that all work will be performed in an orderly manner and with the least possible interference. Where coordination with other trades is required, the Professional shall make the final decision regarding changes to be made in the work.
- B. The Contractor must thoroughly familiarize himself with all specifications and drawings for the project so that he clearly understands his responsibility in relationship to the work to be performed. The Contractor must plan and perform his work so as to permit the use of the building at the earliest possible date.

1. Sprinklers shall be referred to on drawings, submittals, and other documentation, by the sprinkler identification or model number as specifically published in the appropriate agency listing or approval. Trade names or other abbreviated designations shall not be allowed.
- C. The Contractor shall guarantee the workmanship, materials and equipment, furnished against defects, leaks, performance and non-operation for a period of one (1) year after the date of final acceptance. Defective workmanship shall be construed as meaning defective materials and unsatisfactory installation and not intended to apply to ordinary wear and tear. The Contractor shall pay for any repairs or replacements caused by defective workmanship as construed herein within the period covered by the Guarantee, including all incidental work required to correct the deficiency.
- D. The Contractor shall expressly and completely follow all manufacturers' instructions required for validation of the manufacturer's warranty agreement including but not limited to service, maintenance and adjustments of the equipment.
- E. The Contractor will be held responsible for the proper installation of all materials and equipment required for a complete installation within the intent and meaning of the Contract Documents.
 1. All grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be of the same manufacturer as the grooved components.
 2. All castings used for coupling housings, fittings, valve bodies, etc., shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.
- F. The grooved coupling manufacturer's factory trained representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation. (A distributor's representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).)

1.6 PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Deviations from the Contractor's approved Design and Fabrication Drawings necessary to coordinate the work with other trades, to conform to the building conditions or to conform to the rules and regulations of Authorities Having Jurisdiction shall be made only after obtaining written permission from the Professional.
- B. The Contractor shall keep a record of construction changes and deviations from the original Design and Fabrication Drawings. All changes shall be recorded on a separate set of prints which shall be kept at the job site specifically for that purpose. The record shall be made immediately after the work is completed. Documentation shall include:
 1. changes in pipe routing location
 2. valve locations
 3. Equipment locations, etc.
 4. actual capacities and values of equipment provided as indicated in equipment schedules

- C. The marked-up record set of drawings shall be submitted to the Professional for review and approval before final acceptance of the Fire Protection Contract work.

1.7 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Before ordering any equipment and material, or performing any work, the Contractor shall verify all measurements and dimensions at the job site and shall be held responsible for the correctness of same.
- B. No extra compensation will be allowed on account of differences between actual dimensions and measurements and those indicated on the Contractor's drawings.

1.8 PROTECTION OF SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

- A. The Contractor, at his own expense, shall repair, replace and maintain in service any utilities, facilities or services (underground, aboveground, interior or exterior) damaged, broken, or otherwise rendered inoperative during the course of construction due to activities on the part of the Contractor. The method used by the Contractor in repairing, replacing or maintaining the services shall be approved by the Professional.
- B. The Contractor shall protect, at his own expense, such of his work, materials or equipment that is subject to damage during the project duration. All openings into any piping, ducts or equipment must be securely covered, or otherwise protected, to prevent injury due to carelessly or maliciously dropped tools or materials, grit, dirt, or any foreign material. The Contractor shall be held responsible for all damage so done until his work is fully and finally accepted.
- C. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to protect motors, pumps, electrical equipment, and all similar items of equipment from dirt, grime, plaster, water, etc. during all phases of construction. This protection shall be provided by covering equipment with transparent plastic sheeting and/or locating the materials and equipment in an area free from the elements.

1.9 INTERRUPTION OF SERVICES

- A. The Contractor shall schedule his work to avoid any major interruption of any utility services.
- B. Existing utilities serving facilities occupied and used by the Owner or others shall not be interrupted except when such interruptions have been authorized in writing by the Owner or the Professional. Interruptions shall occur only after acceptable temporary utility services have been provided. The Contractor shall provide a minimum of ten (10) working days notice to the Professional and receive written notice to proceed before interrupting any utility.

1.10 CLEANUP

- A. The Contractor shall maintain buildings, grounds, and public properties free from accumulations of waste materials, debris and rubbish. At reasonable intervals during the progress of work, and when directed by the Owner's Authorized Representative, the site and public properties shall be cleaned and waste materials, debris and rubbish shall be disposed of in appropriate manner. The Contractor shall provide containers for collection of waste materials,

debris and rubbish. Waste materials, debris and rubbish shall be removed from the job site and legally disposed of at a landfill area in accordance with all applicable regulations. Burning or burying waste materials, debris or rubbish on project site shall not be permitted.

- B. At the completion of the Project, remove waste materials, rubbish, tools, equipment, machinery, surplus materials, etc., and clean all sight-exposed fire protection fixtures and equipment. Remove grease, dust, dirt, stains, labels, fingerprints and other foreign materials from sight-exposed fire protection fixtures and equipment. Broom clean paved and concrete surfaces; rake clean other ground surfaces. Repair, patch and touch up marred surfaces to specified finish or to match adjacent surfaces.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall be in accordance with Division 01 of the Project Manual.

- B. General

1. The Contractor shall provide to the Professional for review six (6) copies of required submittals, unless noted otherwise. All Catalog Data, Shop Drawings, Design (hydraulic) Calculations, and Certificates of Compliance shall be submitted as a single package. All delays to the job resulting from the Contractor's failure to provide submittals at one time will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Four (4) copies will be returned to the Contractor.
2. Submittals provided for review shall clearly and completely describe the specific product(s) they represent. Where differences exist between the item specified and that submitted for review, the submittal shall be highlighted.
3. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by a Certified NICET Level III technician. The plans should bear the signature, stamp and certificate number of the technician.
4. Submittals shall bear the review stamp of the Contractor. The review stamp of the Contractor shall be affixed to shop drawings to indicate:
 - a. The Contractor has coordinated the electrical characteristics of the equipment.
 - b. The Contractor has verified that the equipment submitted will physically fit into the space allocated with adequate clearances for maintenance, access, and egress requirements.
 - c. The Contractor shall bear all associated costs that may accrue due to failure to completely represent a given product.
5. Material and equipment shown on the drawings or specified herein shall not be incorporated in the work of this Contract until shop drawings, hydraulic calculations, engineering data and catalog information have been reviewed and accepted by the Professional.
6. Grooved joint couplings and fittings shall be shown on drawings and product submittals, and shall be specifically identified with the applicable style or series designation.

- C. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

1. Submit two (2) sets of 8-1/2" x 11" text sixty (60) days prior to operator training/pre-final inspection bound in three D side ring capacity expansion binders with durable plastic covers for review by the Professional.
2. Prepare binder covers with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS – FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS", title of project, and subject matter of binder when multiple binders are required.
3. Internally subdivide the binder contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized as described below; with tab titling clearly printed under reinforced laminated plastic tabs.
4. Contents: Prepare a Table of Contents for each volume, with each Product or system description identified type on thirty (30) pound white paper.
 - a. Part 1: Directory, listing names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Contractor, Subcontractors, and equipment suppliers.
 - b. Part 2: Operation and maintenance instructions arranged by system or process flow and subdivided by specification section. For each category, identify names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers. Identify the following:
 - 1) Significant design criteria.
 - 2) List of equipment.
 - 3) Parts list for each component.
 - 4) Maintenance instructions for equipment and systems.
 - 5) Maintenance instructions for finishes, including recommended cleaning methods and materials and operating instructions.
 - 6) Special precautions identifying detrimental agents.
 - 7) Special Requirements of other sections of this specification noted to be included in the operating and maintenance manual.
 - 8) Original copy (reproductions will not be accepted) of NFPA 25 – Standard for the Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems.
 - c. Part 3: Project documents and certificates, including the following:
 - 1) All approved Submittals
 - 2) Shop Drawings
 - 3) Hydraulic Calculations
 - 4) Certificates of Compliance
 - 5) Photocopies of warranties and bonds
 - 6) Material safety data sheets
5. Submit two (2) copies of completed volumes in final form fifteen (15) days prior to owner training. These copies will include Professional's previous review comments.

1.12 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. The Contractor shall furnish all motors, combination starters/disconnects, overload protection and controls for equipment required to provide complete and workable systems, unless noted otherwise.

- B. All motors, motor control equipment and wiring shall meet the requirements of the National Electric Code, and shall comply with the requirements of the Public Utility Company furnishing service and with the rules and regulations of all Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
- C. The Contractor shall verify electrical characteristics at the site before ordering electrical equipment.
- D. Motors under ½ (one-half) horsepower shall be 120 volts. Motors ½ (one-half) horsepower and over shall be 3 (three) phase. All motors to be 1750 revolutions per minute (rpm) unless noted otherwise. Combination motor starters shall be of the fused switch type complete with magnetic motor starter. Units shall be of the NEMA size and type applicable to motor size, with 3-pole overload. Overload elements and fuses shall be of the proper size to protect the motor. Unless noted otherwise, units shall be equipped with indicating lights, HAND-OFF-AUTOMATIC (HOA) selector switch, four (4) auxiliary contacts two (2) normally open (N.O.) and two (2) normally closed (N.C.) and fused control transformer to provide 120 volt control voltage. Fusible disconnect switch operating handles shall be interlocked with the door so that the door cannot be opened with the switch in the "ON" position, except through a hidden release mechanism. The operating handle shall be arranged for padlocking in the "OFF" position with up to three padlocks. Fuses shall be furnished by the Contractor as required to comply with NEC requirements. Where R type fuses are indicated, fuse holders shall be provided with rejection clips. Equipment shall be Square D, Allen-Bradley, or General Electric or accepted substitute, and shall be provided with a NEMA Type 1 enclosure, unless noted otherwise.

1.13 CONTROL WIRING

- A. The Contractor shall provide all necessary control wiring and related conduit required for complete and workable systems.
- B. All conduit and wiring shall be in accordance with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code. Installation of control wiring shall be performed in a neat and workmanlike manner by competent workmen. Workmanship shall be as specified in Division 16.
- C. Control circuits shall be wired for 110 volt control, using fused individual control transformers. Circuits shall be fused and shall be interrupted when the disconnect device is opened.

1.14 INSPECTION AND TESTING

- A. General
 - 1. New fire protection systems and parts of existing systems which have been altered, extended or repaired shall be tested to disclose leaks and defects.
 - 2. The Contractor shall notify the Professional a minimum of 5 (five) working days prior to testing to coordinate the testing and inspection procedures.
 - 3. If the Professional determines that the fire protection systems do not pass the prescribed tests, then the Contractor shall be required to make the necessary repairs, at his own expense, and the Contractor shall re-inspect and re-test the systems. Repairing, inspection and testing shall be continued until all systems pass as determined by the Professional.

4. All new, altered, extended or replaced fire protection shall be left uncovered and unconcealed until it has been inspected, tested and accepted by the Professional. Where such work has been covered or concealed before it has been inspected, tested and accepted, it shall be uncovered by the Contractor, at his own expense as directed by the Professional.
5. All equipment, material, labor, etc., required for testing the fire protection systems shall be furnished by the Contractor.

1.15 INSTRUCTION OF THE OWNER

- A. After acceptance of the Project, the Contractor shall furnish the services of personnel thoroughly familiar with the completed installation to instruct the Owner in the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment and appurtenances provided.
- B. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with two weeks advance notice before the instruction session.

1.16 CHASES AND OPENINGS

- A. All chases and openings required for the installation of the work shall be coordinated with the other trades. The Contractor shall provide the other trades with sufficient time (1 (one) week minimum) for coordination of all chases and openings. The contractor shall be responsible for all work required to cut and patch the required openings. The work shall be performed to the satisfaction of the Professional.
- B. Penetrations made in fire rated chases, partitions, floors, etc., shall be sealed with an approved material and method as required to maintain the integrity of the fire separation.
- C. The Contractor shall provide all sleeves, hangers, and anchors required for installation of work in chases and openings.

1.17 PAINTING

- A. Painting shall be in accordance with Division 09.

1.18 RELATED WORK

- A. All work related to providing complete fire protection systems and equipment shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The following related work shall be provided as indicated in other specification Divisions, unless noted otherwise, but shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor for workmanship and completeness:
 1. General Contractor
 - a. Installation of access panels.
 - b. Final painting of existing walls, floors and ceilings where the surfaces are being refinished and remodeled under the General Contract. Refer to General Construction Drawings.

- c. Concrete housekeeping pads for fire protection equipment.
- d. Removal of existing concrete housekeeping pads.

2. Food Service Equipment Contractor

- a. Kitchen hood fire extinguishing systems.

3. Electrical Contractor

- a. Verification of the proper rotation of three phase equipment, and making modifications as required to correct improper rotation.
- b. Installation of all combination starters/disconnects and overload protectors.

1.19 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL AND ACCESSORIES

- A. The contractor shall provide all necessary steel angles, channels, pipe, rods, nuts, bolts, etc., as shown on plans, as specified, or as may be required for complete and proper installation of sprinkler piping, systems and equipment. All material and workmanship shall be of the best quality and shall be installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade.

1.20 ACCESS PANELS

- A. The Contractor shall furnish access doors to the General Contractor for installation in ceilings, walls, partitions and floors for access to valve and other appurtenances.
- B. Access panels shall be of sufficient size to permit removal or access to equipment, except that the minimum size shall be 12-inches by 16-inches.
- C. Access door locations shall be as determined by field conditions for optimum access to equipment, and shall be reviewed by the Professional before final installation
- D. Access doors shall be suitable for installation in the finish material of the ceilings, walls, partitions and floors.
- E. Frame and panel access doors in restrooms, kitchens and as indicated shall be stainless steel.
- F. Access doors with UL Listing shall be provided in rated construction assemblies. Access doors shall be "B-Label" and shall have a UL one and one-half (1-1/2) hour rating at 250 degrees F rating for both door and frame. Maximum size shall be 20" x 20" or 400 square inches in area. Frame shall be sixteen (16) gauge minimum steel, panel shall be twenty (20) gauge minimum steel. Access doors shall be provided with a baked-on enamel finish (prime coat), continuous type hinge on one side, flush-face type lock with key operation and self-latching cylinder locks.
- G. Access doors without UL label shall be provided in all non-rated construction assemblies: Frame shall be sixteen (16) gauge minimum steel, panel shall be fourteen (14) gauge minimum steel. Access doors shall be provided with a baked-on enamel finish (prime coat), concealed spring type hinges and flush-face type lock with key operation and self-latching cylinder locks. Door shall open 175 degrees (minimum).
- H. All access doors shall be keyed alike.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. All materials used on fire protection systems shall meet the requirements of applicable codes, standards, and requirements of Local Authorities Having Jurisdiction and the Owner's Insurance Carrier.

2.3 SPRINKLER AND STANDPIPE PIPING, ABOVE GROUND

- A. Piping: black steel meeting ASTM A53, ASTM A135, or ASTM A795.

1. Piping 2-1/2" and larger shall be Schedule 10 or the approximately equal "flow" products with roll-grooved, flanged or welded connections.

2. Piping 2" and smaller shall be Schedule 40 with threaded or welded connections or Schedule 5 with Pressfit® connections.

3. Piping shall be hot-dipped galvanized where specified herein or noted on the drawings.

- B. Fittings: UL-listed, standard weight suitable for pressures up to 250 psig, cast iron meeting ASTM A126 or malleable iron meeting ASTM A197. Threaded cast iron fittings shall meet ANSI B16.4; flanged cast iron fittings shall meet ANSI B16.1. Threaded malleable iron fittings shall meet ANSI B16.3. Grooved fittings and couplings shall be UL-listed and shall be of ductile iron meeting ASTM A536, utilizing an EDPM gasket. Fittings shall be short pattern, with flow equal to standard pattern fittings. Plain-end fittings and couplings, or welded-segmented fittings shall not be used. Changes in pipe diameter shall be made using tapered reducing fittings. Bushings or grooved-end reducing couplings shall not be used unless standard reducing fittings are not regularly available.

1. Grooved joint couplings shall be:

- a. Rigid Type: Housings shall be cast with offsetting angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity and system support and hanging in accordance with NFPA-13. Couplings shall be fully installed at visual pad-to-pad offset contact. (Tongue and recess type couplings, or any coupling that requires exact gapping of bolt pads on each side of the coupling at specified torque ratings, are not allowed.)

1) 1-1/2" through 8": Installation-Ready, for direct stab installation without field disassembly. Victaulic Style 009-EZ and Style 107H.

2) Victaulic FireLock™ Style 005 or Zero-Flex Style 07.

- b. Flexible Type: For use in locations where vibration attenuation and stress relief are required, and for seismic applications. Victaulic Installation-Ready Style 177, Style 75 or 77.

2. Gaskets:

Fire Protection Service	Temp. Range	Gasket Recommendation
Dry Systems	Ambient	FlushSeal®, Grade EPDM, Type A
Freezer Applications	-40°F to 0°F	FlushSeal®, Grade L, Silicone
Water/Wet Systems	Ambient	Grade EPDM, Type A

2.4 VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

- A. Gates Valves: Class 125, comply with MSS SP-80, bronze body, screwed bonnet, rising stem, solid wedge. 3" and larger; comply with MSS SP-70, iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, hand wheel, OS&Y, flanged or grooved ends. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 771.
- B. Butterfly Valves:
 - 1. Comply with MSS SP-67, lug type, cast or ductile iron body, chrome plated ductile iron disk, EPDM seat, extended neck, handwheel and gear drive and integral indicating device, built-in tamper proof switch, 200 PSI rating.
 - 2. Grooved end type with ductile iron body, electroless nickel coated ductile iron disc, pressure responsive seat, and stainless steel stem. (Stem shall be offset from the disc center-line to provide full 360-degree circumferential seating.) Handwheel and gear drive and integral indicating devices, with weatherproof actuator and supervisory switches, 300 PSI rating. Victaulic Series 705.
- C. Spring-Actuated Check Valves: 250 PSI rating, grooved end ductile iron one-piece body, stainless steel spring and shaft, suitable for vertical or horizontal installations. Victaulic Series 717.
- D. Check Valves: Class 125, comply with MSS SP-80 bronze body, screwed cap. "Y" pattern swing, bronze disc. 3" and larger, comply with MSS SP-71, class 125, iron body, bronze mounted, horizontal swing, cast iron disc.

2.5 DRAIN VALVES

- A. Provide bronze compression stop with hose thread nipple and cap.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. All materials and equipment used shall be installed in strict accordance with the Standards under which the materials are accepted and approved, and in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- B. The Contractor's Drawings shall indicate every bend, offset, change in direction and appurtenance required to provide a complete and workable system.
- C. Grooved joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published installation instructions. Grooved ends shall be clean and free from indentations, projections, and roll marks in the area from pipe end to groove. Gaskets shall be of an elastomer grade suitable for the intended service, and shall be molded and produced by the coupling manufacturer. The grooved coupling manufacturer's factory trained representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review

contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation. (A distributor's representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).)

3.2 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

- A. The Sprinkler Contractor shall coordinate with the General Contractor to determine site classification and seismic requirements for this project. Where required, the Sprinkler Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the Sprinkler system(s).
- B. The Sprinkler Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the "Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems" published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for piping.
- C. The Sprinkler Contractor shall include shop drawings of the specific methods of seismic restraint to be used for this project before installation of piping, ductwork, and equipment.
- D. Any required anchorage of the equipment and materials for this project shall be an integral part of the design and specification of such equipment and materials. Manufacturers of all equipment shall provide anchorage details, isolators, seismic mounts and restraints, etc. necessary to comply with Code requirements.
- E. The Sprinkler Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Structural Engineer licensed in the State of Louisiana to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer's computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings which show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies.
- F. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a Professional Engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorage shall be reviewed by the project's structural engineer.
- G. The professional engineer retained by the Sprinkler Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation.
- H. Review of the seismic design and shop drawings by the Engineer/Architect or his agent shall not relieve the Sprinkler Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the International Building Code.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 21 13 16 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes dry-pipe sprinkler system guidelines for system design, installation, and certification.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 21 05 13 - Common Motor Requirements for Fire-Suppression Equipment: Product requirements for motors for placement by this section.
 - 2. Section 21 05 48 - Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment: Product requirements for vibration isolators for placement by this section.
 - 3. Section 26 05 03 - Equipment Wiring Connections: Execution requirements for electric connections to equipment specified by this section.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. National Fire Protection Association:
 - 1. NFPA 13 - Installation of Sprinkler Systems.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. System to provide coverage for **attic space and porte cochere**
- B. Provide a hydraulically designed system to NFPA 13 occupancy requirements.
- C. Obtain up-to-date flow test data. Determine volume and pressure of incoming water supply from water flow test data. Provide flow test data on the Shop Drawings.
- D. Interface system with building fire and smoke alarm system.
- E. For new systems, provide fire department connections as indicated on Drawings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures: Submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide layout of finished ceiling areas indicating sprinkler locations coordinated with ceiling installation and the work of other trades (ductwork, lights and any other ceiling mounted devices). Show detailed pipe layout, hangers and supports, sprinklers, components and accessories. Indicate system controls.
- C. Product Data: Submit data on sprinklers, valves, pumps, compressors and specialties, including manufacturers catalog information. Submit performance ratings, rough-in details, weights, support requirements, and piping connections.

- D. Design Data: Submit design calculations signed and sealed by a professional engineer.
- E. Sprinklers shall be referred to on drawings, submittals, and other documentation, by the sprinkler identification or model number as specifically published in the appropriate agency listing or approval. Trade names or other abbreviated designations shall not be allowed.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of sprinklers and deviations of piping from drawings. Indicate drain and test locations.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit components of system, servicing requirements, record drawings, inspection data, replacement part numbers and availability, and location and numbers of service depot.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with NFPA 13.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Installer: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- C. Design system under direct supervision of Professional Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed at Project location (state).

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements: Product storage and handling requirements.
- B. Store products in shipping containers until installation.
- C. Furnish temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.
- B. Furnish five (5) year manufacturer warranty for air compressor and pump.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.
- B. Furnish extra sprinklers under provisions of NFPA 13.
- C. Furnish suitable wrenches for each sprinkler type.
- D. Furnish metal storage cabinet in location designated by Architect, adjacent to system riser.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SPRINKLERS

- A. Suspended Ceiling Type:
 - 1. Type: **Concealed** pendant type with matching escutcheon plate.
 - 2. Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 3. Escutcheon Plate Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 4. Fusible Link: temperature rated for specific area hazard.
 - 5. Basis of Design: Victaulic Model V36.
- B. Exposed Area Type:
 - 1. Type: Standard upright type
 - 2. Finish: Brass.
 - 3. Fusible Link: temperature rated for specific area hazard.
 - 4. Basis of Design: Victaulic Model V36.
- C. Side wall Type:
 - 1. Type: **Semi-recessed** horizontal side wall type with matching escutcheon plate
 - 2. Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 3. Escutcheon Plate Finish: Chrome plated.
 - 4. Fusible Link: temperature rated for specific area hazard.
 - 5. Basis of Design: Victaulic Model V36.
- D. Guards: Finish to match sprinkler finish.
- E. Escutcheons and guards shall be listed, supplied, and approved for use with the sprinkler by the sprinkler manufacturer.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Dry Pipe Sprinkler Alarm Valve: Check type valve with divided seat ring, rubber faced or aluminum-bronze clapper with elastomer seal to automatically actuate water motor alarm [and electric alarm], with accelerator [; with test and drain]. Valve internal components shall be replaceable without removing the valve from the installed position. Valve shall be externally resettable. Required air pressure shall be 13 psi / 90 kPa. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 768-NXT.

- B. Electric Alarm: Electrically operated gong with pressure alarm switch. Basis of Design: System Sensor.
- C. Water Flow Switch: Vane type switch for mounting horizontal or vertical, with two contacts; rated 10 amp at 125 volt AC and 2.0 amp at 24 volt DC. Basis of Design: System Sensor.
- D. Fire Department Connections:
 - 1. Type:
 - a. Free standing type with ductile iron pedestal chrome plated finish.
 - 2. Outlets: Two-way with fire department thread size. Threaded dust-cap and chain of matching material and finish.
 - 3. Drain: 3/4 inch automatic drip, outside or connected to drain.
 - 4. Label: "Sprinkler - Fire Department Connection"
 - 5. At the low-point near each fire department connection, install a 90-degree elbow with drain connection to allow for system drainage to prevent freezing. Elbow shall be Victaulic #10-DR.

2.3 AIR COMPRESSOR

- A. Compressor: Single unit, electric motor driven, motor, motor starter, safety valves, check valves, air maintenance device incorporating electric pressure switch and unloading valve. Basis of Design: Victaulic Company.

2.4 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Motors: In accordance with Section 21 05 13.
- B. Controls: Supervisory switches, Water Level Supervisory Switches, Tank Temperature Supervisory Switches, Room Temperature Supervisory Switches.
- C. Disconnect Switch: Factory mount in control panel or on equipment.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NFPA 13.
- B. Locate fire department connection with sufficient clearance from walls, obstructions, or adjacent Siamese connectors to allow full swing of fire department wrench handle.
- C. Install outside alarm-gong on building wall as indicated on Drawings
- D. Install piping to minimize obstruction with other work.
- E. Install piping in concealed spaces above finished ceilings.
- F. Center sprinklers in two directions in ceiling tile and install piping offsets.

1. The Victaulic Aquaflex multiple-use open-gate stainless steel flexible drop system may be used to properly locate sprinkler heads. The drop system shall be supplied with required supporting members and bracing.

G. Connect to fire pump system in accordance with Section 21 30 00 and NFPA 13.

H. Do not install sprinklers that have been dropped, damaged, or show a visible loss of fluid. Never install sprinklers with cracked bulbs.

I. Sprinkler bulb protector shall be removed by hand after installation. Do not use tools or any other device(s) to remove the protector that could damage the bulb in any way.

J. Install guards on sprinklers where required to protect sprinklers from physical damage.

K. Install air compressor on vibration isolators. Refer to Section 21 05 48.

L. Hydrostatically test entire system.

M. Require test be witnessed by authority having jurisdiction.

3.2 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

A. Verify devices are installed and connected to fire alarm system.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Final cleaning.

B. Flush entire piping system of foreign matter.

3.4 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

A. Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Protecting installed construction.

B. Apply masking tape or paper cover to sprinklers, cover plates, and sprinkler escutcheons not receiving field painted finish. Remove after painting. Replace painted sprinklers with new.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 213113 - ELECTRIC-DRIVE, CENTRIFUGAL FIRE PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Split-case fire pumps.
 - 2. Fire-pump accessories and specialties.
 - 3. Flowmeter systems.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Fire pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- B. Pump Equipment, Accessory, and Specialty Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum unless higher pressure rating is indicated.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, performance curves, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire pumps, motor drivers, and fire-pump accessories and specialties. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each fire pump, from manufacturer.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 20, "Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection."

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CENTRIFUGAL FIRE PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested fire-pump and driver unit.
- B. Base: Fabricated and attached to fire-pump and driver unit with reinforcement to resist movement of pump during seismic events when base is anchored to building substrate.
- C. Finish: Red paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested unit before shipping.

2.2 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, SINGLE-STAGE, SPLIT-CASE FIRE PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. A-C Fire Pump Systems; a business of ITT Industries.
 - 2. Corcoran Piping System Co.
 - 3. Patterson Pump Company; a subsidiary of the Gorman-Rupp Company.
 - 4. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, U.S.A.
 - 5. Peerless Pump, Inc.
 - 6. Pentair Pump Group; Aurora Pump.
 - 7. Reddy-Buffaloes Pump Company.
 - 8. Ruhrpumpen, Inc.
 - 9. S.A. Armstrong Limited.
- C. Pump:
 - 1. Standard: UL 448, for split-case pumps for fire service.
 - 2. Casing: Axially split case, cast iron with ASME B16.1 pipe-flange connections.
 - 3. Impeller: Cast bronze, statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft.
 - 4. Wear Rings: Replaceable bronze.
 - 5. Shaft and Sleeve: Steel shaft with bronze sleeve.
 - a. Shaft Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing.
 - b. Seals: Stuffing box with minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn and bronze packing gland.
 - 6. Mounting: Pump and driver shafts are horizontal, with pump and driver on same base.
- D. Coupling: Flexible and capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment. Include metal coupling guard.
- E. Driver:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1004A.
 - 2. Type: Electric motor; NEMA MG 1, polyphase Design B.

2.3 FIRE-PUMP ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Automatic Air-Release Valves: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation in fire-pump casing.
- B. Circulation Relief Valves: UL 1478, brass, spring loaded; for installation in pump discharge piping.
- C. Relief Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. BERMAD Control Valves.
 - b. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valves.
 - c. Kunkle Valve; a part of Tyco International Ltd.
 - d. OCV Control Valves.
 - e. Watts Regulator Company; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
 3. Description: UL 1478, bronze or cast iron, spring loaded; for installation in fire-suppression water-supply piping.
- D. Inlet Fitting: Eccentric tapered reducer at pump suction inlet.
- E. Outlet Fitting: Concentric tapered reducer at pump discharge outlet.
- F. Discharge Cone: Closed or open type.
- G. Hose Valve Manifold Assembly:
1. Standard: Comply with requirements in NFPA 20.
 2. Header Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized steel with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
 3. Header Pipe Fittings: ASME B16.4, galvanized cast-iron threaded fittings.
 4. Automatic Drain Valve: UL 1726.
 5. Manifold:
 - a. Test Connections: Comply with UL 405 except provide outlets without clappers instead of inlets.
 - b. Body: Flush type, brass or ductile iron, with number of outlets required by NFPA 20.
 - c. Nipples: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - d. Adapters and Caps with Chain: Brass or bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
 - e. Escutcheon Plate: Brass or bronze; rectangular.
 - f. Hose Valves: UL 668, bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
 - g. Exposed Parts Finish: Polished.
 - h. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Equivalent to "FIRE PUMP TEST."
 6. Manifold:
 - a. Test Connections: Comply with UL 405 except provide outlets without clappers instead of inlets.
 - b. Body: Exposed type, brass, with number of outlets required by NFPA 20.
 - c. Escutcheon Plate: Brass or bronze; round.

- d. Hose Valves: UL 668, bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads. Include caps and chains.
- e. Exposed Parts Finish: Polished.
- f. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Equivalent to "FIRE PUMP TEST."

2.4 FLOWMETER SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Emerson Process Management; Rosemount Division.
 - 2. Fire Research Corp.
 - 3. Gerand Engineering Co.
 - 4. Hydro Flow Products, Inc.
 - 5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - 6. Meriam Process Technologies.
 - 7. Preso Meters; Division of Racine Federated Inc.
 - 8. Reddy-Buffaloes Pump Company.
 - 9. Victaulic Company.
- C. Description: UL-listed or FM-Approved, fire-pump flowmeter system with capability to indicate flow to not less than 175 percent of fire-pump rated capacity.
- D. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa)** minimum.
- E. Sensor: Annubar probe, orifice plate, or venturi unless otherwise indicated. Sensor size shall match pipe, tubing, flowmeter, and fittings.
- F. Permanently Mounted Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor; with dial not less than **4-1/2 inches (115 mm)** in diameter. Include bracket or device for wall mounting.
 - 1. Tubing Package: **NPS 1/8 or NPS 1/4 (DN 6 or DN 10)** soft copper or plastic tubing with copper or brass fittings and valves.
- G. Portable Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor; with dial not less than **4-1/2 inches (115 mm)** in diameter and with two **12-foot- (3.7-m-)** long hoses in carrying case.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect fire pumps according to UL 448 requirements for "Operation Test" and "Manufacturing and Production Tests."
 - 1. Verification of Performance: Rate fire pumps according to UL 448.
- B. Fire pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment bases and anchorage provisions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and for conditions affecting performance of fire pumps.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-pump installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Fire-Pump Installation Standard: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation of fire pumps, relief valves, and related components.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install fire pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 210548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install fire-pump suction and discharge piping equal to or larger than sizes required by NFPA 20.
- D. Support piping and pumps separately so weight of piping does not rest on pumps.
- E. Install valves that are same size as connecting piping. Comply with requirements for fire-protection valves specified in Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems."

- F. Install pressure gages on fire-pump suction and discharge flange pressure-gage tapings. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems."
- G. Install piping hangers and supports, anchors, valves, gages, and equipment supports according to NFPA 20.
- H. Install flowmeters and sensors. Install flowmeter-system components and make connections according to NFPA 20 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not factory mounted. Furnish copies of manufacturers' wiring diagram submittals to electrical Installer.
- J. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. Align split-case pump and driver shafts after complete unit has been leveled on concrete base, grout has set, and anchor bolts have been tightened.
- B. After alignment is correct, tighten anchor bolts evenly. Fill baseplate completely with grout, with metal blocks and shims or wedges in place. Tighten anchor bolts after grout has hardened. Check alignment and make required corrections.
- C. Align piping connections.
- D. Align pump and driver shafts for angular and parallel alignment according to HI 1.4 and to tolerances specified by manufacturer.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping and valves specified in Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps and equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect relief-valve discharge to drainage piping or point of discharge.
- D. Connect flowmeter-system meters, sensors, and valves to tubing.
- E. Connect fire pumps to their controllers.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for fire-pump marking according to NFPA 20.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test each fire pump with its controller as a unit. Comply with requirements for electric-motor-driver fire-pump controllers specified in Section 213900 "Controllers for Fire-Pump Drivers."
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing components, assemblies, and equipment including controller, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Test according to NFPA 20 for acceptance and performance testing.
 - 3. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 4. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Components, assemblies, and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- G. Furnish fire hoses in number, size, and length required to reach storm drain or other acceptable location to dispose of fire-pump test water. Hoses are for tests only and do not convey to Owner.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire pumps.

END OF SECTION 213113

PLUMBING PIPE, TUBE AND FITTINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Pipe and pipe fittings for the following systems:

1. Domestic water piping within 5 feet of building.
2. Sanitary waste and vent piping, within 5 feet of building.
3. Storm water piping within 5 feet of building.
4. Equipment drains and over flows.
5. Flue and Combustion Air piping for sealed combustion, direct vent water heaters.
6. Unions and flanges.
7. Underground pipe markers.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 08 - Access Doors and Frames
2. Division 09 - Painting and Coating
3. Section 22 05 23 - General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping: Product requirements for valves for placement by this section.
4. Section 22 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment: Product requirements for pipe hangers and supports [and firestopping] for placement by this section.
5. Section 22 07 00 - Plumbing Insulation: Product requirements for piping insulation for placement by this section.
6. Division 31 - Soils for Earthwork.
7. Division 31 - Aggregates for Earthwork.
8. Division 31 - Excavation ,Trenching and Backfill

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Society of Mechanical Engineers:

1. ASME Section IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code - Welding and Brazing Qualifications.

B. ASTM International:

1. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.

2. ASTM A74 - Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.
 3. ASTM B42 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes.
 4. ASTM B75 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube.
 5. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube.
 6. ASTM B306 - Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV).
 7. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120.
 8. ASTM D2665 - Standard Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings.
- C. American Welding Society:
1. AWS A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding.
 2. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel.
- D. American Water Works Association:
1. AWWA C104 - American National Standard for Cement-Mortar Lining for Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water.
 2. AWWA C151 - American National Standard for Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water.
 3. AWWA C900 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe, 4 in. through 12 in., for Water Distribution.
- E. Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute:
1. CISPI 301 - Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications.
 2. CISPI 310 - Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications.
 3. All cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast iron Soil Pipe institute (CISPI) and be listed by NSF International.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Division 01 - Submittal Procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout of piping systems, including equipment, critical dimensions, and sizes.
- C. Product Data: Submit data on pipe materials and fittings. Submit manufacturers catalog information.

- D. Welders' Certificate: Include welders' certification of compliance with ASME Section IX.
- E. Grooved joint couplings and fittings shall be shown on drawings and product submittals, and shall be specifically identified with the applicable Victaulic style or series number.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with ASME B31.9 code for installation of piping systems and ASME Section IX for welding materials and procedures.
- B. All grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be supplied by the same manufacturer as the grooved components.
- C. All castings used for coupling housings, fittings, valve bodies, etc., shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer: Company specializing in performing work of this section with minimum 10 years documented experience.
- C. Design pipe hangers and supports under direct supervision of Professional Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed at Project location

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Division 01 - Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.
- B. Furnish temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
- C. Protect piping from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the Work, and isolating parts of completed system.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Division 01 - Environmental conditions affecting products on site.
- B. Do not install underground piping when bedding is wet or frozen.

1.8 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Division 01 - Requirements for coordination.
- B. Coordinate installation of buried piping with trenching.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

Pipe 3 inch and larger:

- A. Ductile Iron Pipe: AWWA C151.
 - 1. Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, standard thickness.
 - 2. Joints: AWWA C111, rubber gasket with rods.

Pipe 2½ inch and smaller:

- B. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type K hard drawn or annealed.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper, or ASME B16.22, wrought copper.
 - 2. Joints:
 - a. 1" and smaller: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.
 - b. 1-1/4" and larger: Braze, AWS A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy with melting range 1190 to 1480 degrees F.

2.2 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type L hard drawn.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought copper and bronze.
 - 2. Joints:
 - a. 1" and smaller: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.
 - b. 1-1/4" and larger: Braze, AWS A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy with melting range 1190 to 1480 degrees F.
 - c. 1-1/2" and smaller: Copper, Push-To-Connect Fittings: ASME B16.18 cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22 wrought copper with stainless steel teeth and EPDM synthetic rubber o-ring seal in each end (UL classified in accordance with NSF-61 for hot (+180°F) and cold (+86°F) potable water service) with push-to-connect ends instead of solder-joint ends.
- B. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type L hard drawn, rolled grooved ends.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18 cast copper alloy, or ASME B16.22 wrought copper and bronze, or ASTM B584 bronze sand castings,] grooved ends.
 - 2. Joints: Grooved mechanical couplings meeting ASTM F1476.

- a. Housing Clamps: ASTM A395/A395M and ASTM A536 ductile iron, cast with offsetting, angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity, copper-colored enamel coated, compatible with copper tubing sizes, to engage and lock designed to permit some angular deflection, contraction, and expansion. "Installation-Ready" design for direct stab installation onto roll grooved copper tube without field disassembly. Victaulic Style 607 QuickVic™.
 - b. Gasket: Elastomer composition, Grade "EHP" EPDM synthetic rubber gasket (UL/ULC classified in accordance with ANSI/NSF-61 for domestic water service) for operating temperature range from -30 degrees F to ~~230~~ 250 degrees F.
 - c. Accessories: Stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
- C. Stainless Steel Pipe: ASTM A312, type 304/304L, Schedule 10S.
- 1. Fittings: Precision cold drawn austenitic stainless steel housing, with synthetic rubber O-ring seals, Grade HNBR (UL/ULC classified in accordance with ANSI/NSF-61 for domestic water service), pipe stops and Pressure-Sealed end connections.
 - 2. Joints: Vic-Press 304™ with 'PFT 510' series tool.

2.3 SANITARY WASTE PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. Cast Iron Soil Pipe: ASTM A74, service weight bell and spigot ends.
- 1. Fittings: Cast iron, ASTM A74.
 - 2. Joints: Hub-and-spigot, CISPI HSN compression type with ASTM C564 neoprene gaskets.
- B. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hub-less.
- 1. Fittings: Cast iron, CISPI 301.
 - 2. Joints: CISPI 310, neoprene gasket and stainless steel clamp and shield assemblies.

Do not use PVC pipe for high temperature waste water (140° F or higher).

- C. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material, bell and spigot style solvent sealed joint ends.
- 1. Fittings: ASTM D2466, Schedule 40, PVC.
 - 2. Joints: ASTM D2855, solvent weld with ASTM D2564 Solvent cement.
- D. Plastic Pipe: ASTM D2665, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material.
- 1. Fittings: PVC, ASTM D2665.
 - 2. Joints: ASTM D2855, solvent weld with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

2.4 SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hub-less, service weight.
 - 1. Fittings: Cast iron, CISPI 301.
 - 2. Joints: CISPI 310, neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.
- B. Copper Tube: ASTM B306, DWV.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast bronze, or ASME B16.29, wrought copper.
 - 2. Joints: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.

2.5 STORM WATER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: ASTM A74, service weight [extra heavy], bell and spigot ends.
 - 1. Fittings: Cast iron, ASTM A74.
 - 2. Joints: ASTM C564, rubber gasket joint devices or lead and oakum.
- B. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hub-less, service weight.
 - 1. Fittings: Cast iron, CISPI 301.
 - 2. Joints: Neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.
- C. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material.
 - 1. Fittings: PVC, ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034.
 - 2. Joints: ASTM D2855, solvent weld with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.
- D. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665, ASTM D3034, or ASTM F679, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material.
 - 1. Fittings: PVC, ASTM D2665, ASTM D3034, or ASTM F679.
 - 2. Joints: ASTM F477, elastomeric gaskets.

2.6 STORM WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hub-less, service weight.
 - 1. Fittings: Cast iron, CISPI 301.
 - 2. Joints: Neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.

2.7 EQUIPMENT DRAINS AND OVERFLOWS

- A. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type DWV.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast brass, or ASME B16.22 solder wrought copper.

2. Joints: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.
3. Fittings: ASME B16.18 cast copper alloy, or ASME B16.22 wrought copper and bronze, or ASTM B584 bronze sand castings with copper tube dimensioned grooved ends (flaring of tube and fitting ends to IPS dimensions is not permitted).
4. Joints: Grooved mechanical couplings meeting ASTM F1476.
 - a. Housing Clamps: ASTM A536 ductile iron, cast with offsetting, angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity, copper-colored enamel coated, compatible with copper tubing sizes, to engage and lock designed to permit some angular deflection, contraction, and expansion. "Installation-Ready" design for direct stab installation without field disassembly. Victaulic Style 607H QuickVic™.
 - b. Gasket: Grade "EHP" EPDM gasket for water service with operating temperature range from -30 degrees F to 250 degrees F or Grade "T" Nitrile gasket for oil service with operating temperature range from -20 degrees F to 180 degrees F.
 - c. Accessories: Stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers.

Do not use PVC pipe for high temperature waste water (140 F or higher).

Do not use PVC pipe in return plenum ceilings.

B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40 polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material.

1. Fittings: ASTM D2466, Schedule 40, PVC.
2. Joints: ASTM D2855, solvent weld with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.
3. Couplings: Victaulic Style 177, 77, or 75 flexible type couplings only may be used with schedule 40 or 80 PVC pipe at ambient temperatures not exceeding 100 deg F.

2.8 NATURAL GAS PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 black.

1. Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M forged steel welding type.
2. Joints: ASME B31.9, welded.
3. Jacket: AWWA C105 polyethylene jacket or double layer, half-lapped 10 mil polyethylene tape.

2.9 NATURAL GAS PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 black.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.3, malleable iron, or ASTM A234/A234M forged steel welding type.
2. Joints: Threaded for pipe 2 inch and smaller; welded for pipe 2-1/2 inches and larger.

2.10 FLUE AND COMBUSTION AIR PIPING

Note: Use only solid core PVC pipe for exhaust piping; cellular core or “foam” core PVC pipe shall only be used when specifically approved by the water heater manufacturer.

- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material.
 1. Fittings: ASTM D2466, Schedule 40, PVC.
 2. Joints: ASTM D2855, solvent weld with ASTM D2564 solvent cement. Prime joints with a contrasting color.
- B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, Schedule 80, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) material.
 1. Fittings: ASTM D2467, Schedule 80, PVC.
 2. Joints: ASTM D2855, solvent weld with ASTM D2564 solvent cement. Prime joints with a contrasting color.

2.11 UNIONS AND FLANGES

- A. Unions for Pipe 2 inches and Smaller:
 1. Ferrous Piping: Class 150, malleable iron, threaded.
 2. Copper Piping: Class 150, bronze unions with soldered joints.
 3. Dielectric Connections: Union with galvanized or plated steel threaded end, copper solder end, water impervious isolation barrier.
 4. PVC Piping: PVC.
 5. CPVC Piping: CPVC.
- B. Flanges for Pipe 2-1/2 inches and Larger:
 1. Ferrous Piping: Class 150, forged steel, slip-on flanges.
 2. Copper Piping: Class 150, slip-on bronze flanges.
 3. PVC Piping: PVC flanges.
 4. CPVC Piping: CPVC flanges.
 5. Gaskets: 1/16 inch thick preformed neoprene gaskets.
- C. Flange Adapter for Pipe 2 inches and Larger:
 1. Ferrous Piping: Class 125, 150 & 300, ductile iron, flat faced. Victaulic Style 741, 743 & W741.

2. Copper Piping: 300 psi, ductile iron coated with copper-colored enamel, flat faced. Victaulic Style 641.
- D. PVC Pipe Materials: For connections to equipment and valves with threaded connections, furnish solvent-weld socket to screwed joint adapters and unions, or ASTM D2464, Schedule 80, threaded, PVC pipe.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Division 01 - Verification of existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify excavations are to required grade, dry, and not over-excavated.
- C. Verify trenches are ready to receive piping.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.
- D. Keep open ends of pipe free from scale and dirt. Protect open ends with temporary plugs or caps.

3.3 INSTALLATION - BURIED PIPING SYSTEMS

- A. Verify connection to site piping system size, location, and invert are as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Establish elevations of buried piping with not less than 2 ft of cover.
- C. Establish minimum separation from other services in accordance with applicable codes.
- D. Install pipe to elevation as indicated on Drawings.
- E. Install pipe on prepared bedding.
- F. Route pipe in straight line.
- G. Install pipe to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe or joints.
- H. Install plastic ribbon tape continuous, buried 12 inches below finish grade and above pipe line; coordinate with Division 31. Refer to Section 22 05 00.
- I. Pipe Cover and Backfilling:
 1. Backfill trench in accordance with Section 22 05 00.

3.4 INSTALLATION - ABOVE GROUND PIPING

- A. Route piping in orderly manner and maintain gradient. Route parallel and perpendicular to walls.

- B. Install piping to maintain headroom without interfering with use of space or taking more space than necessary.
- C. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
- D. Sleeve pipe passing through partitions, walls and floors. Refer to Section 22 05 29.
- E. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- F. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings. Refer to Section 22 07 00.
- G. Provide access where valves and fittings are not accessible. Coordinate size and location of access doors with Division 08.
- H. Install non-conducting dielectric connections wherever jointing dissimilar metals.
- I. Establish invert elevations, slopes for drainage to 1/8 inch per foot minimum (1/4 inch per foot for 2" pipes). Maintain gradients.
- J. Slope piping and arrange systems to drain at low points.
- K. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the Work, and isolating parts of completed system.
- L. Install piping penetrating roofed areas to maintain integrity of roof assembly.
- M. Install valves in accordance with Section 22 05 23.
- N. Insulate piping. Refer to Section 22 07 00.
- O. Install pipe identification in accordance with Section 22 05 53.
- P. Grooved joint piping systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's (Victaulic) guidelines and recommendations. The gasket style and elastomeric material (grade) shall be verified as suitable for the intended service as specified. Gaskets shall be molded and produced by Victaulic. Grooved end shall be clean and free from indentations, projections, and roll marks in the area from pipe end to groove for proper gasket sealing. A Victaulic factory-trained field representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the proper use of grooving tools and installation of grooved piping products. Factory-trained representative shall periodically review the product installation. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.
- Q. Vic Press 304™ Pressure-Sealed Joints: Pipe shall be square cut, +/- 0.030", properly deburred and cleaned. Pipe ends shall be marked at the required location, using a manufacturer-supplied gauge, to ensure full insertion into the coupling or fitting during assembly. Use a Victaulic "PFT510" Series tool with the proper sized jaw for pressing.
- R. PermaLynx Push-To-Connect Joints: Install in accordance with manufacturer's latest recommendations. Follow the latest published literature as provided by Victaulic. Pipe ends shall be cleaned, free from indentations, projections, burrs, and foreign matter. Use a tube preparation tool as supplied by Victaulic to clean. Apply installation mark in accordance with Victaulic instructions. Push copper tube into fittings to installation

depth mark, per Victaulic installation instructions. Keep fittings free of dirt and oil; use only on potable water or oil-free compressed air systems.

3.5 INSTALLATION - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SYSTEMS

- A. Install domestic water piping system in accordance with ASME B31.9.

3.6 INSTALLATION - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING SYSTEMS

- A. Install sanitary waste and vent piping systems in accordance with ASME B31.9.
- B. Install sanitary waste and vent piping systems in accordance with local plumbing code.
- C. Install bell and spigot pipe with bell end upstream.
- D. Support cast iron drainage piping at every joint.

3.7 INSTALLATION - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SYSTEMS

- A. Install storm drainage piping systems piping in accordance with ASME B31.9.
- B. Install storm drainage piping systems in accordance with local plumbing code.
- C. Install bell and spigot pipe with bell end upstream.
- D. Support cast iron drainage piping at every joint.

3.8 INSTALLATION - GAS PIPING SYSTEMS

- A. Install natural gas piping in accordance with NFPA 54.
- B. Install LPG piping in accordance with NFPA 58.
- C. Provide support for utility meters in accordance with requirements of utility company.
- D. Install vent piping from gas pressure reducing valves to outdoors and terminate in weatherproof hood.
- E. Install gas pressure regulator vent full size opening on regulator and terminate outdoors or as indicated on Drawings.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Refer to Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Field inspecting, testing and adjusting.
- B. Test domestic water piping system in accordance with applicable code. Refer to Section 22 05 00.
- C. Test sanitary waste and vent piping system in accordance with applicable code. Refer to Section 22 05 00.
- D. Test storm drainage piping system in accordance with applicable code. Refer to Section 22 05 00.
- E. Pressure test natural gas piping in accordance with NFPA 54.

- F. Test for Compressed Air Piping Leak Test: Prior to initial operation, clean and test compressed air piping in accordance with ASME B31.9.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Division 01 – Execution and Closeout Requirements: Field inspecting, testing and adjusting.
- B. Clean and disinfect domestic water distribution system in accordance with Section 22 05 00.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.

2. Split phase.
 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 220516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 2. Metal framing systems.
 3. Pipe stands.
 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.4 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

2. Base: Plastic or stainless steel.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.5 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- F. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- H. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- P. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. **NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.**
 - b. **NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.**
 - c. **NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.**
 - d. **NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.**
 - e. **NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.**
 - 5. Pipes **NPS 8 (DN 200)** and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
 - 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750)**.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to **1050 deg F (566 deg C)**, pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600)**, requiring up to **4 inches (100 mm)** of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes **NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900)**, requiring clamp flexibility and up to **4 inches (100 mm)** of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600)** if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100)**, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200)**.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200)**.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200)**.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200)**.
 - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200)**.

11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80)**.
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750)**.
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900)**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900)**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900)** if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes **NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750)**, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600)**, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050)** if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600)** if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750)** if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600)**.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600)** if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to **6 inches (150 mm)** for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For **120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C)** piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For **120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C)** piping installations.

- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.

4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Stencils.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, **0.032-inch (0.8-mm)** or anodized aluminum, **0.032-inch (0.8-mm)** minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm)**.
3. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches (600 mm)**, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** for viewing distances up to **72 inches (1830 mm)**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Conform to campus standard.
3. Background Color: Conform to campus standard.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to **160 deg F (71 deg C)**.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than **2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm)**.
6. Minimum Letter Size: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** for name of units if viewing distance is less than **24 inches (600 mm)**, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** for viewing distances up to **72 inches (1830 mm)**, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on **8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4)** bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

- B. Letter Color: Conform to campus standards.
- C. Background Color: Conform to campus standards.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or

space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.5 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum.
 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 1. Near each valve and control device.

2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of **50 feet (15 m)** along each run. Reduce intervals to **25 feet (7.6 m)** in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: **2 inches (50 mm)**, round.
 - b. Hot Water: **2 inches (50 mm)**, round.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 - 4. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
 - 5. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 - 6. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
 - 2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).

3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
 1. Piping Mockups:
 - a. One 10-foot (3-m) section of NPS 2 (DN 50) straight pipe.
 - b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
 - c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
 - d. One NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) or larger valve.
 - e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
 - f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
 - g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
 - h. One pressure temperature tap.
 - i. One mechanical coupling.

2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
 5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
- D. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 3. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 - 4. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 - 5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Type I, 850 Deg F (454 Deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Phenolic:
 - 1. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
 - 2. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.

3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
 4. Factory-Applied Jacket: ASJ. Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- K. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of **minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C)**.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of **minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C)**.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, **0.013 perm** (0.009 metric perm) at **43-mil** (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F** (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, **0.05 perm** (0.03 metric perm) at **35-mil** (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: **0 to 180 deg F** (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C)**.
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately **2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m)** with a thread count of **10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm)** for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately **1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m)** with a thread count of **10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm)**, in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of **8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m)**.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
2. Color: White.
3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

C. Metal Jacket:

1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with **ASTM B 209** (**ASTM B 209M**), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **3-mil-** (**0.075-mm-**) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **3-mil-** (**0.075-mm-**) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **3-mil-** (**0.075-mm-**) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **3-mil-** (**0.075-mm-**) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.

- 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: **125-mil- (3.2-mm-)** thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: **3 inches (75 mm)**.
 2. Thickness: **11.5 mils (0.29 mm)**.
 3. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm)** in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm)** in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: **3 inches (75 mm)**.
 2. Thickness: **6.5 mils (0.16 mm)**.
 3. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm)** in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm)** in width.
 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Width: **2 inches (50 mm)**.
 2. Thickness: **6 mils (0.15 mm)**.
 3. Adhesion: **64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm)** in width.
 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: **18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm)** in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: **2 inches (50 mm)**.
 2. Thickness: **3.7 mils (0.093 mm)**.
 3. Adhesion: **100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm)** in width.
 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: **34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm)** in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.13 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:

1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer **5 mils (0.127 mm)** thick and an epoxy finish **5 mils (0.127 mm)** thick if operating in a temperature range between **140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C)**. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between **32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C)** with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with **3-inch- (75-mm-)** wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced **4 inches (100 mm)** o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at **2 inches (50 mm)** o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.

3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least **2 inches (50 mm)** below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches (50 mm)**.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt

- each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least **2 inches (50 mm)** over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover

and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at **6 inches (150 mm)** o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least **1 inch (25 mm)**, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- #### A.
- Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at **6 inches (150 mm)** o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least **1 inch (25 mm)**, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at **12-inch (300-mm)** intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least **3 inches (75 mm)**. Secure inner layer with **0.062-inch (1.6-mm)** wire spaced at **12-inch (300-mm)** intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at **12-inch (300-mm)** intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at **6 inches (150 mm)** o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with **2-inch (50-mm)** overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two **0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-)** thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** laps at longitudinal seams and **3-inch- (75-mm-)** wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with **1-inch (25-mm)** overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with **2-inch (50-mm)** overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c. and at end joints.

3.12 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.14 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.15 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4" and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1/2 inch thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyolefin: 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/2" and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:

- a. Cellular Glass: 1" thick.
- b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1" thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyolefin: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

C. Stormwater and Overflow:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

E. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet (3 m) of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

- c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

3.16 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Water Piping:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

3.17 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
2. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
3. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
4. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- B. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
 - 2. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
 - 3. Impeller: Plastic.
 - 4. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.
- B. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with **NPS 2 (DN 50)** pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** pipe connections.
 - 2. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 - 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 5. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
 - 6. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.
- C. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and rigidly mounted to pump casing.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Pressure Switches: Electric, adjustable for control of water-supply pump.
 - 1. Type: Water-immersion pressure sensor, for installation in piping.
 - 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 - 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 4. Transformer: Provide if required.
- B. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 - 1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
 - 2. Range: 50 to 125 deg F (10 to 52 deg C).
 - 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 - 4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 5. Transformer: Provide if required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled and close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.
- D. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft vertical.
- E. Install pressure switches in water supply piping.
- F. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
 - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - c. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - d. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - 1. Install pressure gage at suction of each pump and pressure gage at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Connect thermostats, to pumps that they control.
- F. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.

- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123

SECTION 221123.13 - DOMESTIC-WATER PACKAGED BOOSTER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Multiplex, variable-speed booster pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. VFC: Variable-frequency controller(s).

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Booster pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the booster pump will remain in place without separation of any parts from the booster pump when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the booster pump will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components and profiles.
- B. Shop Drawings: For booster pumps. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For booster pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For booster pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9 for piping.
- C. UL Compliance for Packaged Pumping Systems:
 1. UL 508, "Industrial Control Equipment."
 2. UL 508A, "Industrial Control Panels."
 3. UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps."
 4. UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment."
- D. Booster pumps shall be listed and labeled as packaged pumping systems by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain protective coatings and flange's protective covers during storage.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MULTIPLEX, VARIABLE-SPEED BOOSTER PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pumps, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
- B. Motors: Single speed, with pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings. Select motors that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.

- C. Piping: Stainless-steel pipe and fittings.
- D. Valves:
 - 1. Shutoff Valves **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: lug-type butterfly valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping and in inlet and outlet headers.
 - 2. Check Valves **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
 - 3. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump's discharge header piping.
- E. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
- F. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for multiple-pump, variable-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
 - 1. Control Logic: Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, VFC, and other devices in controller. Install VFC for pump motors larger than 25 hp in separate panel; same type as motor control panel enclosure.
 - 2. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, variable-frequency, solid-state type.
 - 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 4. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
 - 5. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch for each pump in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
 - a. Duplex, Automatic, Alternating Starter: Switches lead pump to lag main pump and to two-pump operation.
 - b. Triplex, Sequence (Lead-Lag-Lag) Starter: Switches lead pump to one lag main pump and to three-pump operation.
 - 6. Pump Operation and Sequencing: Pressure-sensing method.
 - a. Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.
 - 7. VFC: Voltage-source, pulse-width, modulating-frequency converter for each pump.
 - 8. Manual Bypass: Magnetic contactor arranged to transfer to constant-speed operation upon VFC failure.
 - 9. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
 - 10. Lights: Running light for each pump.
 - 11. Alarm Signal Device: Sounds alarm when backup pumps are operating.
 - a. Time Delay: Controls alarm operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds, with automatic reset.
 - 12. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
 - 13. Low-suction-pressure cutout.
 - 14. High-suction-pressure cutout.
 - 15. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
 - 16. High-discharge-pressure cutout.

17. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to owner's preferred building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." Include the following:

- a. On-off status of each pump.
- b. Alarm status.

- G. Base: Structural steel.

2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors.
 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for booster pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections before booster-pump installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install booster pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"
 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Support connected domestic-water piping so weight of piping is not supported by booster pumps.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect domestic-water piping to booster pumps. Install suction and discharge pipe equal to or greater than size of system suction and discharge piping.

1. Install shutoff valves on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge piping. Install ball, butterfly, or gate valves same size as suction and discharge piping. Comply with requirements for general-duty valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Install union, flanged, or grooved-joint connections on suction and discharge piping at connection to domestic-water piping. Comply with requirements for unions and flanges specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
3. Install valved bypass, same size as and between piping, at connections to booster-pump suction and discharge piping. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
4. Install flexible connectors, same size as piping, on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge piping. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
5. Install piping adjacent to booster pumps to allow service and maintenance.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Perform visual and mechanical inspection.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge booster pump and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start booster pumps to confirm proper motor rotation and booster-pump operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust booster pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust pressure set points.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting booster pump to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain booster pumps.

END OF SECTION 221123.13

SECTION 23 05 03 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes TAB to produce design objectives for the following:
 - 1. Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
 - c. Multizone systems.
 - 2. Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Constant-flow systems.
 - b. Variable-flow systems.
 - 3. HVAC equipment quantitative-performance settings.
 - 4. Kitchen hood airflow balancing.
 - 5. Existing systems TAB.
 - 6. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
 - 7. Reporting results of activities and procedures specified in this Section.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in Part 3 "Preparation" Article. Include a complete set of report forms intended for use on this Project.
- B. Certified TAB Reports: Submit two copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by TAB firm.
- C. Warranties specified in this Section.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Firm Qualifications: Engage a TAB firm certified by NEBB.
- B. Certification of TAB Reports: Certify TAB field data reports. This certification includes the following:
 - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 - 2. Certify that TAB team complied with approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard forms from NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, HVAC controls installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist TAB activities.
- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. National Project Performance Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems" forms stating that AABC will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee includes the following provisions:
- B. Special Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on NEBB forms stating that NEBB will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee shall include the following provisions:
 - 1. The certified TAB firm has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
 - 2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

1. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.
- C. Examine Project Record Documents described in Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents."
- D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system. Calculate system effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from those presented when the equipment was performance tested at the factory. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," Sections 7 through 10; or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems--Duct Design," Sections 5 and 6. Compare this data with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine system and equipment test reports.
- H. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and that their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- I. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.
- J. Examine HVAC equipment to ensure that clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- K. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, to verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- L. Examine plenum ceilings used for supply air to verify that they are airtight. Verify that pipe penetrations and other holes are sealed.
- M. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.
- N. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

- O. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- P. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- Q. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.
- R. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:
 - 1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices are operated by the intended controller.
 - 2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
 - 3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions. This includes dampers in multizone units, mixing boxes, and variable-air-volume terminals.
 - 4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including two-way valves and three-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected.
 - 5. Thermostats and humidistats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
 - 6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
 - 7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
 - 8. Controller set points are set at indicated values.
 - 9. Interlocked systems are operating.
 - 10. Changeover from heating to cooling mode occurs according to indicated values.
- S. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:
 - 1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
 - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
 - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
 - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and this Section.

- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to insulation Specifications for this Project.
- C. Mark equipment and balancing device settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.
- L. Check for proper sealing of air duct system.

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure fan static pressures to determine actual static pressure as follows:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practicable and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.

- c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from flexible connection and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 2. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Simulate dirty filter operation and record the point at which maintenance personnel must change filters.
 3. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices such as sound traps, heat recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
 4. Compare design data with installed conditions to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Compare actual system effect factors with calculated system effect factors to identify where variations occur. Recommend corrective action to align design and actual conditions.
 5. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Make required adjustments to pulley sizes, motor sizes, and electrical connections to accommodate fan-speed changes.
 6. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full cooling, full heating, economizer, and any other operating modes to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
 1. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 2. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure terminal outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
 1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust terminal outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a maximum set-point airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
- B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
 1. Set outside-air dampers at minimum, and return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
 2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
 4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
 5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
 6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.
 7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
 8. Record the final fan performance data.
- C. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
 1. Balance systems similar to constant-volume air systems.
 2. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.

3. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
 4. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
 5. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan, if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
 6. Set supply fan at minimum airflow if minimum airflow is indicated. Measure static pressure to verify that it is being maintained by the controller.
 7. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
 8. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.
- D. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
 2. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
 3. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
 4. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
 5. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
 6. Measure static pressure at the sensor.
 7. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MULTIZONE SYSTEMS

- A. Set unit at full flow through the cooling coil if coil has that capacity.
- B. Adjust each zone damper to indicated airflow.

3.8 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.

- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
 - 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
 - 2. Check expansion tank liquid level.
 - 3. Check makeup-water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
 - 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation and set at indicated flow.
 - 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
 - 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
 - 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
 - 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures, except for positive-displacement pumps:
 - 1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
 - 3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
 - 4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 5 percent of design.
- B. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.
- C. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
 - 1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.
- D. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.
- E. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
 - 1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.

2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
 3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.
- F. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.
- G. Measure the differential-pressure control valve settings existing at the conclusions of balancing.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Efficiency rating.
 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass for the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations, including controller manufacturer, model and serial numbers, and nameplate data.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

- A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 2. If water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
 4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatt.
 5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatt.

6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. If air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

- A. Shut off makeup water for the duration of the test, and verify that makeup and blowdown systems are fully operational after tests and before leaving the equipment. Perform the following tests and record the results:
 1. Measure condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
 2. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
 3. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
 4. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
 5. Measure condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
 6. Measure cooling tower pump discharge pressure.
 7. Adjust water level and feed rate of makeup-water system.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. If hydronic, measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.
- B. If steam, measure entering-water temperature and flow and leaving steam pressure, temperature, and flow.

3.16 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Water Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:
 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 2. Water flow rate.
 3. Water pressure drop.
 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 6. Airflow.
 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Electric-Heating Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:
 1. Nameplate data.

2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Refrigerant Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.17 PROCEDURES FOR TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS

- A. During TAB, report the need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.
- B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of two successive eight-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.
- C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

3.18 PROCEDURES FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the airflow of each kitchen hood. For kitchen hoods designed with integral makeup air, measure and adjust the exhaust and makeup airflow. Measure airflow by duct Pitot-tube traverse. If a duct Pitot-tube traverse is not possible, provide an explanation in the report of the reason(s) why and also the reason why the method used was chosen.
 1. Install welded test ports in the sides of the exhaust duct for the duct Pitot-tube traverse. Install each test port with a threaded cap that is liquid tight.
- B. After balancing is complete, do the following:
 1. Measure and record the static pressure at the hood exhaust-duct connection.
 2. Measure and record the hood face velocity. Make measurements at multiple points across the face of the hood. Perform measurements at a maximum of 12 inches between points and between any point and the perimeter. Calculate the average of the measurements recorded. Verify that the hood average face velocity complies with the Contract Documents and governing codes.
 3. Check the hood for capture and containment of smoke using a smoke emitting device. Observe the smoke pattern. Make adjustments to room airflow patterns to achieve optimum results.

- C. Visually inspect the hood exhaust duct throughout its entire length in compliance with authorities having jurisdiction. Begin at the hood connection and end at the point it discharges outdoors. Report findings.
 - 1. Check duct slopes as required.
 - 2. Verify that duct access is installed as required.
 - 3. Verify that point of termination is as required.
 - 4. Verify that duct air velocity is within the range required.
 - 5. Verify that duct is within a fire-rated enclosure.
- D. Report deficiencies.

3.19 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
 - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
 - 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
 - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
 - 4. Check the condition of filters.
 - 5. Check the condition of coils.
 - 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate drain trap.
 - 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
 - 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished.
 - 1. New filters are installed.
 - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
 - 3. Drain pans are clean.
 - 4. Fans are clean.
 - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
 - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
 - 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows and determine the new fan, speed, filter, and coil face velocity.
 - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
 - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated airflow and water flow rates. If 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
 - 4. Air balance each air outlet.

3.20 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION

- A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.
- B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.
- C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.
- D. Check the operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).
- E. Check free travel and proper operation of control devices such as damper and valve operators.
- F. Check the sequence of operation of control devices. Note air pressures and device positions and correlate with airflow and water flow measurements. Note the speed of response to input changes.
- G. Check the interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.
- H. Check the interaction of interlock and lockout systems.
- I. Check main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.
- J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine whether the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.
- K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

3.21 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 5 to plus 10 percent.
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: 0 to minus 10 percent.
 - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: 0 to minus 10 percent.
 - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: 0 to minus 5 percent.

3.22 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in three-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.
- B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 1. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- C. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.

2. Fan curves.
 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 5. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- D. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:
1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of TAB firm.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB firm who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports varies from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 5. Terminal units.
 6. Balancing stations.

7. Position of balancing devices.

3.23 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 03

SECTION 23 05 13 - MOTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes basic requirements for factory-installed and field-installed motors.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls" for mounting motors and vibration isolation and seismic-control devices.
 - 2. Division 23 Sections for application of motors and reference to specific motor requirements for motor-driven equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Factory-Installed Motor: A motor installed by motorized-equipment manufacturer as a component of equipment.
- B. Field-Installed Motor: A motor installed at Project site and not factory installed as an integral component of motorized equipment.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data for Field-Installed Motors: For each type and size of motor, provide nameplate data and ratings; shipping, installed, and operating weights; mounting arrangements; size, type, and location of winding terminations; conduit entry and ground lug locations; and information on coatings or finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings for Field-Installed Motors: Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Include the following:
 - 1. Each installed unit's type and details.
 - 2. Nameplate legends.
 - 3. Diagrams of power and control wiring. Provide schematic wiring diagram for each type of motor and for each control scheme.

- C. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around field-installed motors. Show motor layout, mechanical power transfer link, driven load, and relationship between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that motors, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Motorized Equipment: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- F. Test Reports: Written reports specified in Parts 2 and 3.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For field-installed motors to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain field-installed motors of a single type through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Options for Field-Installed Motors: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of motors and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect at least two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions. Identify extent and duration of utility interruptions.
 2. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities.
 3. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices. Provide motors that are:
1. Compatible with the following:
 - a. Magnetic controllers.
 - b. Multispeed controllers.
 - c. Reduced-voltage controllers.
 2. Designed and labeled for use with variable frequency controllers, and suitable for use throughout speed range without overheating.
 3. Matched to torque and horsepower requirements of the load.
 4. Matched to ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
- B. Coordinate motor support with requirements for driven load; access for maintenance and motor replacement; installation of accessories, belts, belt guards; and adjustment of sliding rails for belt tensioning.
- C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3 Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motor requirements apply to factory-installed and field-installed motors except as follows:
1. Different ratings, performance, or characteristics for a motor are specified in another Section.
 2. Manufacturer for a factory-installed motor requires ratings, performance, or characteristics, other than those specified in this Section, to meet performance specified.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Three phase.
- B. Motors Smaller Than 1/2 HP: Single phase.
- C. Frequency Rating: 60 Hz.
- D. Voltage Rating: NEMA standard voltage selected to operate on nominal circuit voltage to which motor is connected.
- E. Service Factor: 1.15 for open dripproof motors; 1.0 for totally enclosed motors.
- F. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 105 deg F and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- G. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
- H. Enclosure: Open dripproof.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Standard efficiency according to NEMA MG 1, Para. 12.59 and Table 12-10.
- C. Stator: Copper windings, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Multispeed motors shall have separate winding for each speed.
- D. Rotor: Squirrel cage, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Bearings: Double-shielded, prelubricated ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- F. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Insulation: Class F, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- I. Enclosure: Cast iron for motors 7.5 hp and larger; rolled steel for motors smaller than 7.5 hp.
 - 1. Finish: Gray enamel.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Inrush Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Designed with critical vibration frequencies outside operating range of controller output.
 - 2. Temperature Rise: Matched to rating for Class B insulation.
 - 3. Insulation: Class H.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Rugged-Duty Motors: Totally enclosed, with 1.25 minimum service factor, greased bearings, integral condensate drains, and capped relief vents. Windings insulated with nonhygroscopic material.
 - 1. Finish: Chemical-resistant paint over corrosion-resistant primer.
- D. Source Quality Control: Perform the following tests on each motor according to NEMA MG 1:
 - 1. Measure winding resistance.
 - 2. Read no-load current and speed at rated voltage and frequency.
 - 3. Measure locked rotor current at rated frequency.
 - 4. Perform high-potential test.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Type: One of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split-phase start, capacitor run.
 - 3. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Shaded-Pole Motors: For motors 1/20 hp and smaller only.
- C. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.
- D. Bearings: Ball type for belt-connected motors and other motors with high radial forces on motor shaft; sealed, prelubricated-sleeve type for other single-phase motors.
- E. Source Quality Control: Perform the following tests on each motor according to NEMA MG 1:

1. Measure winding resistance.
2. Read no-load current and speed at rated voltage and frequency.
3. Measure locked rotor current at rated frequency.
4. Perform high-potential test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive field-installed motors for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before motor installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 MOTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Anchor each motor assembly to base, adjustable rails, or other support, arranged and sized according to manufacturer's written instructions. Attach by bolting. Level and align with load transfer link.
- B. Install motors on concrete bases complying with Division 3.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
 1. Run each motor with its controller. Demonstrate correct rotation, alignment, and speed at motor design load.
 2. Test interlocks and control features for proper operation.
 3. Verify that current in each phase is within nameplate rating.
- B. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field quality-control testing:
- C. Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field quality-control testing:
- D. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:

1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.15.1. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform the following:
1. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical connections for compliance with requirements.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 3. Verify bearing lubrication.
 4. Verify proper motor rotation.
 5. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
 - a. Test procedures used.
 - b. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - c. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Align motors, bases, shafts, pulleys and belts. Tension belts according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After completing equipment installation, inspect unit components. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean motors, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 13

SECTION 23 05 53 - MECHANICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following mechanical identification materials and their installation:
 - 1. Equipment nameplates.
 - 2. Equipment markers.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Equipment Nameplates: Metal, with data engraved or stamped, for permanent attachment on equipment.
 - 1. Data:
 - a. Manufacturer, product name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Capacity, operating and power characteristics, and essential data.
 - c. Labels of tested compliances.
 - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
 - 3. Fasteners: As required to mount on equipment.
- B. Equipment Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.
 - 1. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible.
 - 2. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

- A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 23 Sections. If more than single-type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

3.2 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install and permanently fasten equipment nameplates on each major item of mechanical equipment that does not have nameplate or has nameplate that is damaged or located where not easily visible. Locate nameplates where accessible and visible. Include nameplates for the following general categories of equipment:
 - 1. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces and heaters.
 - 2. Condensing units.
 - 3. Packaged HVAC rooftop, central-station and zone-type units.
 - 4. Fans
- B. Install equipment markers with permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment.
 - 1. Letter Size: Minimum 1/2 inch.
 - 2. Locate markers where accessible and visible. Include markers for the following general categories of equipment:
 - a. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces and heaters.
 - b. Condensing units.
 - c. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work.
- B. Clean faces of mechanical identification devices.

END OF SECTION 23 05 53

SECTION 23 07 13 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes semirigid and flexible duct and plenum insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jackets; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, density, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:
 - 1. Removable insulation sections at access panels.
 - 2. Application of field-applied jackets.
 - 3. Applications at linkages for control devices.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Insulation: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for insulation application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:
 - a. CertainTeed Manson.
 - b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
 - c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
 - d. Johns Manville
 - e. Or approved substitute.
2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - b. Rubatex Corp.
 - c. Or approved substitute.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Board Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IB, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft paper, reinforcing scrim, aluminum foil, and vinyl film, 3 lb/cf, $k=0.23@ 75 \text{ deg. F.}$
- B. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft paper, reinforcing scrim, aluminum foil, and vinyl film, 1.5 lb/cf, $k=0.25@ 75 \text{ deg. F.}$

2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Aluminum Jacket: Deep corrugated sheets manufactured from aluminum alloy complying with ASTM B 209, and having an integrally bonded moisture barrier over entire surface in contact with insulation. Metal thickness and corrugation dimensions are scheduled at the end of this Section.
1. Finish: Stucco-embossed finish.

2.4 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS

- A. Self-Adhesive Anchor Pins and Speed Washers: Galvanized steel plate, pin, and washer manufactured for attachment to duct and plenum with adhesive. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.

2.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; and free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each duct system.
- C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- E. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.
- I. Apply insulation over fittings and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
- K. Insulation Terminations: For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, seal ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.

- L. Apply insulation with integral jackets as follows:
 - 1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Joints and Seams: Cover with tape and vapor retarder as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
 - 3. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Where vapor retarders are indicated, apply mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent compressing insulation to less than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Install vapor-retarder mastic on ducts and plenums scheduled to receive vapor retarders.
 - 1. Ducts with Vapor Retarders: Overlap insulation facing at seams and seal with vapor-retarder mastic and pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-retarder seal.
 - 2. Ducts without Vapor Retarders: Overlap insulation facing at seams and secure with outward clinching staples and pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation.
- O. Roof Penetrations: Apply insulation for interior applications to a point even with top of roof flashing.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with vapor-retarder mastic.
 - 2. Apply insulation for exterior applications tightly joined to interior insulation ends.
 - 3. Seal insulation to roof flashing with vapor-retarder mastic.
- P. Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through walls and partitions, except fire-rated walls and partitions.
- Q. Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire/smoke damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations.
- R. Floor Penetrations: Terminate insulation at underside of floor assembly and at floor support at top of floor.
 - 1. For insulation indicated to have vapor retarders, taper termination and seal insulation ends with vapor-retarder mastic.

3.4 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION APPLICATION

- A. Blanket Applications for Ducts and Plenums: Secure blanket insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per square foot, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to sides and bottoms of horizontal ducts and to all surfaces of vertical ducts, fittings and transitions.
 - 3. Install anchor pins and speed washers on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

- a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches. Space 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Apply additional pins and clips to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Anchor pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 4. Impale insulation over anchors and attach speed washers.
 5. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 6. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation segment with 1/2-inch staples, 1 inch o.c., and cover with pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation.
 7. Apply insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation segment for each surface. Apply insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 8. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond the insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of the same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with anchor pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
 9. Apply vapor-retarder mastic to open joints, breaks, and punctures for insulation indicated to receive vapor retarder.
- B. Board Applications for Ducts and Plenums: Secure board insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per square foot, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to sides and bottoms of horizontal ducts and to all surfaces of vertical ducts, fittings and transitions.
 3. Space anchor pins as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches. Space 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Apply additional pins and clips to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Anchor pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 4. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 5. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation segment with 1/2-inch staples, 1 inch o.c., and cover with pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation.
 6. Apply insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation segment for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and

inside radius of elbows. Apply insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond the insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of the same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with anchor pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
8. Apply vapor-retarder mastic to open joints, breaks, and punctures for insulation indicated to receive vapor retarder.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET APPLICATION

- A. Apply aluminum jacket directly over insulation with factory-applied jackets where exposed to the weather in accordance with manufacturers instructions.

3.6 DUCT SYSTEM APPLICATIONS

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.
- B. Materials and thicknesses for systems listed below are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.
- C. Insulate the following plenums and duct systems:
 1. Indoor concealed supply-, return-, and outside-air ductwork.
 2. Indoor exposed supply-, return-, and outside-air ductwork.
 3. Outdoor exposed supply and return ductwork.
 4. Indoor exposed range-hood exhaust ductwork.
 5. Indoor concealed range-hood exhaust ductwork.
 6. Indoor exposed oven and dishwasher exhaust ductwork.
 7. Indoor concealed oven and dishwasher ductwork.
- D. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:
 1. Metal ducts with duct liner.
 2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
 3. Factory-insulated plenums, casings, terminal boxes, and filter boxes and sections.
 4. Flexible connectors.
 5. Vibration-control devices.
 6. Access panels and doors in air-distribution systems.

[Edit insulation schedules below to suit Project.](#)

3.7 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM APPLICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Service: Round, supply-air ducts, concealed.
 1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.

3. Number of Layers: One.
 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- B. Service: Round, return-air ducts, concealed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 3. Number of Layers: One.
 4. Vapor Retarder Required: No.
- C. Service: Round, outside-air ducts, concealed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 3. Number of Layers: One.
 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- D. Service: Rectangular, supply-air ducts, concealed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 3. Number of Layers: One.
 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- E. Service: Rectangular, return-air ducts, concealed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 3. Number of Layers: One.
 4. Vapor Retarder Required: No.
- F. Service: Rectangular, outside-air ducts, concealed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 3. Number of Layers: One.
 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- G. Service: Round, supply-air ducts, exposed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 3. Number of Layers: One.
 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- H. Service: Round, return-air ducts, exposed.
1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 3. Number of Layers: One.
 4. Vapor Retarder Required: No.

- I. Service: Round, outside-air ducts, exposed.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Number of Layers: One.
 - 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- J. Service: Rectangular, supply-air ducts, exposed.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber board.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Number of Layers: One.
 - 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- K. Service: Rectangular, return-air ducts, exposed.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber board.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Number of Layers: One.
 - 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- L. Service: Rectangular, outside-air ducts, exposed.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber board.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Number of Layers: One.
 - 4. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- M. Service: Rectangular, dishwasher exhaust ducts, concealed.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
 - 2. Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 3. Number of Layers: One.
 - 4. Vapor Retarder Required: No.
- N. Service: Rectangular, dishwasher exhaust ducts, exposed.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber board.
 - 2. Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 3. Number of Layers: One.
 - 4. Vapor Retarder Required: No.

3.8 OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM APPLICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Service: Round, supply-air ducts.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber board.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Number of Layers: Two.
 - 4. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum.

- a. Aluminum Thickness: 0.032 inch.
- 5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- B. Service: Round, return-air ducts.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber board.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Number of Layers: Two.
 - 4. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum.
 - a. Aluminum Thickness: 0.032 inch.
 - 5. Vapor Retarder Required: No.
- C. Service: Rectangular, supply-air ducts.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber board.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Number of Layers: Two.
 - 4. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum.
 - a. Aluminum Thickness: 0.032 inch.
 - 5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
- D. Service: Rectangular, return-air ducts.
 - 1. Material: Mineral-fiber board.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 3. Number of Layers: Two.
 - 4. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum.
 - a. Aluminum Thickness: 0.032 inch.
 - 5. Vapor Retarder Required: No.

END OF SECTION 23 07 13

SECTION 23 07 16 - EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes blanket, board, and block insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jackets; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation" for insulation materials and application for ducts and plenums.
 - 2. Division 23 Section "Pipe Insulation" for insulation for piping systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:
 - 1. Field application for each equipment type.
 - 2. Removable insulation sections at access panels.
 - 3. Application of field-applied jackets.
 - 4. Special shapes for cellular-glass insulation.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and field-applied jacket. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Submit 12-inch-square sections of each sample material.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Color Charts: Show the full range of colors available for each type of field-applied finish material indicated.
- D. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests.
- E. Installer Certificates: Signed by the Contractor certifying that installers comply with requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups according to the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. Include the following mockups:
 - a. One chilled-water centrifugal pump.
 - b. One small tank or vessel.
 - 2. Build mockups with cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 - 3. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 4. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
 - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
 - 8. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for insulation application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation:
 - a. CertainTeed Manson.
 - b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
 - c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
 - d. Schuller International, Inc.
 - 2. Cellular-Glass Insulation:
 - a. Pittsburgh-Corning Corp.
 - 3. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - b. Rubatex Corp.
 - 4. Closed-Cell Phenolic-Foam Insulation:
 - a. Kooltherm Insulation Products, Ltd.
 - 5. Calcium Silicate Insulation:
 - a. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
 - b. Pabco.
 - c. Schuller International, Inc.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Board Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IB, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft paper, reinforcing scrim, aluminum foil, and vinyl film.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II, without facing and with all-service jacket manufactured from kraft paper, reinforcing scrim, aluminum foil, and vinyl film.

- C. Cellular-Glass Insulation: Inorganic, foamed or cellulated glass, annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells, incombustible.
 - 1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 3. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 2. Ultraviolet-Protective Coating: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- E. Closed-Cell Phenolic-Foam Insulation: Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
- F. Calcium Silicate Insulation: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a nonasbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.

2.3 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. General: ASTM C 921, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Foil and Paper Jacket: Laminated, glass-fiber-reinforced, flame-retardant kraft paper and aluminum foil.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact, ultraviolet-resistant PVC; 20 mils thick; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 2. PVC Jacket Color: White or gray.
 - 3. PVC Jacket Color: Color-code to match connected piping jackets based on materials contained within the piping system.
- D. Aluminum Jacket: Deep corrugated sheets manufactured from aluminum alloy complying with ASTM B 209, and having an integrally bonded moisture barrier over entire surface in contact with insulation. Metal thickness and corrugation dimensions are scheduled at the end of this Section.
 - 1. Finish: Smooth finish.
 - 2. Finish: Cross-crimp corrugated finish.
 - 3. Finish: Stucco-embossed finish.
 - 4. Finish: Factory-painted finish.
 - 5. Moisture Barrier: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- E. Stainless-Steel Jacket: Deep corrugated sheets of stainless steel complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 or 316; 0.10 inch thick; and roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming to indicated sizes.

1. Moisture Barrier: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
2. Moisture Barrier: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
3. Jacket Bands: Stainless steel, Type 304, 3/4 inch wide.

2.4 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS

- A. Glass Cloth and Tape: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I for cloth and Type II for tape. Woven glass-fiber fabrics, plain weave, presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..
 1. Tape Width: 4 inches.
- B. Bands: 3/4 inch wide, in one of the following materials compatible with jacket:
 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304; 0.020 inch thick.
 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.005 inch thick.
 3. Aluminum: 0.007 inch thick.
 4. Brass: 0.010 inch thick.
 5. Nickel-Copper Alloy: 0.005 inch thick.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch, nickel-copper alloy; 0.062-inch, soft-annealed, stainless steel; or 0.062-inch, soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
- D. Weld-Attached Anchor Pins and Washers: Copper-coated steel pin for capacitor-discharge welding and galvanized speed washer. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.
 1. Welded Pin Holding Capacity: 100 lb for direct pull perpendicular to the attached surface.
- E. Adhesive-Attached Anchor Pins and Speed Washers: Galvanized steel plate, pin, and washer manufactured for attachment to duct and plenum with adhesive. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.
 1. Adhesive: Recommended by the anchor pin manufacturer as appropriate for surface temperatures of ducts, plenums, and breechings; and to achieve a holding capacity of 100 lb for direct pull perpendicular to the adhered surface.
- F. Self-Adhesive Anchor Pins and Speed Washers: Galvanized steel plate, pin, and washer manufactured for attachment to duct and plenum with adhesive. Pin length sufficient for insulation thickness indicated.

2.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; and free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each equipment system.
- C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either the wet or dry state.
- D. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- E. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.
- I. Apply insulation over fittings and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

- K. Insulation Terminations: For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, seal ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.
- L. Apply insulation with integral jackets as follows:
 - 1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Joints and Seams: Cover with tape and vapor retarder as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
 - 3. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Where vapor retarders are indicated, apply mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent compressing insulation to less than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Install vapor-retarder mastic on equipment scheduled to receive vapor retarders. Overlap insulation facing at seams and seal with vapor-retarder mastic and pressure-sensitive tape having same facing as insulation. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-retarder seal.
- O. Insulate the following indoor equipment:
 - 1. Chilled-water air separators (small tanks).
 - 2. Chilled-water compression tanks (small tanks).
 - 3. Chilled-water centrifugal pump housings.
 - 4. Aboveground, thermal (ice) storage tanks, not factory insulated.
 - 5. Low-temperature brine tanks.
 - 6. Domestic hot-water storage tanks, not factory insulated.
 - 7. Heating hot-water air separators (small tanks).
 - 8. Heating hot-water compression tanks (small tanks).
 - 9. Heating hot-water heat exchangers.
 - 10. Steam-to-water converters, not factory insulated.
 - 11. Condensate receivers, not factory insulated.
 - 12. Deaerators, not factory insulated.
- P. Insulate the following outdoor equipment:
 - 1. Aboveground water storage tanks.
 - 2. Aboveground fuel storage tanks.
- Q. Omit insulation from the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Manholes.
 - 5. Handholes.
 - 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 INDOOR TANK AND VESSEL INSULATION APPLICATION

- A. Blankets, Board, and Block Applications for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per square foot, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to the equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joint. Stagger end joints.
 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
 4. Install adhesive-attached or self-adhesive anchor pins and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
 - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 - b. On tank and vessel, 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 - c. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - d. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and dome heads of tanks and vessels.
 5. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 6. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing
 7. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel bands.
 8. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
 9. Apply insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors and other elements that require frequent removal for service.
 10. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
 11. Apply vapor-retarder mastic to open joints, breaks, and punctures for insulation indicated to receive vapor retarder.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Applications for Tanks and Vessels: Apply insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels according to the manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET APPLICATION

- A. Apply glass-cloth jacket where indicated, directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Apply jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of jacket manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with jacket, leaving no exposed raw insulation.

- B. Foil and Paper Jackets: Apply foil and paper jackets where indicated.
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Apply lap or joint strips with the same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Apply jackets with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-retarder mastic.
- C. PVC Jackets: Apply jacket with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels for horizontal applications. Secure and seal seams and end joints with manufacturer's welding adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along the seam and joint edge.
- D. Aluminum Jackets: Secure jackets according to jacket manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Stainless-Steel Jackets: Secure jackets according to jacket manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 FINISHES

- A. Glass-Cloth Jacketed Insulation: Paint insulation finished with glass-cloth jacket as specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection: Owner will engage a qualified inspection agency to perform the following field quality-control inspections, after installing insulation materials, jackets, and finishes, to determine compliance with requirements:
- B. Inspection: Engage a qualified inspection agency to perform the following field quality-control inspections, after installing insulation materials, jackets, and finishes, to determine compliance with requirements:
- C. Inspection: Perform the following field quality-control inspections, after installing insulation materials, jackets, and finishes, to determine compliance with requirements:
 - 1. Inspect pumps and tanks randomly selected by Architect.

2. Remove insulation and covers from two chilled-water pumps or one percent of chilled-water pumps, whichever is greater.
 3. Remove insulation and covers from two small tanks or one percent of small tanks, whichever is greater.
- D. Insulation applications will be considered defective if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements. Remove defective Work and replace with new materials according to these Specifications.
- E. Reinstall insulation and covers on pumps and tanks uncovered for inspection according to these Specifications.

3.8 EQUIPMENT APPLICATIONS

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.
- B. Materials and thicknesses for systems listed below are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.

3.9 INTERIOR TANK AND VESSEL INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Equipment: Chilled-water air separators and compression tanks.

1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 75 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Fiberglass, with jacket.
3. Insulation Thickness: 1.5"
4. Field-Applied Jacket: Glass cloth.
5. Field-Applied Jacket: Foil and paper.
6. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum.
 - a. Aluminum Thickness: 0.024 inch.
8. Field-Applied Jacket: Stainless steel.
9. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes
10. Finish: None.

END OF SECTION 23 07 16

SECTION 23 23 00 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications. Provide a complete refrigerant piping system sized and installed in accordance with all manufacturers recommendations.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for thermostatic expansion valves, solenoid valves, and pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationship between piping and equipment.
 - 1. Refrigerant piping indicated is schematic only. Size piping and design the actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes, to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
- C. Field Test Reports:
- D. Maintenance Data:

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Standard: Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."
- B. ASME Standard: Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping."
- C. UL Standard: Provide products complying with UL 207, "Refrigerant-Containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical"; or UL 429, "Electrically Operated Valves."

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of refrigerant piping and suspension system components with other construction, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.
- B. Coordinate pipe sleeve installations for foundation wall penetrations.
- C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- D. Coordinate pipe sleeve installations for penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Refrigerant Valves and Specialties:
 - a. Climate & Industrial Controls Group; Parker-Hannifin Corp.; Refrigeration & Air Conditioning Division.
 - b. Danfoss Electronics, Inc.
 - c. Emerson Electric Company; Alco Controls Div.
 - d. Henry Valve Company.
 - e. Sporlan Valve Company.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR .
- C. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, Classification BAg-1 (silver), BAg-2 (silver)

2.3 REFRIGERANT PIPING SPECIALITIES

- A. Straight- or Angle-Type Strainers: 500-psig working pressure; forged-brass or steel body with stainless-steel wire or brass-reinforced Monel screen of 80 to 100 mesh in liquid lines up to 1-1/8 inches, 60 mesh in larger liquid lines, and 40 mesh in suction lines; with screwed cleanout plug and solder-end connections.
- B. Moisture/Liquid Indicators: 500-psig maximum working pressure and 200 deg F operating temperature; all-brass body with replaceable, polished, optical viewing window with color-coded moisture indicator; with solder-end connections.

- C. Replaceable-Core Filter-Dryers: 500-psig maximum working pressure; heavy gage protected with corrosion-resistant-painted steel shell, flanged ring and spring, ductile-iron cover plate with steel cap screws; wrought-copper fittings for solder-end connections; with replaceable-core kit, including gaskets and the following:
 - 1. Filter-Dryer Cartridge: Pleated media with solid-core sieve with activated alumina, ARI 730 rated for capacity.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Aboveground, within Building: Type ACR drawn-copper tubing .
- B. Belowground for NPS 2 and Smaller: Type K annealed-copper tubing.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- C. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- D. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of compressor and other equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection.
- E. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation. Use sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.
- F. Belowground, install copper tubing in protective conduit. Vent conduit outdoors.
- G. Install copper tubing in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where copper tubing will be exposed to mechanical injury.
- H. When brazing, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion valve bulb.
- I. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

- J. Support vertical runs at each floor.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Braze joints according to Division 23 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- B. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide) during brazing to prevent scale formation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect refrigerant piping according to ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 1. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure.
 2. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system at not less than the lower of the design pressure or the setting of pressure relief device protecting high and low side of system.
 - a. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - b. Test joints and fittings by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerine solution over joint.
 - c. Fill system with nitrogen to raise a test pressure of 150 psig or higher as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat requirements.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of the conditioned air controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 2. Check compressor oil level above center of sight glass.
 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.

4. Open refrigerant valves, except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
5. Check compressor-motor alignment, and lubricate motors and bearings.

3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter-dryer after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to a vacuum of 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line. Provide full-operating charge.

END OF SECTION 23 23 00

SECTION 23 31 13 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes rectangular, round, and flat-oval metal ducts and plenums for heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning systems in pressure classes from minus 2- to plus 10-inch wg.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for fire-resistant sealants for use around duct penetrations and fire-damper installations in fire-rated floors, partitions, and walls.
 - 2. Division 8 Section "Access Doors" for wall- and ceiling-mounted access doors for access to concealed ducts.
 - 3. Division 10 Section "Louvers and Vents" for intake and relief louvers and vents connected to ducts and installed in exterior walls.
 - 4. Division 23 Section "Mechanical Insulation" for duct insulation.
 - 5. Division 23 Section "Fibrous-Glass Ducts."
 - 6. Division 23 Section "HVAC Casings" for factory- and field-fabricated casings for mechanical equipment.
 - 7. Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounted access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.
 - 8. Division 23 Section "Air Terminals" for constant-volume and variable-air-volume control boxes, and reheat boxes.
 - 9. Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 - 10. Division 23 Section "Control Systems Equipment" for automatic volume-control dampers and operators.
 - 11. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for air balancing and final adjusting of manual-volume dampers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Thermal Conductivity and Apparent Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): As defined in ASTM C 168. In this Section, these values are the result of the formula $\text{Btu} \times \text{in.} / \text{h} \times \text{sq. ft.} \times \text{deg F}$ or $\text{W/m} \times \text{K}$ at the temperature differences specified. Values are expressed as Btu or W.
 - 1. Example: Apparent Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 or 0.037.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Duct system design, as indicated, has been used to select and size air-moving and -distribution equipment and other components of air system. Changes to layout or configuration of duct system must be specifically approved in writing by Architect. Accompany requests for layout modifications with calculations showing that proposed layout will provide original design results without increasing system total pressure.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For duct liner and sealing materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show details of the following:
 - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Duct layout indicating pressure classifications and sizes on plans.
 - 3. Fittings.
 - 4. Reinforcement and spacing.
 - 5. Seam and joint construction.
 - 6. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
 - 7. Terminal unit, coil, and humidifier installations.
 - 8. Hangers and supports, including methods for building attachment, vibration isolation, seismic restraints, and duct attachment.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounted items. Show the following:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Other systems installed in same space as ducts.
 - 3. Ceiling- and wall-mounted access doors and panels required to provide access to dampers and other operating devices.
 - 4. Coordination with ceiling-mounted items, including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinkler heads, access panels, and special moldings.
- D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates indicating welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- E. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.
- F. Record Drawings: Indicate actual routing, fitting details, reinforcement, support, and installed accessories and devices.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Standards: Qualify welding procedures and welding personnel to perform welding processes for this Project according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," for

hangers and supports; AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum," for aluminum supporting members; and AWS D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

- B. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems," unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Comply with NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations," Chapter 3, "Duct System," for range hood ducts, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Mockups: Before installing duct systems, erect mockups representing system pressure classifications higher than 2-inch wg. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for completed Work:
 - 1. Locate mockups in the locations and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Mockup may be a representative section of the actual duct system.
 - 2. Include the minimum number of each of the following features and fittings:
 - a. Five transverse joints.
 - b. One access door.
 - c. Two typical branch connections, each with at least one elbow.
 - d. Two typical flexible duct or flexible connector connections for each duct and apparatus.
 - 3. Perform tests specified in "Field Quality Control" Article. Modify mockup construction and perform additional tests as required to achieve specified minimum acceptable results.
 - 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting Work.
 - 5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 6. When directed, demolish and remove mockups from Project site.
 - 7. Approved mockups in an undisturbed condition at the time of Substantial Completion may become part of the completed Work.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver sealant and firestopping materials to site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration period for use, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle sealant and firestopping materials according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Deliver and store stainless-steel sheets with mill-applied adhesive protective paper maintained through fabrication and installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized, Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces of ducts exposed to view.
- B. PVC-Coated Galvanized Steel: UL 181, Class 1 listing. Lock-forming-quality, galvanized, sheet steel with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; factory-applied, 4-mil PVC coating on exposed surfaces of ducts and fittings (exterior of ducts and fittings for underground applications and interior of ducts and fittings for fume-handling applications) and with factory-applied, 2-mil PVC coating on reverse side of ducts and fittings.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: ASTM A 366/A 366M, cold-rolled sheets; commercial quality; with oiled, exposed matte finish.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 316, sheet form with No. 4 finish for surfaces of ducts exposed to view; and Type 304, sheet form with No. 1 finish for concealed ducts.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14, sheet form with standard, one-side bright finish for ducts exposed to view and with mill finish for concealed ducts.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized, sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for 36-inch length or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.2 DUCT LINER

- A. General: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and NAIMA's "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
- B. Materials: ASTM C 1071 with coated surface exposed to airstream to prevent erosion of glass fibers.
 - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 - 2. Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 3. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 4. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 5. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread rating of 25 and smoke-developed rating of 50, when tested according to ASTM C 411.
 - 6. Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and ASTM C 916.
 - 7. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in duct.

- a. Tensile Strength: Indefinitely sustain a 50-lb- tensile, dead-load test perpendicular to duct wall.
- b. Fastener Pin Length: As required for thickness of insulation and without projecting more than 1/8 inch into airstream.
- c. Adhesive for Attaching Mechanical Fasteners: Comply with fire-hazard classification of duct liner system.

2.3 SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. Joint and Seam Sealants, General: The term "sealant" is not limited to materials of adhesive or mastic nature but includes tapes and combinations of open-weave fabric strips and mastics.
 1. Joint and Seam Tape: 2 inches wide; glass-fiber fabric reinforced.
 2. Tape Sealing System: Woven-fiber tape impregnated with a gypsum mineral compound and a modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form a hard, durable, airtight seal.
 3. Joint and Seam Sealant: One-part, nonsag, solvent-release-curing, polymerized butyl sealant, formulated with a minimum of 75 percent solids.
 4. Flanged Joint Mastics: One-part, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric joint sealants, complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use O.

2.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for building materials.
 1. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 2. Exception: Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- B. Hanger Materials: Galvanized, sheet steel or round, threaded steel rod.
 1. Hangers Installed in Corrosive Atmospheres: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rod or galvanized rods with threads painted after installation.
 2. Straps and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards-- Metal and Flexible" for sheet steel width and thickness and for steel rod diameters.
- C. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- D. Trapeze and Riser Supports: Steel shapes complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel shapes and plates.
 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel support materials.
 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum support materials, unless materials are electrolytically separated from ductwork.

2.5 RECTANGULAR DUCT FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate ducts, elbows, transitions, offsets, branch connections, and other construction with galvanized, sheet steel, according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible." Comply with requirements for metal thickness, reinforcing types and intervals, tie-rod applications, and joint types and intervals.
 - 1. Lengths: Fabricate rectangular ducts in lengths appropriate to reinforcement and rigidity class required for pressure classification.
 - 2. Materials: Free from visual imperfections such as pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, and discolorations.
- B. Fabricate range hood exhaust ducts with 0.0598-inch- thick, carbon-steel sheet for concealed ducts and 0.0500-inch- thick stainless steel for exposed ducts. Weld and flange seams and joints. Comply with NFPA 96.
- C. Fabricate dishwasher hood exhaust ducts with 0.0500-inch- thick stainless steel. Weld and flange seams and joints.
- D. Acid-Resistant Ducts: PVC-coated galvanized steel.
- E. Static-Pressure Classifications: Unless otherwise indicated, construct ducts to the following:
 - 1. Supply Ducts: 3-inch wg.
 - 2. Return Ducts: 2-inch wg, negative pressure.
 - 3. Exhaust Ducts: 2-inch wg, negative pressure.
- F. Cross Breaking or Cross Beading: Cross break or cross bead duct sides 19 inches and larger and 0.0359 inch thick or less, with more than 10 sq. ft. of unbraced panel area, unless ducts are lined.

2.6 SHOP APPLICATION OF LINER IN RECTANGULAR DUCTS

- A. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with 90 percent coverage of adhesive at liner contact surface area. Multiple layers of insulation to achieve indicated thickness are prohibited.
- B. Apply adhesive to liner facing in direction of airflow not receiving metal nosing.
- C. Butt transverse joints without gaps and coat joint with adhesive.
- D. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
- E. Do not apply liners in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and standard liner product dimensions make longitudinal joints necessary.
- F. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.

- G. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely around perimeter; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
- H. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profile or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - 1. Fan discharge.
 - 2. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - 3. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts.
- I. Secure insulation liner with perforated sheet metal liner of same metal thickness as specified for duct, secured to ducts with mechanical fasteners that maintain metal liner distance from duct without compressing insulation.
 - 1. Sheet Metal Liner Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
- J. Terminate liner with duct buildouts installed in ducts to attach dampers, turning vane assemblies, and other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct wall with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds. Terminate liner at fire dampers at connection to fire-damper sleeve.

2.7 ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCT FABRICATION

- A. General: Diameter as applied to flat-oval ducts in this Article is the diameter of the size of round duct that has a circumference equal to perimeter of a given size of flat-oval duct.
- B. Round Ducts: Fabricate supply ducts of galvanized steel according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."
- C. Flat-Oval Ducts: Fabricate supply ducts with standard spiral lock seams or with butt-welded longitudinal seams according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."
- D. Double-Wall (Insulated) Ducts: Fabricate double-wall (insulated) ducts with an outer shell and an inner liner. Dimensions indicated on internally insulated ducts are inside dimensions.
 - 1. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 2. Outer Shell: Base outer-shell metal thickness on actual outer-shell dimensions. Fabricate outer-shell lengths 2 inches longer than inner shell and insulation, and in metal thickness specified for single-wall duct.
 - 3. Insulation: 1-inch- thick fibrous-glass insulation, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate insulation where internally insulated duct connects to single-wall duct or uninsulated components. Terminate insulation and reduce outer duct diameter to inner liner diameter.
 - 4. Solid Inner Liner: Fabricate round and flat-oval inner liners with solid sheet metal of thickness listed below:

5. Perforated Inner Liner: Fabricate round and flat-oval inner liners with sheet metal having 3/32-inch- diameter perforations, with an overall open area of 23 percent. Use the following sheet metal thicknesses and seam construction:
 - a. Ducts 3 to 8 Inches in Diameter: 0.019 inch with standard spiral seam construction.
 - b. Ducts 9 to 42 Inches in Diameter: 0.019 inch with single-rib spiral seam construction.
 - c. Ducts 44 to 60 Inches in Diameter: 0.022 inch with single-rib spiral seam construction.
 - d. Ducts 62 to 88 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch with standard spiral seam construction.
6. Maintain concentricity of liner to outer shell by mechanical means. Retain insulation from dislocation by mechanical means.

2.8 ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL SUPPLY AND EXHAUST FITTING FABRICATION

- A. 90-Degree Tees and Laterals and Conical Tees: Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible," with metal thicknesses specified for longitudinal seam straight duct.
- B. Diverging-Flow Fittings: Fabricate with a reduced entrance to branch taps with no excess material projecting from body onto branch tap entrance.
- C. Elbows: Fabricate in die-formed, gored, pleated, or mitered construction. Fabricate bend radius of die-formed, gored, and pleated elbows one and one-half times elbow diameter. Unless elbow construction type is indicated, fabricate elbows as follows:
 1. Mitered-Elbow Radius and Number of Pieces: Welded construction complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible," unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Round Mitered Elbows: Welded construction with the following metal thickness for pressure classes from minus 2- to plus 2-inch wg:
 - a. Ducts 3 to 26 Inches in Diameter: 0.028 inch.
 - b. Ducts 27 to 36 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch.
 - c. Ducts 37 to 50 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch.
 - d. Ducts 52 to 60 Inches in Diameter: 0.052 inch.
 - e. Ducts 62 to 84 Inches in Diameter: 0.064 inch.
 3. Round Mitered Elbows: Welded construction with the following metal thickness for pressure classes from 2- to 10-inch wg:
 - a. Ducts 3 to 14 Inches in Diameter: 0.028 inch.
 - b. Ducts 15 to 26 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch.
 - c. Ducts 27 to 50 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch.
 - d. Ducts 52 to 60 Inches in Diameter: 0.052 inch.
 - e. Ducts 62 to 84 Inches in Diameter: 0.064 inch.

4. Flat-Oval Mitered Elbows: Welded construction with same metal thickness as longitudinal seam flat-oval duct.
 5. 90-Degree, Two-Piece, Mitered Elbows: Use only for supply systems, or exhaust systems for material-handling classes A and B; and only where space restrictions do not permit using 1.5 bend radius elbows. Fabricate with single-thickness turning vanes.
 6. Round Elbows, 8 Inches and Smaller: Fabricate die-formed elbows for 45- and 90-degree elbows and pleated elbows for 30, 45, 60, and 90 degrees only. Fabricate nonstandard bend-angle configuration or nonstandard diameter elbows with gored construction.
 7. Round Elbows, 9 through 14 Inches: Fabricate gored or pleated elbows for 30, 45, 60, and 90 degrees, unless space restrictions require a mitered elbow. Fabricate nonstandard bend-angle configuration or nonstandard diameter elbows with gored construction.
 8. Round Elbows, Larger Than 14 Inches, and All Flat-Oval Elbows: Fabricate gored elbows, unless space restrictions require a mitered elbow.
 9. Die-Formed Elbows for Sizes through 8 Inches and All Pressures: 0.040 inch thick with two-piece welded construction.
 10. Round Gored-Elbow Metal Thickness: Same as non-elbow fittings specified above.
 11. Flat-Oval Elbow Metal Thickness: Same as longitudinal seam flat-oval duct specified above.
 12. Pleated Elbows for Sizes through 14 Inches and Pressures through 10-Inch wg: 0.022 inch.
- D. Double-Wall (Insulated) Fittings: Fabricate double-wall (insulated) fittings with an outer shell and an inner liner. Dimensions indicated on internally insulated ducts are inside dimensions.
1. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 2. Outer Shell: Base outer-shell metal thickness on actual outer-shell dimensions. Fabricate outer-shell lengths 2 inches longer than inner shell and insulation. Use the same metal thicknesses for outer duct as for uninsulated fittings.
 3. Insulation: 1-inch- thick fibrous-glass insulation, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate insulation where internally insulated duct connects to single-wall duct or uninsulated components. Terminate insulation and reduce outer duct diameter to nominal single-wall size.
 4. Solid Inner Liner: Fabricate round and flat-oval inner liners with solid sheet metal of thickness listed below:
 5. Perforated Inner Liner: Fabricate round and flat-oval inner liners with sheet metal having 3/32-inch- diameter perforations, with an overall open area of 23 percent. Use the following sheet metal thicknesses:
 - a. Ducts 3 to 34 Inches in Diameter: 0.028 inch.
 - b. Ducts 35 to 58 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch.
 - c. Ducts 60 to 88 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch.
 6. Maintain concentricity of liner to outer shell by mechanical means. Retain insulation from dislocation by mechanical means.
- E. PVC-Coated Elbows and Fittings: Fabricate elbows and fittings as follows:

1. Round Elbows 4 to 8 Inches in Diameter: Two piece, die stamped, with longitudinal seams spot welded, bonded, and painted with a PVC aerosol spray.
2. Round Elbows 9 to 26 Inches in Diameter: Standing seam construction.
3. Round Elbows 28 to 60 Inches in Diameter: Standard gore construction, riveted and bonded.
4. Other Fittings: Riveted and bonded joints.
5. Couplings: Slip-joint construction with a minimum 2-inch insertion length.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories.
- B. Construct and install each duct system for the specific duct pressure classification indicated.
- C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in lengths not less than 12 feet, unless interrupted by fittings.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install fabricated fittings for changes in directions, changes in size and shape, and connections.
- F. Install couplings tight to duct wall surface with a minimum of projections into duct.
- G. Install ducts, unless otherwise indicated, vertically and horizontally, parallel and perpendicular to building lines; avoid diagonal runs.
- H. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- I. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- J. Conceal ducts from view in finished spaces. Do not encase horizontal runs in solid partitions, unless specifically indicated.
- K. Coordinate layout with suspended ceiling, fire- and smoke-control dampers, lighting layouts, and similar finished work.
- L. Electrical Equipment Spaces: Route ductwork to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment spaces and enclosures.
- M. Non-Fire-Rated Partition Penetrations: Where ducts pass through interior partitions and exterior walls, and are exposed to view, conceal space between construction opening and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as duct. Overlap opening on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

- N. Fire-Rated Partition Penetrations: Where ducts pass through interior partitions and exterior walls, install appropriately rated fire damper, sleeve, and firestopping sealant. Fire and smoke dampers are specified in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories." Firestopping materials and installation methods are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."

3.2 PVC-COATED DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Install PVC-coated duct and fittings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Seal all joints and seams. Apply sealer to male end connectors before insertion, and afterward to cover entire joint and sheet metal screws.
- C. Secure couplings with sheet metal screws. Install screws at an interval of 12 inches, with a minimum of three screws in each coupling.
- D. Repair damage to PVC coating with manufacturer's recommended materials.

3.3 UNDERSLAB DUCT INSTALLATIONS

- A. Verify undamaged conditions of duct before enclosure with fill or encasement.
- B. Install underslab ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" and as indicated.
- C. Protect ducts from damage by equipment used in placing concrete on or around ducts.
- D. Protect duct openings.

3.4 RANGE HOOD EXHAUST DUCT INSTALLATIONS

- A. Install ducts to allow for thermal expansion of ductwork through 2000 deg F temperature range.
- B. Install ducts without dips or traps that may collect residues, unless traps have continuous or automatic residue removal.
- C. Install access openings at each change in direction and at 50-foot intervals; locate on sides of duct a minimum of 1-1/2 inches from bottom; and fit with grease-tight covers of same material as duct.
- D. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies.

3.5 DISHWASHER EXHAUST DUCT INSTALLATIONS

- A. Install dishwasher exhaust ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."

3.6 SEAM AND JOINT SEALING

- A. General: Seal duct seams and joints according to the duct pressure class indicated and as described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."
- B. Pressure Classification Less Than 2-Inch wg: Transverse joints.
- C. Seal externally insulated ducts before insulation installation.

3.7 HANGING AND SUPPORTING

- A. Install rigid round, rectangular, and flat-oval metal duct with support systems indicated in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."
- B. Support horizontal ducts within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- C. Support vertical ducts at a maximum interval of 16 feet and at each floor.
- D. Install upper attachments to structures with an allowable load not exceeding one-fourth of failure (proof-test) load.
- E. Install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
- F. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect equipment with flexible connectors according to Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."
- B. For branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections, comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems as required to accommodate leakage testing and as required for compliance with test requirements.
- B. Conduct tests, in presence of Architect, at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If pressure classifications are not indicated, test entire system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Determine leakage from entire system or section of system by relating leakage to surface area of test section.

- D. Maximum Allowable Leakage: Comply with requirements for Leakage Classification 3 for round and flat-oval ducts, Leakage Classification 12 for rectangular ducts in pressure classifications less than and equal to 2-inch wg (both positive and negative pressures), and Leakage Classification 6 for pressure classifications from 2- to 10-inch wg.
- E. Remake leaking joints and retest until leakage is less than maximum allowable.
- F. Leakage Test: Perform tests according to SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual."

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust volume-control dampers in ducts, outlets, and inlets to achieve design airflow.
- B. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for detailed procedures.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect the system. Vacuum ducts before final acceptance to remove dust and debris.

END OF SECTION 23 31 13

SECTION 23 33 00 - DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Volume dampers.
 - 3. Motorized control dampers.
 - 4. Fire dampers.
 - 5. Ceiling fire dampers.
 - 6. Smoke dampers.
 - 7. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
 - 8. Turning vanes.
 - 9. Duct-mounting access doors.
 - 10. Flexible connectors.
 - 11. Flexible ducts.
 - 12. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Volume dampers.
 - 3. Motorized control dampers.
 - 4. Fire dampers.
 - 5. Ceiling fire dampers.
 - 6. Smoke dampers.
 - 7. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
 - 8. Duct silencers.
 - 9. Turning vanes.
 - 10. Duct-mounting access doors.
 - 11. Flexible connectors.
 - 12. Flexible ducts.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Description: Multiple-blade, parallel action gravity balanced, with[**center-pivoted**] blades of maximum 6-inch width, with sealed edges, assembled in rattle-free manner with 90-degree stop, steel ball bearings, and axles; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
- B. Frame: 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners.
- C. Blades: 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum.
- D. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- E. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- F. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- G. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

2.2 VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. General Description: Factory fabricated, with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
- B. Standard Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064 inch thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
 - 2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - 3. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel .
 - 4. Bearings: Molded synthetic.
 - 5. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2.3 MOTORIZED CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. General Description: AMCA-rated, opposed-blade design; minimum of 0.1084-inch- thick, galvanized-steel frames with holes for duct mounting; minimum of 0.0635-inch- thick, galvanized-steel damper blades with maximum blade width of 8 inches.

1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with nylon blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
3. Provide closed-cell neoprene edging.

2.4 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Fire dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555 for dynamic application.
- B. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- C. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- D. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch thick as indicated and of length to suit application.
 2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame complies with sleeve requirements.
- E. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- F. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- G. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 212 deg F rated.

2.5 CEILING FIRE DAMPERS

- A. General Description: Labeled according to UL 555C; comply with construction details for tested floor- and roof-ceiling assemblies as indicated in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."
- B. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, round or rectangular, style to suit ceiling construction.
- C. Blades: Galvanized sheet steel with refractory insulation.
- D. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 285 deg F rated.

2.6 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. General Description: Labeled according to UL 555S. Combination fire and smoke dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555 for 1-1/2-hour rating.
- B. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 212 deg F rated.

- C. Frame and Blades: 0.064-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- D. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- E. Damper Motors: Provide for modulating or two-position action.
 - 1. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
 - 2. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
 - 3. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outside-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
 - 4. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
 - 5. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for vanes and vane runners. Vane runners shall automatically align vanes.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate 1-1/2-inch- wide, single -vane, curved blades of galvanized sheet steel set 3/4 inch o.c.; support with bars perpendicular to blades set 2 inches o.c.; and set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

2.8 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS

- A. General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and rectangular; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - 1. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - 2. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
 - a. Less Than 12 Inches Square: Secure with two sash locks.
 - b. Up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
 - d. Sizes 24 by 48 Inches and Larger: One additional hinge.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. General Description: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- B. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. Select metal compatible with ducts.
- C. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- D. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

2.10 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Insulated-Duct Connectors: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
- B. Flexible Duct Clamps: Nylon strap, in sizes 3 through 18 inches to suit duct size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers in ducts with liner; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.

- E. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches lead from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install at a minimum of two duct widths from branch takeoff.
- F. Provide test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers, with fusible links, according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.
- H. Install duct access doors to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units as follows:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Downstream from volume dampers and equipment.
 - 3. Adjacent to fire or smoke dampers, providing access to reset or reinstall fusible links.
 - 4. To interior of ducts for cleaning; before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50-foot spacing.
 - 5. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
- I. Install flexible connectors immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment supported by vibration isolators.
- J. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and higher, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- K. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- L. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to low pressure ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- M. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- N. Install duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.
- B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00

SECTION 23 24 23 - POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
2. Centrifugal wall ventilators.
3. Ceiling-mounting ventilators.
4. In-line centrifugal fans.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material gages and finishes, including color charts.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, and base weights.

C. Operation and maintenance data.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.

D. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

1.4 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Belts: One set for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraphs titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Description: Belt-driven or direct-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.
 - 1. Manufacturers
 - a. Acme Fan Company
 - b. Cook, Loren Company.
 - c. Greenheck Fan Corp.
- B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:
 - 1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - 3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
 - 4. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
 - 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.

3. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 4. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
- F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
 2. Overall Height: 12 inches.
 3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation matrix.
 4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
 6. Burglar Bars: 1/2-inch-thick steel bars welded in place to form 6-inch squares.
 7. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
 8. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
 9. Vented Curb: Unlined with louvered vents in vertical sides.

2.3 CENTRIFUGAL WALL VENTILATORS

- A. Description: Belt-driven or direct-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, and accessories.
1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Acme Fan Company
 - b. Cook, Loren Company.
 - c. Greenheck Fan Corp.
- B. Housing: Heavy-gage, removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; venturi inlet cone.
- C. Fan Wheel: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:
1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
 4. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through internal aluminum conduit.
 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 3. Wall Grille: Ring type for flush mounting.

4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in wall sleeve; factory set to close when fan stops.
5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

2.4 CEILING-MOUNTING VENTILATORS

- A. Description: Centrifugal fans designed for installing in ceiling or wall or for concealed in-line applications.
 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Acme Fan Company
 - b. Cook, Loren Company.
 - c. Greenheck Fan Corp.
- B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.
- D. Grille: Aluminum or Stainless steel, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.
- E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- F. Accessories:
 1. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
 2. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
 3. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
 4. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless steel springs, and fusible link.
 5. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
 6. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
 7. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

2.5 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Description: In-line, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, outlet guide vanes, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, mounting brackets, and accessories.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Acme Fan Company
 - b. Cook, Loren Company.

c. Greenheck Fan Corp.

- B. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- C. Direct-Driven Units: Motor encased in housing outside of airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.
- D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
 - 2. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
 - 3. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
 - 4. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

2.6 MOTORS

- A. For motors larger than ¼ horsepower, refer to Division 23 Section "Motors" for general requirements for factory-installed motors.
- B. Motor Construction: NEMA MG 1, general purpose, continuous duty, Design B.
- C. Enclosure Type: Open drip-proof.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Support units using spring isolators having a static deflection of 1 inch: Vibration- and seismic-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."

1. Secure vibration and seismic controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.
- B. Install floor-mounting units on concrete bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Refer to Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."
 1. In seismic zones, restrain support units.
- F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- G. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Identification."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
- D. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- E. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- F. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest as specified above after repairs or replacements are made.

Hampton Inn and Suites, Monroe, LA
Project No.: 12-111

September 16, 2013

END OF SECTION 23 24 23

SECTION 23 36 00 - AIR TERMINALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Single-duct air terminals.
 - 2. Dual-duct air terminals.
 - 3. Fan-powered air terminals.
 - 4. Mechanical air terminals.
 - 5. System-powered air terminals.
 - 6. Diffuser air terminals.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation" for external insulation of air terminals.
 - 2. Division 23 Section "Control Systems Equipment" for control devices installed on air terminals.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated. Include a schedule showing drawing designation, room location, number furnished, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans drawn to scale and coordinating air outlets with other items installed in ceilings.
- D. Maintenance Data: List of parts for each type of air terminal and troubleshooting maintenance guide to include in the maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings and schedules indicate requirements of air terminals and are based on specific systems indicated. Other manufacturers' systems with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."
- B. Listing and Labeling: Provide electrically operated air terminals specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in NFPA 70, Article 100.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Install air terminals according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- D. Comply with NFPA 70 for electrical components and installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering air terminals that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide air terminals by one of the following:
 - 1. Nailor
 - 2. Trane
 - 3. Carrier
 - 4. Titus
 - 5. Enviro-Tech
 - 6. Acutherm

2.2 SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINALS

- A. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing. Locate control components inside protective metal shroud.
- B. Casings: Steel or aluminum sheet metal of the following minimum thicknesses:
 - 1. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.0239-inch steel.
 - 2. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.0179-inch steel.
 - 3. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.032-inch aluminum.
 - 4. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.025-inch aluminum.

- C. Casing Lining: Minimum of 1/2-inch-thick, neoprene- or vinyl-coated, fibrous-glass insulation; 1.5-lb/cu. ft. density, complying with NFPA 90A requirements and UL 181 erosion requirements. Secure lining to prevent delamination, sagging, or settling.
 - 1. Coat liner surfaces and edges with erosion-resistant coating or cover with perforated metal.
 - 2. Cover liner with perforated metal.
 - 3. Cover liner with Mylar film.
 - 4. Cover liner with Tedlar film.
- D. Plenum Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
- E. Plenum Air Outlets: S-slip and drive connections.
- F. Access: Removable panels to permit access to dampers and other parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.
- G. Volume Damper: Construct of galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: 2 percent of nominal airflow at 1-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 2. Maximum Damper Leakage: 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 3. Maximum Damper Leakage: 3 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 4. Maximum Damper Leakage: 3 percent of nominal airflow at 6-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 5. Damper Position: Normally open.
 - 6. Damper Position: Normally closed.
- H. Attenuator Section: Line with 2-inch-thick, neoprene- or vinyl-coated, fibrous-glass insulation.
- I. Multi-outlet Attenuator Section: With 6-inch-diameter collars; each with locking butterfly balancing damper.
- J. Multi-outlet Attenuator Section: With 8-inch-diameter collars; each with locking butterfly balancing damper.
- K. Round Outlet: Discharge collar matching inlet size.
- L. Hot-Water Heating Coil: 1/2-inch copper tube, mechanically expanded into aluminum-plate fins; leak tested underwater to 200 psig; and factory installed.
- M. Electric Heating Coil: Slip-in type, open-coil design with integral control box factory wired and installed. Include the following features:
 - 1. Primary and secondary over-temperature protection.
 - 2. Minimum airflow switch.
 - 3. Pneumatic-electric switches and relays.

4. Magnetic contactor for each step of control.
- N. Controls: Damper operator, thermostat, and other devices compatible with temperature controls specified in other Division 23 Sections.
- O. Electric Controls: 24-V damper actuator with wall-mounted electric thermostat and appropriate mounting hardware.
- P. Pneumatic Controls: Damper operator, velocity controller, and thermostat.
1. Pneumatic Damper Operator: 8- to 13-psig spring range.
 2. Velocity Controller: Factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, field adjustable; maintains constant airflow dictated by thermostat within 5 percent of set point while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations up to 4 inches wg.
 3. Thermostat: Wall-mounted, pneumatic type with appropriate mounting hardware.
- Q. Electronic Controls: Bidirectional damper operator and microprocessor-based controller with integral airflow transducer and room sensor provide control with the following features:
1. Proportional plus integral control of room temperature.
 2. Time-proportional reheat-coil control.
 3. Occupied/unoccupied operating mode.
 4. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
 5. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
 6. Communication with temperature-control system specified in other Division 23 Sections.

2.3 DUAL-DUCT AIR TERMINALS

- A. Configuration: 2 volume dampers inside unit casing with mixing attenuator section. Locate control components inside protective metal shroud.
- B. Casings: Steel or aluminum sheet metal of the following minimum thicknesses:
1. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.0239-inch steel.
 2. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.0179-inch steel.
 3. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.032-inch aluminum.
 4. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.025-inch aluminum.
- C. Casing Lining: Minimum of 1/2-inch-thick, neoprene- or vinyl-coated, fibrous-glass insulation; 1.5-lb/cu. ft. density, complying with NFPA 90A requirements and UL 181 erosion requirements. Secure lining to prevent delamination, sagging, or settling.
1. Coat liner surfaces and edges with erosion-resistant coating or cover with perforated metal.
 2. Cover liner with perforated metal.
 3. Cover liner with Mylar film.
 4. Cover liner with Tedlar film.
- D. Plenum Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.

- E. Plenum Air Outlets: S-slip and drive connections.
- F. Access: Removable panels to permit access to dampers and other parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.
- G. Volume Damper: Construct of galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: 2 percent of nominal airflow at 1-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 2. Maximum Damper Leakage: 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 3. Maximum Damper Leakage: 3 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 4. Maximum Damper Leakage: 3 percent of nominal airflow at 6-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 5. Damper Position: Normally open.
 - 6. Damper Position: Normally closed.
- H. Attenuator Section: Line with 2-inch-thick, neoprene- or vinyl-coated, fibrous-glass insulation.
- I. Multi-outlet Attenuator Section: With 6-inch-diameter collars; each with locking butterfly balancing damper.
- J. Multi-outlet Attenuator Section: With 8-inch-diameter collars; each with locking butterfly balancing damper.
- K. Controls: Damper operator, thermostat, and other devices compatible with temperature controls specified in other Division 23 Sections.
- L. Electric Controls: 24-V damper actuator with wall-mounted electric thermostat and appropriate mounting hardware.
- M. Pneumatic Controls: Damper operator, velocity controller, and thermostat.
 - 1. Pneumatic Damper Operator: 8- to 13-psig spring range.
 - 2. Velocity Controller: Factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, field adjustable; maintains constant airflow dictated by thermostat within 5 percent of set point while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations up to 4 inches wg.
 - 3. Thermostat: Wall-mounted, pneumatic type with appropriate mounting hardware.
- N. Electronic Controls: Bidirectional damper operator and microprocessor-based controller with integral airflow transducer and room sensor provide control with the following features:
 - 1. Proportional plus integral control of room temperature.
 - 2. Time-proportional reheat-coil control.
 - 3. Occupied/unoccupied operating mode.
 - 4. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
 - 5. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.

6. Communication with temperature-control system specified in other Division 23 Sections.

O. Control Sequence: Provide the following:

1. Modulate cold-air damper closed as warm-air damper opens.
2. Field-adjustable actuator for warm-air damper allows a choice between simultaneously opening warm-air damper as cold-air damper closes and delaying opening warm-air damper until cold-air damper is closed.

2.4 FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINALS

- A. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly and fan in series or in parallel arrangement inside unit casing. Locate control components inside protective metal shroud.

- B. Casings: Steel or aluminum sheet metal of the following minimum thicknesses:

1. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.0239-inch steel.
2. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.0179-inch steel.
3. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.032-inch aluminum.
4. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.025-inch aluminum.

- C. Casing Lining: Minimum of 1/2-inch-thick, neoprene- or vinyl-coated, fibrous-glass insulation; 1.5-lb/cu. ft. density, complying with NFPA 90A requirements and UL 181 erosion requirements. Secure lining to prevent delamination, sagging, or settling.

1. Coat liner surfaces and edges with erosion-resistant coating or cover with perforated metal.
2. Cover liner with perforated metal.
3. Cover liner with Mylar film.
4. Cover liner with Tedlar film.

- D. Plenum Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.

- E. Plenum Air Outlets: S-slip and drive connections.

- F. Access: Removable panels to permit access to dampers and other parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.

- G. Volume Damper: Construct of galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: 2 percent of nominal airflow at 1-inch wg inlet static pressure.
2. Maximum Damper Leakage: 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
3. Maximum Damper Leakage: 3 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
4. Maximum Damper Leakage: 3 percent of nominal airflow at 6-inch wg inlet static pressure.

5. Damper Position: Normally open.
 6. Damper Position: Normally closed.
- H. Fan Section: Galvanized-steel plenum, acoustically lined, housing direct-drive, forward-curved fan with permanent split-capacitor motor, air filter, and backdraft damper.
1. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.
 2. Isolation: Fan-motor assembly on rubber isolators.
- I. Attenuator Section: Line with 2-inch-thick, neoprene- or vinyl-coated, fibrous-glass insulation.
- J. Hot-Water Heating Coil: 1/2-inch copper tube, mechanically expanded into aluminum-plate fins; leak tested underwater to 200 psig; and factory installed.
- K. Electric Heating Coil: Slip-in type, open-coil design with integral control box factory wired and installed. Include the following features:
1. Primary and secondary over-temperature protection.
 2. Minimum airflow switch.
 3. Pneumatic-electric switches and relays.
 4. Magnetic contactor for each step of control.
- L. Factory-mounted and -wired controls: Mount electrical components in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.
1. Factory-mounted transformer for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
 2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip, and terminal lugs to match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box sized according to NFPA 70.
 3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted, fused, disconnect switch.
- M. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.
- N. Electric Controls: 24-V damper actuator with wall-mounted electric thermostat and appropriate mounting hardware.
- O. Pneumatic Controls: Damper operator, velocity controller, and thermostat.
1. Pneumatic Damper Operator: 8- to 13-psig spring range.
 2. Velocity Controller: Factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, field adjustable; maintains constant airflow dictated by thermostat within 5 percent of set point while compensating for inlet static-pressure variations up to 4 inches wg.
 3. Thermostat: Wall-mounted, pneumatic type with appropriate mounting hardware.
- P. Electronic Controls: Bidirectional damper operator and microprocessor-based controller with integral airflow transducer and room sensor provide control with the following features:
1. Proportional plus integral control of room temperature.

2. Time-proportional reheat-coil control.
3. Occupied/unoccupied operating mode.
4. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
5. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
6. Communication with temperature-control system specified in other Division 23 Sections.

Q. Factory-mounted electronic controls to accomplish the following sequence of operation:

1. With central system fan operating in occupied mode, sequence the controls as follows:
 - a. When primary duct pressure is sensed, thermostat and volume damper proportion airflow from central system.
 - b. On reduced cooling demand, volume damper closes. At a field-adjustable point, fan is energized.
 - c. As cooling demand increases, fan speed increases.
 - d. If central duct system pressure varies, volume damper maintains constant primary airflow.
 - e. If no cooling or heating demand, control enters field-adjustable, no-load band.
 - f. On heating demand, heating coil is energized.
2. With central system fan operating in unoccupied mode, sequence the controls as follows:
 - a. Field-adjustable temperature setback.
 - b. On heating demand, terminal unit fan and heating coil are energized.
 - c. Volume damper is closed.
3. With central system fan operating in occupied mode, sequence the controls as follows:
 - a. On cooling demand, volume damper proportions airflow from central system.
 - b. On reduced cooling demand, volume damper closes. Pneumatic-electric or damper-position switch energizes fan.
 - c. Speed control adjusts fan speed to match downstream resistance.
 - d. On heating demand, heating coil is energized.
4. With central system fan operating in unoccupied mode, sequence the controls as follows:
 - a. Thermostat cycles fan.

2.5 MECHANICAL AIR TERMINALS

- A. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly and control components inside unit casing.
- B. Casings: Steel or aluminum sheet metal of the following minimum thicknesses:
 1. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.0239-inch steel.
 2. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.0179-inch steel.
 3. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.032-inch aluminum.
 4. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.025-inch aluminum.

- C. Casing Lining: Minimum of 1/2-inch-thick, neoprene- or vinyl-coated, fibrous-glass insulation; 1.5-lb/cu. ft. density, complying with NFPA 90A requirements and UL 181 erosion requirements. Secure lining to prevent delamination, sagging, or settling.
 - 1. Coat liner surfaces and edges with erosion-resistant coating or cover with perforated metal.
 - 2. Cover liner with perforated metal.
 - 3. Cover liner with Mylar film.
 - 4. Cover liner with Tedlar film.
- D. Plenum Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
- E. Plenum Air Outlets: S-slip and drive connections.
- F. Access: Removable panels to permit access to dampers and other parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.
- G. Volume Damper: Construct of galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: 2 percent of nominal airflow at 1-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 2. Maximum Damper Leakage: 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 3. Maximum Damper Leakage: 3 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 4. Maximum Damper Leakage: 3 percent of nominal airflow at 6-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 5. Damper Position: Normally open.
 - 6. Damper Position: Normally closed.
- H. Regulator Assembly: Extruded-aluminum or 20-gage galvanized-steel components; key damper blades into shaft with nylon-fitted pivot points located inside unit casing.
 - 1. Automatic Flow-Control Assembly: Combine spring rates matched for each volume-regulator size with machined dashpot for stable operation.
 - 2. Factory calibrate assembly with shaft extension for connection to externally mounted control actuator.
- I. Multi-outlet Attenuator Section: With 6-inch-diameter collars; each with locking butterfly balancing damper.
- J. Multi-outlet Attenuator Section: With 8-inch-diameter collars; each with locking butterfly balancing damper.
- K. Hot-Water Heating Coil: 1/2-inch copper tube, mechanically expanded into aluminum-plate fins; leak tested underwater to 200 psig; and factory installed.
- L. Electric Heating Coil: Slip-in type, open-coil design with integral control box factory wired and installed. Include the following features:

1. Primary and secondary over-temperature protection.
 2. Minimum airflow switch.
 3. Pneumatic-electric switches and relays.
 4. Magnetic contactor for each step of control.
- M. Controls: Damper operator, thermostat, and other devices compatible with temperature controls specified in other Division 23 Sections.
- N. Electric Controls: 24-V damper actuator with wall-mounted electric thermostat and appropriate mounting hardware.
- O. Pneumatic Controls: Damper operator, velocity controller, and thermostat.
1. Pneumatic Damper Operator: 8- to 13-psig spring range.
 2. Thermostat: Wall-mounted, pneumatic type with appropriate mounting hardware.

2.6 SYSTEM-POWERED AIR TERMINALS

- A. Configuration: Volume-damper and automatic flow-control assemblies inside unit casing.
- B. Casings: Steel or aluminum sheet metal of the following minimum thicknesses:
1. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.0239-inch steel.
 2. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.0179-inch steel.
 3. Upstream Pressure Side: 0.032-inch aluminum.
 4. Downstream Pressure Side: 0.025-inch aluminum.
- C. Casing Lining: Minimum of 1/2-inch-thick, neoprene- or vinyl-coated, fibrous-glass insulation; 1.5-lb/cu. ft. density, complying with NFPA 90A requirements and UL 181 erosion requirements. Secure lining to prevent delamination, sagging, or settling.
1. Coat liner surfaces and edges with erosion-resistant coating or cover with perforated metal.
 2. Cover liner with perforated metal.
 3. Cover liner with Mylar film.
 4. Cover liner with Tedlar film.
- D. Plenum Air Inlets: Round or oval stub connections for duct attachment.
- E. Plenum Air Outlets: S-slip and drive connections.
- F. Volume Damper: Construct of galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
- G. Regulator Assembly: System-air-powered bellows section incorporating polypropylene bellows for volume regulation and thermostatic control. Design bellows to operate at temperatures of 0 to 140 deg F; to be impervious to moisture and fungus; and to be suitable for 10-inch wg static pressure. Factory test for leaks.

- H. Multi-outlet Attenuator Section: With 6-inch-diameter collars; each with locking butterfly balancing damper.
- I. Multi-outlet Attenuator Section: With 8-inch-diameter collars; each with locking butterfly balancing damper.
- J. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.
 - 1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 2. Factory-mounted and -piped, 5-micron filter; velocity-resetting, adjustable, high-limit control; and amplifying relay.
 - 3. System-powered, wall-mounted thermostat.

2.7 DIFFUSER AIR TERMINALS

- A. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing. Locate control components inside protective metal shroud.
- B. Casings: Steel or aluminum sheet metal.
- C. Plenum Air Inlets: Round stub connections for duct attachment.
- D. Volume Damper: Construct of galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Damper Position: Normally open.
 - 2. Damper Position: Normally closed.
- E. Diffuser: Galvanized-steel, insulated plenum with extruded-aluminum or sheet-steel diffuser, having fixed or variable geometry designed to operate from 100 percent to minimum airflow, manual adjustment of airflow direction, and white baked-enamel finish.
- F. Electric Controls: 24-V damper actuator with wall-mounted electric thermostat and appropriate mounting hardware.
- G. Pneumatic Controls: Damper operator, velocity controller, and thermostat.
 - 1. Pneumatic Damper Operator: 8- to 13-psig spring range.
 - 2. Thermostat: Wall-mounted, pneumatic type with appropriate mounting hardware.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Requirements: Test and rate air terminals according to ARI 880, "Industry Standard for Air Terminals."

- B. Identification: Label each air terminal with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and ARI certification seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install air terminals level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions, rough-in drawings, original design, and referenced standards; and maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- B. Connect ductwork to air terminals according to Division 23 ductwork Sections.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install piping adjacent to air terminals to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Hot-Water Piping: In addition to requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping," connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.
- C. Steam Piping: In addition to requirements in Division 23 Section "Steam and Condensate Piping," connect heating coils to steam supply with shutoff valve, strainer, and control valve; and to condensate return piping with shutoff valve, strainer, steam trap, and shutoff valve.
- D. Electrical: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 16 Sections.
- E. Ground equipment.
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes.

3.5 COMMISSIONING

- A. Verify that installation of each air terminal is according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Check that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
- C. Check that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
- D. Verify that control connections are complete.
- E. Check that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
- F. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel as specified below:
 - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance.
 - 2. Review data in the maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
 - 3. Review data in the maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
 - 4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least 7 days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 23 36 00

SECTION 23 37 13 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes ceiling- and wall-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate Drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 - 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 GRILLES AND REGISTERS

- A. Adjustable Bar Grille:
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.

2. Manufacturers:

- a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
- b. Price Industries.
- c. Titus.

3. Material: Steel.

4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.

5. See drawings for additional specifications.

B. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Products:

- a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
- b. Price Industries.
- c. Titus.

2. Manufacturers:

- a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
- b. Price Industries.
- c. Titus.

3. Material: Steel.

4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.

5. See drawings for additional specifications.

2.3 CEILING DIFFUSER OUTLETS

A. Round Ceiling Diffuser:

1. Products:

- a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.; **<Insert product name or designation>.**
- b. Price Industries; **<Insert product name or designation>.**
- c. Titus; **<Insert product name or designation>.**

2. Manufacturers:

- a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
- b. Price Industries.
- c. Titus.

3. Material: Steel.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. See drawings for additional specifications.

B. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Products:
 - a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
2.
 - a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
3. Manufacturers:
 - a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
4. Material: Steel.
5. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
6. See drawings for additional specifications.

C. Perforated Diffuser:

1. Products:
 - a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
2. Manufacturers:
 - a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
3. Material: Steel backpan and pattern controllers, with steel face.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
5. See drawings for additional specifications.

D. Louver Face Diffuser:

1. Products:
 - a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.

- b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
- 2. Manufacturers:
 - a. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - b. Price Industries.
 - c. Titus.
- 3. Material: Steel.
- 4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
- 5. See drawings for additional specifications.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13



Ardaman & Associates, Inc.

Geotechnical, Environmental and
Materials Consultants

November 5, 2013

Southern Hospitality Services LLC
115 Hospitality Drive
Flowood, Mississippi 39232

Attention: Mr. Nash Patel

Reference: Proposed Hampton Inn
I-20 Frontage Road at Garrett Road
Monroe, Louisiana
AAI File# 12.94.038A

Gentlemen:

AAI understands the structural engineer has set the shallow footings at the three (3) foot depth per AAI's report. The footings can be placed at the two (2) foot depth with the following stipulation. In some areas a very soft material may be encountered at the two (2) foot depth. In this case the very soft material should be excavated for twelve (12) inches and replaced with a concrete sand. The very soft material may occur in some isolated spots.

Should you have any questions, please feel free to contact our office.

Very truly yours,
ARDAMAN & ASSOCIATES INC.

Lloyd G. Hoover, P.E.
Principal Engineer

LGH/mfh



**SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION
PROPOSED HAMPTON INN
I-20 FRONTAGE ROAD AT GARRETT ROAD
MONROE, LOUISIANA**

**PREPARED FOR:
SOUTHERN HOSPITALITY SERVICES, LLC
115 HOSPITALITY DRIVE
FLOWOOD, MISSISSIPPI 39232**

**PREPARED BY:

ARDAMAN & ASSOCIATES, INC.
7222 GREENWOOD ROAD
SHREVEPORT, LOUISIANA 71119**

**ARDAMAN PROJECT NO.: 113-12-94-8533
AAI SHREVEPORT FILE NO.: 12.94.038**

MARCH 12, 2012



TABLE OF CONTENTS

GENERAL	1
PROJECT DESCRIPTION.....	1
FIELD OPERATIONS	1
LABORATORY TESTING	2
SOIL CONDITIONS	2
GROUNDWATER	3
SUBGRADE PREPARATION	3
FILL RECOMMENDATIONS.....	4
FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATIONS	4
POOL INFORMATION	5
PAVEMENT INFORMATION	5
CONSTRUCTION CONCERNS.....	8
LIMITATIONS.....	9

LIST OF APPENDICES

APPENDIX A. Location Diagram and Logs of Boring	10
APPENDIX B. Material Specifications	23
B.1 Sandy Clay/Clayey Sand Compaction	24
B.2 Aggregates	25
B.3 Geotextile	26





Ardaman & Associates, Inc.

Geotechnical, Environmental and
Materials Consultants

March 12, 2012

Southern Hospitality Services, LLC
115 Hospitality Drive
Flowood, Mississippi 39232

Attention: Mr. Nash Patel
Vice President

Reference: Subsurface Investigation
Proposed Hampton Inn
I-20 Frontage Road at Garrett Road
Monroe, Louisiana
Ardaman Project No.: 113-12-94-8533
AAI Shreveport File No.: 12.94.038

Gentlemen:

Attached is our Subsurface Investigation Report for the above referenced project. Ardaman & Associates, Inc. (AAI) will be happy to assist you further on this project by furnishing any Construction Materials Testing Services you or the owner may require. We are a full service laboratory with a local presence in West Monroe, Louisiana and can provide any soils or concrete testing you may require.

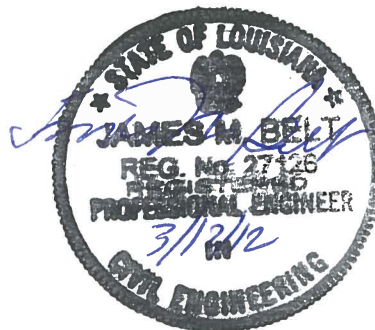
It has been a pleasure to perform this work for you. If we can be of any further assistance, please do not hesitate to call on us.

Very truly yours,

ARDAMAN & ASSOCIATES, INC.

James M. Belt, P.E.
Branch Manager
Shreveport Area Operations

Lloyd G. Hoover, P.E.
Chief Engineer
Shreveport Area Operations



cc: (2) client

**SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION
PROPOSED HAMPTON INN
I-20 FRONTAGE ROAD AT GARRETT ROAD
MONROE, LOUISIANA**

GENERAL

This study was authorized by Mr. Nash Patel, Vice President of Southern Hospitality Services, L.L.C. on February 12, 2012. The purposes of the study were to (1) explore the subsurface conditions present at this site, (2) determine the pertinent engineering properties of the materials encountered, and (3) develop recommendations concerning suitable foundation types and pavement sections for the subsurface soils encountered at this site.

PROJECT DESCRIPTION

AAI understands the proposed 83 room hotel will be four (4) stories in height with a ground level indoor pool. The building will be approximately 16,000 square feet (SF) in footprint. The facility will include parking for 90 vehicles. It is anticipated construction will consist of wood-framed load bearing walls with stucco type veneer. There will be new concrete access drives and parking surrounding the structure. Anticipated loading for this type structure is moderate to light.

The site of the proposed construction is located on the south side of I-20 near the intersection of the Frontage and Garrett Roads. The 1.66 acre lot lies west of Garrett and south of Frontage Road. The site is bounded on the south by the Best Western Airport Inn property and to the north by Sam's Club property. This site has had some recent construction activity. The site appears to have been built up about two (2) feet with imported fill materials. The fill covers about eighty (80) percent of the Lot. This work was reportedly done during a recent expansion of the Sam's Club parking lot just to the north of the property. AAI assumes the finished floor slab elevation for the proposed building will be within one (1) or two (2) feet of the current fill elevation. At the time of this investigation, surface soils were soft and wet, but all of the boring locations were readily accessible to our ATV-mounted drilling equipment.

FIELD OPERATIONS

The subsurface exploration at the site consisted of a total of nine (9) test borings. Five (5) borings were drilled in the area of the proposed new building. These borings were advanced to a depth of twenty (20) feet below the existing ground surface. Four (4) test borings were drilled in areas proposed for paving. These borings were advanced to depths of five (5) feet. This investigation was conducted on February 23, 2012. Boring locations were selected by the geotechnical engineer.



The test borings were advanced utilizing continuous-flight, solid stem augers and samples were obtained for laboratory evaluation in general accordance with provisions of ASTM D1586 and ASTM D1587. Standard, thin-walled, seamless Shelby tube samplers were used to obtain specimens of cohesive materials. These specimens were taken continuously to a depth of ten (10) feet below the existing ground surface. Below this depth, samples were obtained at intervals of five (5) feet as the borings were advanced.

Soils which contained enough cohesionless material or were sufficiently dense to prevent recovery of undisturbed specimens with Shelby Tube samplers were evaluated by means of the Standard Penetration test. This test consists of determining the number of blows required by a 140 pound hammer dropped 30 inches to achieve one foot penetration of the soil. This number is then related to "in situ" density of the material.

All samples obtained were logged, sealed and packaged in the field to protect them from disturbance and maintain their in situ moisture content during transportation to our laboratory. The results of our boring program (Logs of Boring) are included as Appendix "A" of this report.

LABORATORY TESTING

Upon return to our laboratory selected samples were subjected to standard laboratory tests under the supervision of a soils engineer. The Atterberg Limits, in situ unit weights, percent of material passing a #200 sieve, and moisture contents of the different subsurface soils were determined. These soil properties were used to classify the soils and evaluate their potential for volumetric change. Standard Penetration and unconfined compression tests performed on selected undisturbed samples were used to evaluate the shear strength of the different subsurface materials. The results of our testing program are included on the Logs of Boring in Appendix "A" of this report.

SOIL CONDITIONS

Soil conditions described in this section are of a generalized nature and intended to emphasize key features and characteristics. For a more detailed description of the subsurface materials encountered refer to the soil profile on each Log of Boring in Appendix "A". Strata contacts indicated on our Logs are approximate. Actual transitions may be gradual in nature.



Imported fill material encountered at the site varies in thickness from two (2) to three (3) feet. This material is generally soft sandy lean clay, USCS classification (CL). The fill layer was encountered at the locations of test borings B-1, B-2, B-5, B-7, B-8, and B-9. Below this material medium stiff, moderately plastic, lean clay with sand (CL) was encountered to depths of six (6) to eight (8) feet. Below this layer, medium stiff to very soft, lean clay of low plasticity (CL-ML) exists at all but one test boring. At B-2, medium stiff to soft highly plastic fat clay (CH) was encountered between six (6) and ten (10) feet. Soft very silty lean clay (CL-ML) was encountered below a depth of thirteen (13) feet at this test boring.

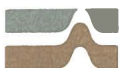
GROUNDWATER

Shallow groundwater was encountered below a depth of eleven (11) feet during operations. Based on the soil stratification and anticipated construction activities at this site, shallow groundwater should not impact construction activities for the hotel building or parking lot but will likely impact construction activities for the in-ground pool. If excavation below a depth of about ten (10) feet is necessary to install the pool structure, dewatering could be required.

SUBGRADE PREPARATION

Our SPT testing in the existing fill materials indicates placement of the material was poorly controlled and subsequently the existing fill is poorly compacted. Prior to subsequent construction activity on the site, the existing fill material should be removed and replaced in a controlled manner. After removal, some top soil stripping may be required if the site was not properly grubbed prior to the previous work. Provide drainage of the exposed subgrade by sloping grades and ditching away from the construction site so positive drainage can be maintained throughout the construction phase of the project.

After the undisturbed subgrade is exposed, the upper twelve (12) inches should be scarified; moisture conditioned, and then compacted to a minimum of ninety-five (95) percent of the laboratory maximum density as determined by ASTM D698 at one (1) to three (3) percent above optimum moisture content prior to subsequent fill placement.



FILL RECOMMENDATIONS

Place subsequent lifts of structural fill as necessary to achieve the desired finished grade elevation. Lifts should be placed in thin horizontal layers not exceeding eight (8) inches in loose thickness, moisture conditioned to within two (2) percentage points of optimum moisture and re-compacted to a minimum of ninety-five (95) percent ASTM D698. All imported fill material should be "select". Select materials classify as SC or CL (clayey sand or sandy lean clay) in accordance with the Unified Soils Classification System and will have liquid limits (LL) no greater than thirty-eight (38), plasticity indices (PI) between eight (8) and eighteen (18) with no more than sixty (60) percent passing the No. 200 sieve. Typical specifications for compaction of sandy clay and clayey sand soils are included in Appendix "B" of this report. The onsite fill materials previously recommended for removal are suitable materials for reuse beneath the building or pavements with adequate moisture conditioning and compaction control.

FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATIONS

The near surface soils encountered within the upper six (6) feet below the existing ground surface are considered inactive and are of fair bearing quality. As such, they are suitable to support of a shallow foundation system. A conventionally reinforced, slab-on-grade, shallow foundation system can be used. The base of the footings should be placed approximately two (2) to three (3) feet below the finished floor elevation in the density controlled fill material. An allowable bearing value of 1,500 PSF can be utilized to proportion continuous footings placed as described above. The bearing value contains a minimum factor of safety of two (2) against shear failure of the bearing stratum and was selected to minimize settlement potential of the weaker materials found below a depth of thirteen (13) feet. A minimum footing width of eighteen (18) inches should be maintained for all continuous footings as protection against potential isolated shear failure.

Interior columns or other areas of concentrated load can be supported by isolated spread footings. The base of the footings should be placed in the previously described stratum. An allowable bearing value of 2,000 PSF can be used to proportion all spread footings. The bearing value contains a minimum factor of safety of two (2) against shear failure of the bearing stratum. A minimum footing width of twenty-four (24) inches should be maintained for all spread footings.



The slab for the proposed structure can be placed directly on density controlled fill. AAI recommends the slab be structurally tied to the foundation to differential movement potential. Use of a polyethylene moisture (vapor) barrier is recommended under all climate controlled areas.

Some consolidation settlement should be expected in the clay soils beneath this site. However, if the site is properly prepared and allowable bearing capacities not exceeded, settlement should be limited to an inch or less.

POOL INFORMATION

Ardaman understands an indoor pool will be constructed at this site. The groundwater was encountered at eleven (11) feet but can fluctuate with the seasons of the year and the rise and fall of nearby streams. Perched water can also occur occasionally. Because of the possibility of uplift on the pool due to buoyancy, AAI suggests anchoring the pool in some manner. The type anchoring system may depend upon the type pool installed (pre-fabricated or cast in-place liner system.) The anchoring system should be professionally designed and be able to resist uplift forces with water rising to the ground surface. The uplift pressure will be 62.4 PSF per foot of depth of pool. Additionally a standpipe can be installed to both monitor and to allow any perched water to be pumped out to relieve uplift pressures on the pool when emptying for cleaning.

PAVEMENT INFORMATION

The design of pavement sections for this site is based upon subsurface conditions inferred by the test borings and our experience with facilities of a similar nature. Density controlled select fill will have California Bearing Ratio (CBR) value in the order of ten (10) or a Modulus of Subgrade Reaction (k_s) value in the order of 200 PSI per inch. Use of a nominal thickness of aggregate base material over the compacted fill will increase k_s values by about thirty (30) percent.

Rigid Pavement. Based on the limited space and configuration of the proposed paved areas we recommend Portland Cement Concrete Pavement be given first consideration for this site. Concrete pavement sections for this site are shown below. Minimum flexural strength of the concrete should be 600 pounds per square inch (PSI) or have compressive strength of 3,500 PSI. Ardaman recommends joint spacing not exceeding twelve (12) feet for un-reinforced pavement of the thicknesses outlined below.



Auto Parking Section

5.0 Inches Portland Cement Concrete
over
4.0 Inches Crushed Aggregate Base Material
over
12.0 Inches Density Controlled Select Fill

Drive Section

6.0 Inches Portland Cement Concrete
over
4.0 Inches Crushed Aggregate Base Material
over
12.0 Inches Density Controlled Select Fill

Dumpster Pad

8.0 Inches Portland Cement Concrete
over
6.0 Inches Crushed Aggregate Base Material
over
12.0 Inches Density Controlled Select Fill

Flexible Pavement – Flexible paving sections structurally equivalent to the above rigid sections are provided for your cost comparison. Hot mixed asphaltic concrete (HMAC) mixtures should meet applicable requirements for materials, production, placement and acceptance as outlined in the *Louisiana Standard Specifications for Roads and Bridges, 2000 Edition*, Section 501 for Marshall mixtures or *LSSRB, 2006*, Section 502 for Superpave mixtures. For parking lot applications we recommend utilizing the ½ inch Nominal HMAC mix of either type. This mix produces a more aesthetic surface finish and generally holds up well under automobile parking lot use. The following flexible pavement sections are provided for this site:

Auto Parking Section

2.5 Inches HMAC Pavement
over
8.0 Inches Crushed Aggregate Base Material on Geotechnical Fabric
over
12.0 Inches Density Controlled Select Fill

or

2.5 Inches HMAC Pavement
over
8.0 Inches Soil Cement Base Material
over
12.0 Inches Density Controlled Select Fill



Drive Section

3.5 Inches HMAC Pavement
over
10.0 Inches Crushed Aggregate Base Material on Geotechnical Fabric
over
12.0 Inches Density Controlled Select Fill

or

3.5 Inches HMAC Pavement
over
10.0 Inches Soil Cement Base Material
over
12.0 Inches Density Controlled Select Fill

Specifications for recommended crushed aggregate base materials are included in Appendix “B” of this report. Aggregate base course layers in excess of four (4) inches in thickness should be compacted to not less than 98% of the laboratory maximum as determined by ASTM D698, Method C. Aggregate base layers four (4) inches and less in thickness compacted by several passes of a medium sized drum roller and proof rolled under the observation of the geotechnical engineer.

If a soil/cement base layer is considered, eight (8) percent Type I Portland cement by weight can be used for cost estimating purposes. The actual quantity should be specified by the design engineer. The above quantity should produce unconfined compressive strengths in the order of 300 PSI for the CL and SC soils typical of select fill.

Soil cement base materials develop tension cracks during the curing process and these cracks “reflect” through the overlying asphaltic concrete paving over time. A general rule of thumb for crack propagation is about one (1) vertical inch per year (takes about 2 years to show up through a 2 inch overlay). Although not initially structurally detrimental to the pavement system, the cracks must be periodically sealed to minimize moisture infiltration into the base system. Failure to perform regular maintenance of the cracks can lead to saturated subgrade soils and base failures in the pavement.

Reflective cracking cannot be prevented; however a separation layer can be used to minimize the propagation of reflective cracking. There are commercially available engineered fabrics (underlayment) that claim to reduce crack propagation and a thin layer of crushed aggregate base layer can also be used between the base layer and binder course layers to reduce reflective cracking. Both approaches have pros and cons and the benefit of either must be weighed against installation costs.



CONSTRUCTION CONCERNS

The upper soils at the site are fine-grained materials composed of significant silt and clay fractions. Silty and/or clayey soils are subject to extreme changes in shear strength with varying moisture conditions. If construction is initiated during wetter seasons of the year, it may be very difficult to move equipment about the site. Once these type soils become saturated, compaction operations can be seriously hampered by a tendency of the silt to "pump" and the clay to "shear".

Consequently it is recommended, adequate site drainage be established prior to, during, and following construction operations to prevent water ponding on or adjacent to construction areas. Compaction operations may be expedited by using light compaction equipment and thin lifts of soil. Rolling only as necessary to obtain compaction is advisable because further repetitive loading may cause the subgrade to "pump" or fail. Once soils begin to pump, it is usually necessary to either start the moisture conditioning process over or remove and replace the saturated material. AAI can provide experience soils technicians to monitor the contractor's compaction operations and assist in expediting the site work.

Compaction operations and installation of the foundations should be supervised by a qualified soils technician under the supervision of the Geotechnical Engineer. All foundation excavations should be inspected to verify cleanliness and adequate bearing. Concrete should be placed in foundation excavations as soon as practical after forming and final clean-up have been approved, to avoid prolonged exposure of the bearing stratum and possible disturbance due to standing water, desiccation or other construction operations.

Earthwork performed during wet periods of the climatic cycle may warrant special considerations. The use of hydrated lime or Portland cement stabilization should be considered to provide a working platform. The need for such techniques is dependent upon earthwork scheduling with respect to weather patterns and good site management of drainage during the construction phase.

LIMITATIONS

This study has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering principles and practices in this area at this time. We make no other warranty either express or implied.



The conclusions and recommendations submitted in this report are based upon the data obtained from the exploratory borings drilled at the location(s) indicated in Appendix A, the proposed type of construction and our experience in the area. Our findings include interpolation and extrapolation of the subsurface conditions identified at the exploratory boring(s) and variations in the subsurface conditions may not become evident until excavations are performed. If conditions encountered during construction appear to be different from those described in this report, we should be notified at once so that supplemental recommendations can be made if required.

This study has been prepared for the exclusive use by our client for design purposes. We are not responsible for technical interpretations by others of our exploratory information, which has not been described or documented in this report. As the project evolves, we should provide continued consultation and field services during design and construction to review and monitor the implementation of our recommendations, and to verify that the recommendations have been appropriately interpreted. Significant design changes may require additional analysis or modifications of the recommendations presented herein. We recommend on-site observation of excavations and foundation bearing strata by a representative of the geotechnical engineer.

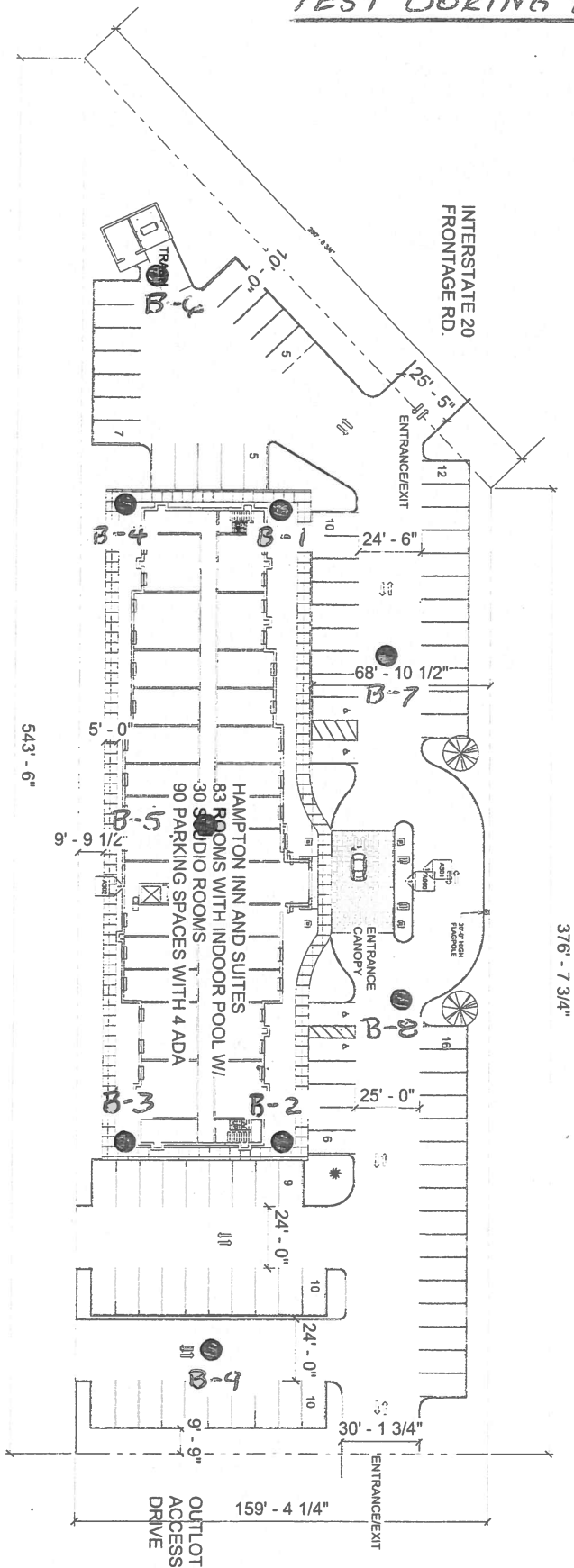
Analysis by: James M. Belt, P.E.



APPENDIX A
**LOCATION DIAGRAMS
AND
LOGS OF BORING**



TEST BORING LOCATIONS



① Site
1" = 20' 0"



MISHRA
ARCHITECTURE PLLC

227 S. Main St., Suite 200, Metairie, LA 70002
Phone: (504) 885-2272
Fax: (504) 885-2273
Email: misha@architect.com

PROJECT:
Hampton Inn and Suites
1500 South Main Street
Metairie, LA 70002
Phone: (504) 885-2272
Fax: (504) 885-2273
Email: misha@architect.com

CLIENT:
Southern Hospitality Services
1500 South Main Street
Metairie, LA 70002
Phone: (504) 885-2272
Fax: (504) 885-2273
Email: misha@architect.com

DATE:
September 11, 2011
Revised: 11/11/11
Final: 11/11/11

PROJECT NO.:
11000
Project: 11000
Drawing: 11000

No.	Date	Description
1	09/11/11	Initial Drawing
2	11/11/11	Revised Drawing
3	11/11/11	Final Drawing

Hampton Inn and Suites
1500 South Main Street
Metairie, LA 70002
Phone: (504) 885-2272
Fax: (504) 885-2273
Email: misha@architect.com

DATE: 11/11/11

Southern Hospitality Services
1500 South Main Street
Metairie, LA 70002
Phone: (504) 885-2272
Fax: (504) 885-2273
Email: misha@architect.com

Hampton Inn and Suites
1500 South Main Street
Metairie, LA 70002
Phone: (504) 885-2272
Fax: (504) 885-2273
Email: misha@architect.com

5400 I-20 & Frontage Rd.
Metairie, LA 70002
Phone: (504) 885-2272
Fax: (504) 885-2273
Email: misha@architect.com

Site Plan

Scale

Project No.: 11000
Project: Hampton Inn and Suites
Client: Southern Hospitality Services
Date: August 16, 2011
Sheet No.: A002

LOG OF BORING NO. B-1

PROJECT: Hampton Inn












SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

DATE: 2/23/12

SURFACE ELEV:

FIELD DATA			LABORATORY DATA									DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: Water encountered at eleven (11) feet depth	
DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM													
		N = 2	12		25	12	13	57				Very soft reddish brown silty sandy clay (Fill material)	
		N = 9	10		27	14	13	55				Medium brownish gray silty sandy clay	
	5	N = 10	13									2.0	
		N = 10	19									6.0	
		N = 7	23					87				Medium brown very silty clay with trace sand	
	10												
		N = 2	25					91				--Very soft, wet	
15												18.0	
		N = 6	29		34	17	17					Medium brown and gray silty clay	
	20											20.0	
												Bottom of boring at 20 feet	
25													
							REMARKS:						
TUBE SAMPLE		AUGER SAMPLE	SPLIT- SPOON	ROCK CORE	THD CONE PEN.	NO RECOVERY							

LOG OF BORING NO. B-2

PROJECT: Hampton Inn


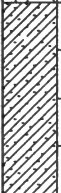



SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

DATE: 2/23/12

SURFACE ELEV:

FIELD DATA				LABORATORY DATA								DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE	N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: Water encountered at eleven (11) feet depth
DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM													
		N = 3	21			34	13	21	68				Soft reddish brown silty sandy clay (fill material)
		N = 11	12			33	12	21	73				2.0
	5	N = 4	15			29	13	16	68				--Soft
													6.0
		N = 10	27										Medium brown silty clay with trace sand
		N = 4	24			57	31	26					--Soft
	10												13.0
		N = 1	28										Very soft grayish brown ery silty clay with trace sand
	15												
		N = 5	29										20.0
	20												Bottom of boring at 20 feet

LOG OF BORING NO. B-3

PROJECT: Hampton Inn












SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

DATE: 2/25/12

SURFACE ELEV:

FIELD DATA				LABORATORY DATA								DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE	N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: Water encountered at eleven (11) feet depth
DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM													
	5		N = 4	16		28	13	15	65				Soft grayish brown silty sandy clay --Medium
			N = 9	12									
			N = 9	23		39	17	22					
			N = 12	19									
	10		N = 7	22		27	20	7	73				Medium brown very silty clay with sand --Soft with less sand
													
	15		N = 3	29					97				
			N = 4	32									
	20												20.0
													Bottom of boring at 20 feet
	25												
													REMARKS:
TUBE SAMPLE		AUGER SAMPLE		SPLIT- SPOON		ROCK CORE		THD CONE PEN.		NO RECOVERY			

LOG OF BORING NO. B-4

PROJECT: Hampton Inn

















SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

DATE: 2/23/12

SURFACE ELEV:

FIELD DATA				LABORATORY DATA								DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE	N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: Water encountered at eleven (11) feet depth
DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM													
	5		N = 3	14		28	12	16	60				Soft grayish brown silty sandy clay --Medium with less sand 8.0
			N = 3	16									
			N = 9	20		39	19	20	90				
			N = 11	19									
	10		N = 7	21		25	19	6	92				Medium brown very silty clay with trace sand --Very soft --Soft 20.0
													
	15		N = 1	30									
			N = 5	29		23	19	4					
	20												Bottom of boring at 20 feet
	25												
													REMARKS:
TUBE SAMPLE	AUGER SAMPLE	SPLIT- SPOON	ROCK CORE	THD CONE PEN.	NO RECOVERY								

LOG OF BORING NO. B-5

PROJECT: Hampton Inn











SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

DATE: 2/23/12

SURFACE ELEV:

FIELD DATA				LABORATORY DATA								DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE	N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: Water encountered at eleven (11) feet depth
DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM													
	5	N = 2	13		25	15	10	60					Very soft reddish silty sandy clay (fill material)
		N = 4	14		27	11	16	57					2.0
		N = 7	17										--Medium with less sand
	10	N = 9	20		24	19	5	81					6.0
		N = 5	22										Medium grayish brown very silty clay with sand
													--Soft with less sand
		N = 1	32										--Very soft, wet
	15	N = 3	32										--Soft
													20.0
	20												Bottom of boring at 20 feet
	25												
						REMARKS:							
TUBE SAMPLE	AUGER SAMPLE	SPLIT- SPOON	ROCK CORE	THD CONE PEN.	NO RECOVERY								

LOG OF BORING NO. B-6

PROJECT: Hampton Inn

SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

DATE: 2/23/12

SURFACE ELEV:

FIELD DATA			LABORATORY DATA								DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: No water encountered
												DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM
		N = 1	21		27	16	11	72				Very soft grayish brown silty sandy clay
		N = 5	21									-Soft
												4.0
	5	N = 7	19									Medium brown silty clay with sand
												6.0
												Bottom of boring at 6 feet
	10											
						REMARKS:						
TUBE SAMPLE	AUGER SAMPLE	SPLIT- SPOON	ROCK CORE	THD CONE PEN.	NO RECOVERY							

LOG OF BORING NO. B-7

PROJECT: Hampton Inn



SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

DATE: 2/23/12

SURFACE ELEV:

FIELD DATA			LABORATORY DATA									DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE	N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: No water encountered
DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM													
			N = 1	17		25	12	13					Very soft reddish brown silty sandy clay (fill material)
													2.0
			N = 11	11									Medium grayish brown silty sandy clay
	5		N = 10	18									
													6.0
													Bottom of boring at 6 feet

LOG OF BORING NO. B-8

PROJECT: Hampton Inn








SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

DATE: 2/23/12

SURFACE ELEV:

FIELD DATA			LABORATORY DATA								DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: No water encountered
												DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM
		N = 1	20		25	14	11	65				Very soft reddish brown silty sandy clay (fill material)
		N = 9	13									2.0
		N = 7	17									6.0
	5											
												Bottom of boring at 6 feet
	10											
						REMARKS:						
TUBE SAMPLE	AUGER SAMPLE	SPLIT- SPOON	ROCK CORE	THD CONE PEN.	NO RECOVERY							

LOG OF BORING NO. B-9

PROJECT: Hampton Inn

SHEET 1 of 1

CLIENT: Southern Hospitality Services LLC

LOCATION: Monroe, Louisiana

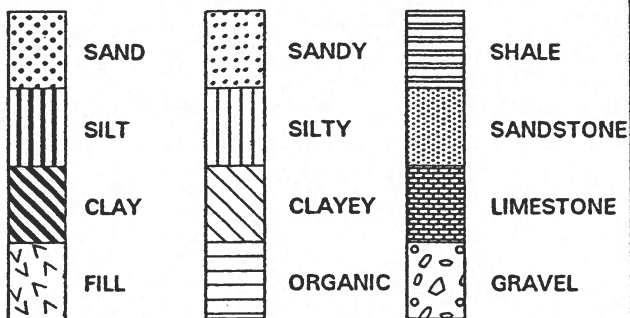
DATE: 2/23/12

SURFACE ELEV:

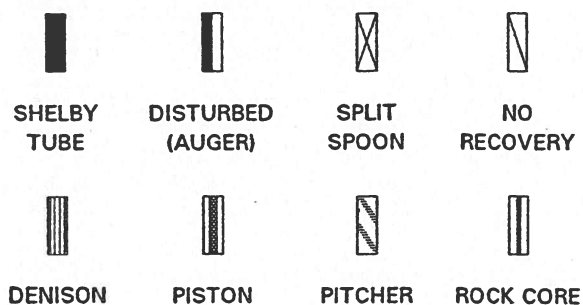
FIELD DATA			LABORATORY DATA									DRILLING METHOD(S): Auger	
SOIL & ROCK SYMBOL	DEPTH (FT)	SAMPLE TYPE N: SPT, BLOWS/FT T: THD, BLOWS/FT P: HAND PEN, TSF	MOISTURE CONTENT, %	DRY DENSITY POUNDS/CU.FT	LIQUID LIMIT, %	PLASTIC LIMIT, %	PLASTICITY INDEX, %	MINUS NO. 200 SIEVE, %	COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, KSF	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE PSI	GROUNDWATER INFORMATION: No water encountered	
												DESCRIPTION OF STRATUM	
	2.0	N = 12	15		30	13	17	66				Medium reddish brown silty sandy clay (fill material)	
	6.0	N = 9	11									Medium grayish brown silty sandy clay	
		N = 10	17										
	6.0											Bottom of boring at 6 feet	
	10											REMARKS:	
TUBE SAMPLE	AUGER SAMPLE	SPLIT- SPOON	ROCK CORE	THD CONE PEN.	NO RECOVERY								

KEY TO SOIL CLASSIFICATION TERMS AND SYMBOLS

SOIL OR ROCK TYPES



SAMPLER TYPES



CONSISTENCY OF COHESIVE SOILS (MAJOR PORTION PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE)

DESCRIPTIVE TERM	UNDRAINED SHEAR STRENGTH, TONS/SQ. FT.
VERY SOFT	LESS THAN 0.25
SOFT	0.25 TO 0.5
FIRM	0.5 TO 1.0
STIFF	1.0 TO 2.0
VERY STIFF	2.0 TO 4.0
HARD	GREATER THAN 4.0

RELATIVE DENSITY OF GRANULAR SOILS (MAJOR PORTION RETAINED ON NO. 200 SIEVE)

DESCRIPTIVE TERM	RELATIVE DENSITY, %
VERY LOOSE	LESS THAN 15
LOOSE	15 TO 35
MEDIUM DENSE	35 TO 65
DENSE	65 TO 85
VERY DENSE	GREATER THAN 85

WATER LEVELS

- DEPTH GROUNDWATER FIRST ENCOUNTERED DURING DRILLING
 - GROUNDWATER LEVEL AFTER 24 HOURS (UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED)

TERMS DESCRIBING SOIL STRUCTURE

Parting:	paper thin in thickness	Fissured:	containing shrinkage cracks, frequently filled with fine sand or silt, usually more or less vertical
Seam:	1/8" - 3" in thickness	Interbedded:	composed of alternate layers of different soil types
Layer:	greater than 3" in thickness	Laminated:	composed of thin layers of varying color and texture
Calcareous:	containing appreciable quantities of calcium carbonate	Slickensided:	having inclined planes of weakness that are slick & glossy in appearance
Ferrous:	containing appreciable quantities of iron	NOTE:	Clays possessing slickensided or fissured structure may exhibit lower measured shear strength than indicated by the described consistency. The consistency of such soil is interpreted using the measured shear strength along with pocket penetrometer results.
Well-graded:	having wide range in grain size & similar proportions of all intermediate sizes		
Poorly graded:	predominately one grain size or having a range of sizes with few or no particles of some intermediate sizes		

APPENDIX B

MATERIAL SPECIFICATIONS



B.1 SPECIFICATIONS FOR COMPACTION

Sandy Clay and Clayey Sand Soils

The thickness of lifts used should be no more than the height of the teeth on sheepfoot rollers. Generally, for a forty-eight (48) inch diameter or smaller drum roller, the maximum compacted lift thickness acceptable is six (6) inches. For rollers with drums of sixty (60) inches in diameter and larger with teeth about nine (9) inches long, a nine (9) inch final compacted lift thickness will be acceptable. The sole determination of the thickness of a lift will be the capability of the contractor's equipment to obtain the required compaction.

When obtaining the average density of a lift to determine its conformance to specifications, the lift should be immediately rejected if any density is more than 2% below the required average.

Generally, sheepfoot rollers are most suitable for compaction of sandy clay and clayey sand soils, the contractor may use spiketooth rollers, rubber tired rollers, or any fill compaction equipment that has sufficient mass to compact the soil. Generally, the drums of sheepfoot rollers should be filled with water or for additional weight with both water and sand. Tractors or other vehicles used primarily for hauling WILL NOT be allowed as fill compaction equipment. The contractor should also have smooth wheel rollers to seal the working area at the end of the day's operations so overnight rains will not saturate the soil and delay his work. These rollers should also be used to seal the surface whenever rainfall is imminent.

The soil engineer or his representative will perform density tests and will accept or reject a lift within two (2) hours after being tested. No material will be placed on any lift that has not been accepted by the engineer.



B.2 COARSE AGGREGATE SPECIFICATIONS

Crushed Stone
Crushed Concrete

Crushed stone base course shall be composed of crusher-run broken stone. The material shall be crushed and consist of durable particles of stone mixed with approved soil binder material.

Gradation

The base material shall meet the following requirements:

Pass #1-1/2"	100%
Pass #1"	90-100%
Pass #3/4"	70-100%
Pass #4	35-65%
Pass #40	12-32%
Pass #200	5-12%

Soil Binder

Material passing the No. 40 sieve shall be known as "soil binder" and shall meet the following requirements:

Plasticity Index < 15

Compaction

Compaction shall be obtained by a minimum of 12 passes of a 5,000 pound sheepsfoot roller 3 to 4 feet wide. Surface shall be finished rolled by sufficient passes of a steel wheel roller to provide a smooth surface for application of the surface course.

Note

Extra binder material may be added with the approval of the geotechnical or design engineer.

Soundness and Los Angeles abrasion tests should meet Louisiana Department of Transportation Specifications.



B.3 GEOTEXTILE FABRIC SPECIFICATIONS

The following proven woven Geotextile Fabrics are approved:

1. Amoco Pro Pex 2006
2. Beltech Style 980
3. ConTech C300
4. Mirafi 600X
5. Hanes (Terra Tex) HD

If alternate geotextile fabric from above is requested, the following qualifications should be met:

SPECIFICATIONS

<u>Property</u>	<u>Test Method</u>	<u>Minimum Requirements</u>
Fabric Structure	-	Woven
Polymer Composition	-	Polypropylene
Fabric Width	-	12½', 15', 17½'
Weight	ASTM D-3776C	5 oz. /yd.
Grab Strength	ASTM D-4632	300 x 300 lbs.
Elongation	ASTM D-4632	20%
Trap Tear Strength	ASTM D-4533	115 lbs. x 115 lbs.
Burst Strength	ASTM D-3786	575 psi.
Puncture	ASTM D-4833	120 lbs.
UV Resistance	ASTM D-4355	> 70%
A.O.S.	ASTM D-4751	35

NOTE:

1. Requires Mill Certification from manufacturer.
2. Minimum requirements are not minimum average values. Minimum average values per roll are not an acceptable specification.





REQUEST FOR INFORMATION

RFI #: _____

☐ Contractor Name of Business: _____
☐ Subcontractor Address: _____
☐ Supplier City, State, Zip: _____
Phone: _____; Fax: _____; Email: _____

Attn: Ashish Mishra, AIA, NCARB, LEED AP
Mishra Architecture PLLC
6800 S Creek Rd, Charlotte, NC 28277; Fax: (704) 919-5822; Email: ashish@mishraarch.com

Project: _____ Place: _____ Date: _____

Drawing #: _____ Specification Section: _____ Page #: _____

Request:

Attachments: _____

Date Response Needed By:

Signature: _____ Date: _____

FOR DESIGN PROFESSIONAL USE:

Rec'd by: _____ Date: _____
Sent to: _____ Date: _____ Initials: _____

Response:

☐ Supplemental instructions do not constitute a change to the Contract.

☐ Change in scope required. This RFI to be followed by RFP No.: _____
Possible cost or time impact? Yes ☐ No ☐

Signature: _____ Date: _____

Attachments: _____

Cc: _____



SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

☐ Contractor Name of Business: _____
☐ Subcontractor Address: _____
☐ Supplier City, State, Zip: _____
Phone: _____; Fax: _____; Email: _____

Attn: Ashish Mishra, AIA, NCARB, LEED AP

Mishra Architecture PLLC

6800 S Creek Rd, Charlotte, NC 28277; Fax: (704) 919-5822; Email: ashish@mishraarch.com

Project: _____ Place: _____ Date: _____

Specified Item: _____

Drawing #/Specification Page	Description
------------------------------	-------------

WHY IS SUBSTITUTION BEING SUBMITTED? (Select 1 of the following):

- ☐ Pre-bid Substitution (Prior Approval): Include detailed analysis comparing proposed substitution against specified product, including redlined drawing/Specification Section showing differences.
- ☐ Specified Product is not available.
- ☐ Cost savings to Owner. Indicate comparative cost analysis as attachment.
- ☐ Other. Explain: _____

PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION:

Attached data also includes product description, specifications, drawings, photographs, performance and test data adequate for evaluation of the request; applicable portions of the data are clearly identified.

Attached data also includes description of changes to Contract Documents which proposed substitution will require for its proper installation.

Attachments: _____

EFFECTS OF PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION:

Does the proposed substitution affect dimensions shown on drawings? NO ☐ YES ☐

Does the proposed substitution change drawings? NO ☐ YES ☐

If yes, provide drawing numbers: _____



The undersigned states that the following paragraphs, unless modified in attachments, are correct:

1. The undersigned will pay for changes to the building design, including engineering design, detailing and construction costs caused by the requested substitution.
2. The proposed substitution will have no adverse effects on other trades.
3. The function, appearance, and quality of the proposed substitution are *equivalent or superior* to the specified item.
4. If major changes are proposed to Contract Documents, approvals need to be obtained from authorities having jurisdiction on the above mentioned project.

Submitted by: _____ PRINT NAME: _____

Firm Name: _____ Date: _____

FOR USE BY DESIGN CONSULTANT:

Check and Complete:

Accepted

Accepted as Noted:

Not accepted

Received too Late

By: _____ PRINT NAME: _____

Date: _____

Remarks: _____

Sent to: _____

Date: _____